

# **Ahsay Online Backup Manager v8**

## **Quick Start Guide for Windows**

Ahsay Systems Corporation Limited

**30 April 2021**

# Copyright Notice

© 2021 Ahsay Systems Corporation Limited. All rights reserved.

The use and copying of this product is subject to a license agreement. Any other use is prohibited. No part of this publication may be reproduced, transmitted, transcribed, stored in a retrieval system or translated into any language in any form by any means without prior written consent of Ahsay Systems Corporation Limited. Information in this manual is subject to change without notice and does not represent a commitment on the part of the vendor, Ahsay Systems Corporation Limited does not warrant that this document is error free. If you find any errors in this document, please report to Ahsay Systems Corporation Limited in writing.

This product includes software developed by the Apache Software Foundation (<https://www.apache.org/>).

## Trademarks

Ahsay, Ahsay Cloud Backup Suite, Ahsay Online Backup Suite, Ahsay Offsite Backup Server, Ahsay Online Backup Manager, Ahsay A-Click Backup, Ahsay Replication Server, Ahsay BackupBox Firmware, Ahsay Universal Backup System and Ahsay NAS Client Utility, Ahsay Mobile are trademarks of Ahsay Systems Corporation Limited.

Amazon S3 is a registered trademark of Amazon Web Services, Inc., or its affiliates.

Apple and Mac OS X, macOS, and iOS are registered trademarks of Apple Computer, Inc.

Dropbox is a registered trademark of Dropbox Inc.

Google Cloud Storage, Google Drive, Google Authenticator, and Android are registered trademarks of Google Inc.

Wasabi Hot Cloud Storage is a registered trademark of Wasabi Technologies Inc.

Backblaze B2 Cloud Storage is a registered trademark of Backblaze Inc.

MariaDB is a registered trademark of MariaDB Corporation AB.

Lotus, Domino, and Notes are registered trademark of IBM Corporation.

Microsoft Windows, Microsoft Exchange Server, Microsoft SQL Server, Microsoft Hyper-V, Microsoft Azure, OneDrive, OneDrive for Business, Microsoft Authenticator, and Microsoft Office 365 are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation.

Oracle and Java are registered trademarks of Oracle and/or its affiliates. Other names may be trademarks of their respective owners.

Oracle 11g, Oracle 12c, Oracle 18c, Oracle 19c, and MySQL are registered trademarks of Oracle Corporation.

Rackspace and OpenStack are registered trademarks of Rackspace US, Inc.

Red Hat, Red Hat Enterprise Linux, the Shadowman logo and JBoss are registered trademarks of Red Hat, Inc. [www.redhat.com](http://www.redhat.com) in the U.S. and other countries.

Linux is a registered trademark of Linus Torvalds in the U.S. and other countries.

Ubuntu is a registered trademark of Canonical Ltd.

ShadowProtect is a registered trademark of StorageCraft Technology Corporation.

VMware ESXi, vCenter, and vSAN are registered trademarks of VMware, Inc.

All other product names are registered trademarks of their respective owners.

## Disclaimer

Ahsay Systems Corporation Limited will not have or accept any liability, obligation or responsibility whatsoever for any loss, destruction or damage (including without limitation consequential loss, destruction or damage) however arising from or in respect of any use or misuse of reliance on this document. By reading and following the instructions in this document, you agree to accept unconditionally the terms of this Disclaimer and as they may be revised and/or amended from time to time by Ahsay Systems Corporation Limited without prior notice to you.

# Revision History

Date	Descriptions	Type of modification
25 January 2021	Updated Ch. 1.2 System Architecture; Added Ch. 1.3 Mobile Backup Server (MBS); Added Ch. 1.4 Two-Factor Authentication; Added Ch. 2.1 Requirements for Ahsay Mobile app; Updated Ch. 3.7 Firewall Settings; Added Ch. 3.8 Two-Factor Authentication Requirements; Added Ch. 3.9 Mobile Backup Requirements; Updated Ch 6.3 AhsayOBM Services; Added Ch. 6.4 Mobile Backup Server (MBS) Health Check and Ahsay Mobile app Connection Check; Added Ch. 7.1 Login to AhsayOBM without 2FA; Added Ch. 7.2 Login to AhsayOBM with 2FA using Android or iOS mobile device; Added Ch. 7.3 Login to AhsayOBM with 2FA using Twilio; Updated Ch. 8.1 Profile; Updated Ch. 8.1.5 Password; Updated Ch. 8.1.6 Authentication; Updated Ch. 8.1.7 Mobile Backup; Updated Ch. 8.1.8 Security Settings; Updated Ch. 8.3 Language; Added Ch. 13 Mobile Backup and Restore to AhsayOBM and Predefined Destinations; Added Appendix G: Example Registration of Time-base One-time Password (TOTP) Authenticator app in Ahsay Mobile app;	New / Modification
29 January 2021	Updated Ch. 7.2.1, 7.2.2, and 7.2.3	Modifications
25 March 2021	Updated Ch. 7.2, 7.2.1 and 7.2.2	Modifications
7 April 2021	Updated Ch. 10; Added sub-chapters for the detailed process diagrams in Ch. 10.1, 10.2, 10.2.1, 10.2.2 and 10.3	New / Modifications
30 April 2021	Updated Ch. 8.6.3; Added new diagrams for the detailed process of Data Integrity Check (DIC) and updated screenshots for the Rebuild index option in Ch. 8.9.1; Updated description of Space Freeing Up in Ch. 8.9.2; Updated description of Delete Backup Data in Ch. 8.9.3; Added notes for Periodic Data Integrity Check (PDIC) in Ch. 10.1	New / Modifications

# Table of Contents

<b>1 Overview .....</b>	<b>1</b>
1.1 What is this software? .....	1
1.2 System Architecture.....	1
1.3 Mobile Backup Server.....	2
1.4 Two-Factor Authentication .....	5
<b>2 Requirements for Ahsay Mobile app .....</b>	<b>7</b>
2.1 Backup Software Version Requirement.....	7
2.2 Network Connection.....	7
2.3 Android and iOS Version Requirement .....	7
<b>3 Requirements for AhsayOBM on Windows .....</b>	<b>8</b>
3.1 Hardware Requirements .....	8
3.2 Software Requirements .....	8
3.3 Antivirus Exclusion Requirement.....	8
3.4 Upgrade VMware Tools Requirement .....	8
3.5 Temporary Directory Requirements .....	9
3.6 Network Drive Requirements .....	9
3.7 Firewall Settings .....	9
3.8 Two-Factor Authentication Requirements .....	9
3.9 Mobile Backup Requirements .....	9
3.10 Limitations .....	9
Enhanced Network Drive Support.....	9
3.11 Best Practices and Recommendations.....	10
3.11.1 Periodic Backup Schedule.....	10
3.11.2 Set up of both Periodic and Continuous Backup Schedule .....	10
3.11.3 Periodic Backup Schedule vs. Continuous Backup Schedule .....	10
3.11.4 Temporary Directory Folder Location.....	11
<b>4 Get Started with AhsayOBM.....</b>	<b>12</b>
<b>5 OpenDirect Restore.....</b>	<b>13</b>
5.1 What is OpenDirect Restore? .....	13
5.2 How does OpenDirect Restore work? .....	14
5.3 Benefits of using OpenDirect Restore .....	15
5.4 Requirements .....	16
5.4.1 Supported Backup Modules .....	16
5.4.2 License Requirements .....	16



5.4.3	Backup Quota Storage.....	16
5.4.4	Windows Operating System.....	16
5.4.5	Available Spare Drive Letter .....	16
5.4.6	Network Requirements .....	16
5.4.7	Other Dependencies.....	17
5.4.8	Permissions .....	17
<b>6</b>	<b>Download and Install AhsayOBM .....</b>	<b>18</b>
6.1	Download AhsayOBM.....	19
6.2	Install AhsayOBM .....	20
6.2.1	Option 1: Online Installation Option.....	20
6.2.2	Option 2: Offline Installation Option.....	25
6.3	AhsayOBM Services .....	31
6.4	Mobile Backup Server (MBS) Status Check and Ahsay Mobile app Connection Check 33	
<b>7</b>	<b>Start AhsayOBM.....</b>	<b>35</b>
7.1	Login to AhsayOBM without 2FA .....	35
7.1.1	Initial login to AhsayOBM with no 2FA and no Mobile Add-on Module ....	35
7.1.2	Initial login to AhsayOBM with no 2FA and with Mobile Add-on Module ..	38
7.1.3	Subsequent login to AhsayOBM with no 2FA.....	46
7.2	Login to AhsayOBM with 2FA using Android or iOS mobile device .....	47
7.2.1	Initial login to AhsayOBM with 2FA and with no Mobile Add-on Module ..	47
7.2.2	Initial login to AhsayOBM with 2FA and with Mobile Add-on Module.....	57
7.2.3	Subsequent login to AhsayOBM with 2FA.....	63
7.3	Login to AhsayOBM with 2FA using Twilio.....	67
<b>8</b>	<b>AhsayOBM Overview .....</b>	<b>69</b>
8.1	Profile .....	70
8.1.1	General.....	70
8.1.2	Contacts .....	72
8.1.3	Time Zone .....	74
8.1.4	Encryption Recovery.....	75
8.1.5	Password.....	75
8.1.6	Authentication.....	77
8.1.7	Mobile Backup .....	86
8.1.8	Security Settings.....	88
8.2	Language.....	90
8.3	Information.....	90
8.4	Backup.....	91

8.5	Backup Sets .....	91
	Backup Set Settings.....	92
8.6	Report.....	146
8.6.1	Backup .....	146
8.6.2	Restore.....	150
8.6.3	Usage .....	154
8.7	Restore .....	156
8.8	Settings.....	156
8.8.1	Proxy .....	156
8.8.2	Windows Event Log .....	158
8.9	Utilities .....	158
8.9.1	Data Integrity Check .....	159
8.9.2	Space Freeing Up.....	175
8.9.3	Delete Backup Data.....	178
8.9.4	Decrypt Backup Data.....	184
8.10	Online Help.....	187
8.11	System Tray.....	188
<b>9</b>	<b>Create a Backup Set.....</b>	<b>194</b>
<b>10</b>	<b>Overview on the Backup Process.....</b>	<b>205</b>
10.1	Periodic Data Integrity Check (PDIC) Process .....	206
10.2	Backup Set Index Handling Process .....	208
10.2.1	Start Backup Job .....	208
10.2.2	Completed Backup Job .....	209
10.3	Data Validation Check Process.....	210
<b>11</b>	<b>Run Backup Jobs .....</b>	<b>211</b>
11.1	Login to AhsayOBM.....	211
11.2	Start a Manual Backup.....	211
<b>12</b>	<b>Restore Data .....</b>	<b>214</b>
12.1	Restore Method .....	214
12.1.1	Traditional Restore .....	214
12.1.2	OpenDirect Restore.....	222
12.2	Restore Filter .....	228
<b>13</b>	<b>Mobile Backup and Restore to AhsayCBS and Predefined Destination ...</b>	<b>233</b>
13.1	Create a File Backup Set.....	233
13.2	Run a Backup Job .....	243
13.3	Restore Data.....	246
13.3.1	Original Location .....	247

13.3.2 Alternate Location.....	254
<b>14 Contact Ahsay .....</b>	<b>262</b>
14.1 Technical Assistance .....	262
14.2 Documentation.....	262
<b>Appendix.....</b>	<b>263</b>
Appendix A: Uninstall AhsayOBM.....	263
Appendix B: Example Scenarios for Restore Filter .....	266
Appendix C: Batch Files .....	275
RunCB.bat .....	275
RunConfigurator.bat.....	281
ListBackupSet.bat.....	285
RunBackupSet.bat.....	286
ListBackupJob.bat .....	292
Restore.bat .....	295
Decrypt.bat .....	301
RunDataIntegrityCheck.bat.....	307
Appendix D: Example Scenarios for the Reminder .....	312
Windows Log Off .....	312
Windows Restart.....	313
Windows Shutdown .....	314
Scenario 1 (Windows Log Off + Enabled Locking Workstation).....	315
Scenario 2 (Windows Log Off + Unselected Locking Workstation).....	316
Scenario 3 (Windows Restart + Enabled Locking Workstation).....	317
Scenario 4 (Windows Restart + Unselected Locking Workstation) .....	318
Scenario 5 (Windows Shutdown + Enabled Locking Workstation) .....	319
Scenario 6 (Windows Shutdown + Unselected Locking Workstation).....	320
Appendix E: Create Free Trial Account in AhsayOBM .....	321
Appendix F: How to Manage Network Drives which are not set in Windows .....	325
Appendix G: Example Registration of Time-based One-Time Password (TOTP)	
Authenticator app in Ahsay Mobile app .....	333

# 1 Overview

## 1.1 What is this software?

Ahsay brings you specialized client backup software, namely AhsayOBM, to provide a comprehensive backup solution for protecting file(s) / folder(s) on your machine and extend protection to both Android and iOS mobile devices, with a wide variety of backup destinations (major cloud storage service providers, FTP/SFTP, local drive, etc.) of your choice.

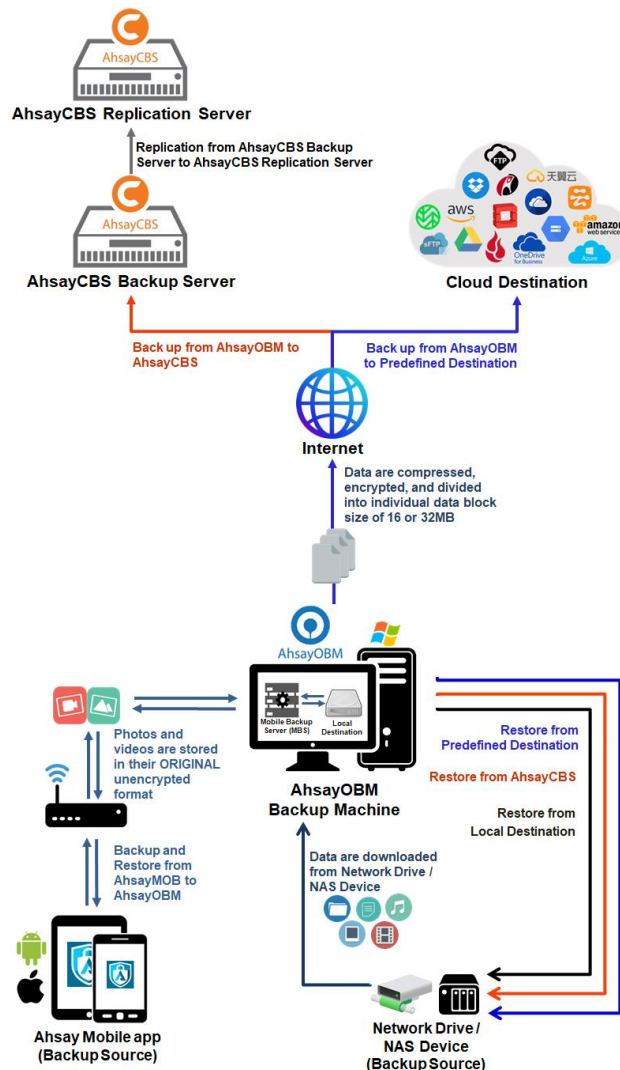
## 1.2 System Architecture

Below is the system architecture diagram illustrating the major elements involved in the backup process among the backup machine AhsayOBM, Ahsay Mobile app and AhsayCBS.

### NOTE

The first mobile backup may take up a few hours to back up all the photos and videos from your device. Subsequent backups will take less time. Please do the following for the first mobile backup to prevent any interruption during backup process:

- For Android, disable screen lock or timeout
- For iOS, disable auto-lock
- Turn off all power saving modes
- Connect to power source



## 1.3 Mobile Backup Server

Starting with AhsayOBM v8.5.0.0, the Mobile Backup Server (MBS) will be utilized to handle mobile backup and restore of Ahsay Mobile app. It is an integral part of AhsayOBM.

### System Diagram

The Mobile Backup Server (MBS) will be activated automatically when a mobile device installed with the Ahsay Mobile app is successfully registered for mobile backup with AhsayOBM. Afterwards, it will be automatically restarted whenever the AhsayOBM services is restarted or when the AhsayOBM machine is rebooted or powered on. The MBS will be deactivated when all mobile devices have deregistered from the mobile backup settings and the AhsayOBM services is restarted.

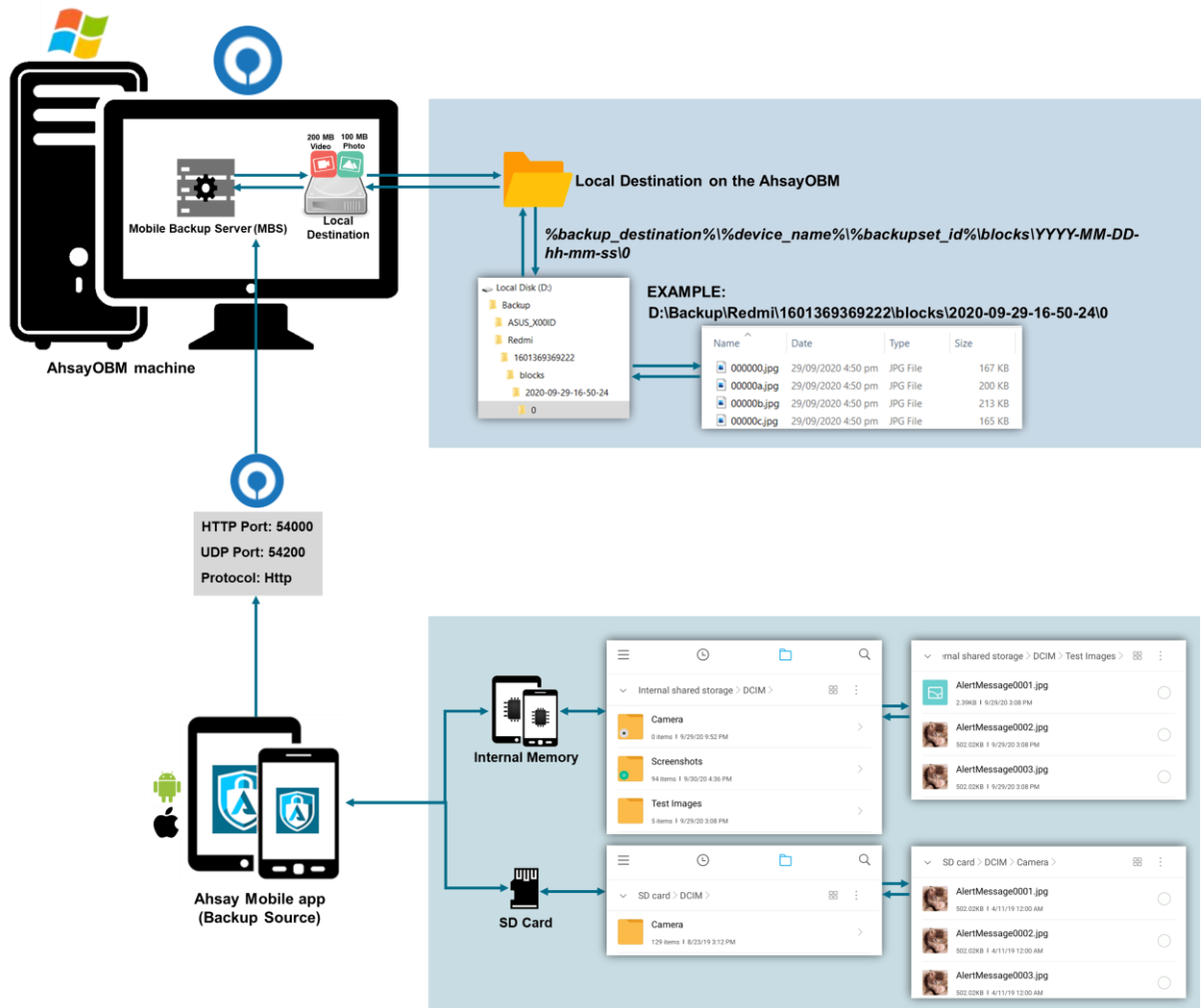
The MBS will use the following port ranges, **TCP Port:** 54000 to 54099, **UDP Port:** 54200 to 54299, **Protocol:** Http, for the request of Ahsay Mobile app.

The default TCP and UDP ports are **54000** and **54200**, if these ports are already in use by other applications or services, then the MBS will automatically acquire another port.

The actual TCP and UDP port can be seen on AhsayOBM when pairing a mobile device for mobile backup.



Photos and videos are stored either in mobile device's internal memory or SD Card. These are selected as backup source using the Ahsay Mobile app and will be backed up to the local destination of a Ahsay machine, that can be a Hard Drive, Flash Drive, and/or Network Drive in their ORIGINAL format unencrypted. For Android, photos and videos will retain all EXIF. While for iOS, photos and videos will retain most of the EXIF including, capture date, location, and lens.



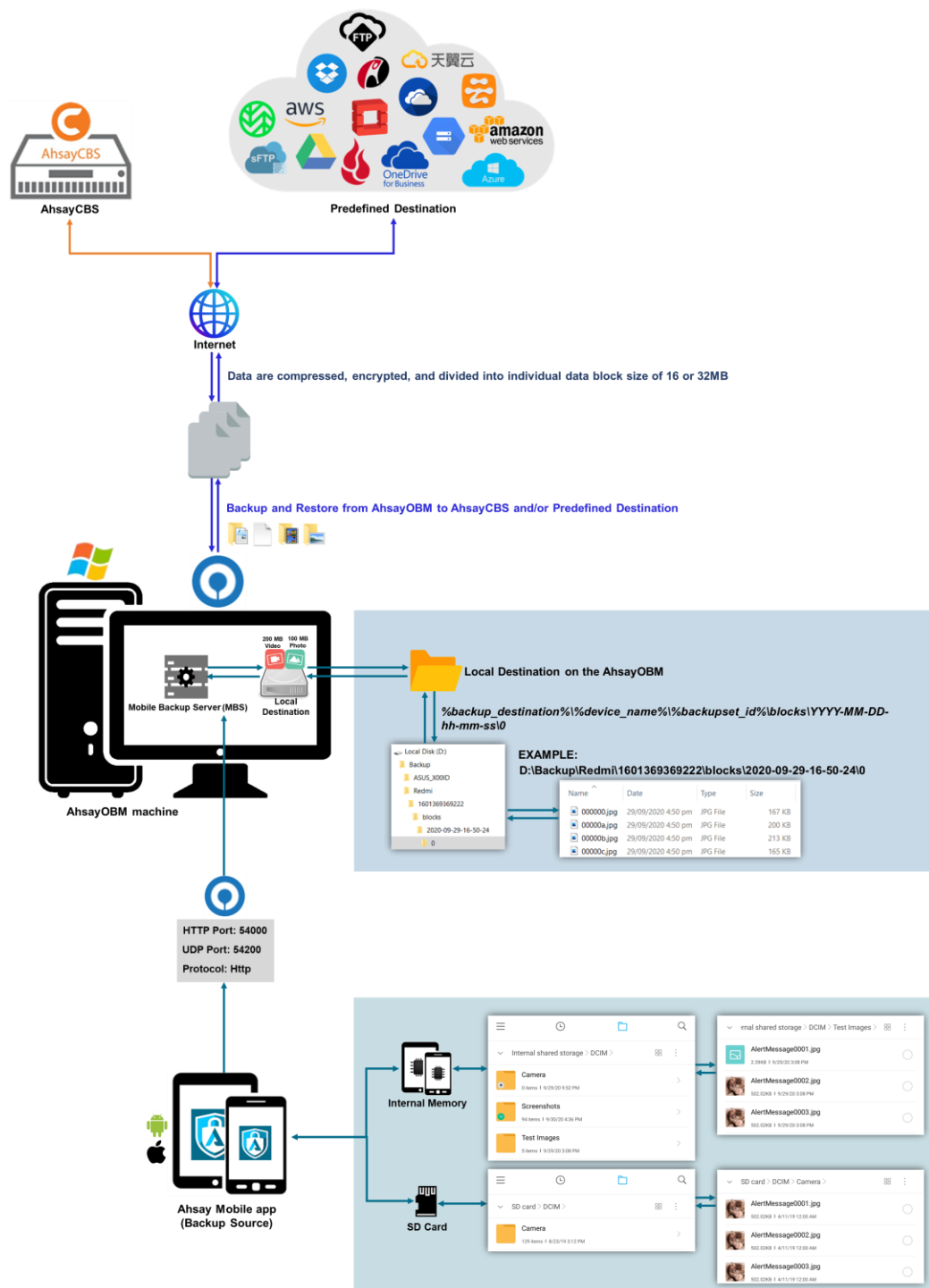


If storage of photos and videos to a predefined destination is required, then this can be done using AhsayOBM to perform a secondary backup and restore of the photos and videos on the local drive to the predefined destination.

To backup and restore photos and/or videos from the Ahsay Mobile app to AhsayOBM then AhsayCBS and/or Predefined Destination is a two-step process.

**1<sup>st</sup>:** Backup of photos and/or videos from Ahsay Mobile app to AhsayOBM local destination.

**2<sup>nd</sup>:** Create a File backup set using AhsayOBM, using the local backup destination as the backup source, and then backup this backup set to AhsayCBS and/or Predefined Destination.

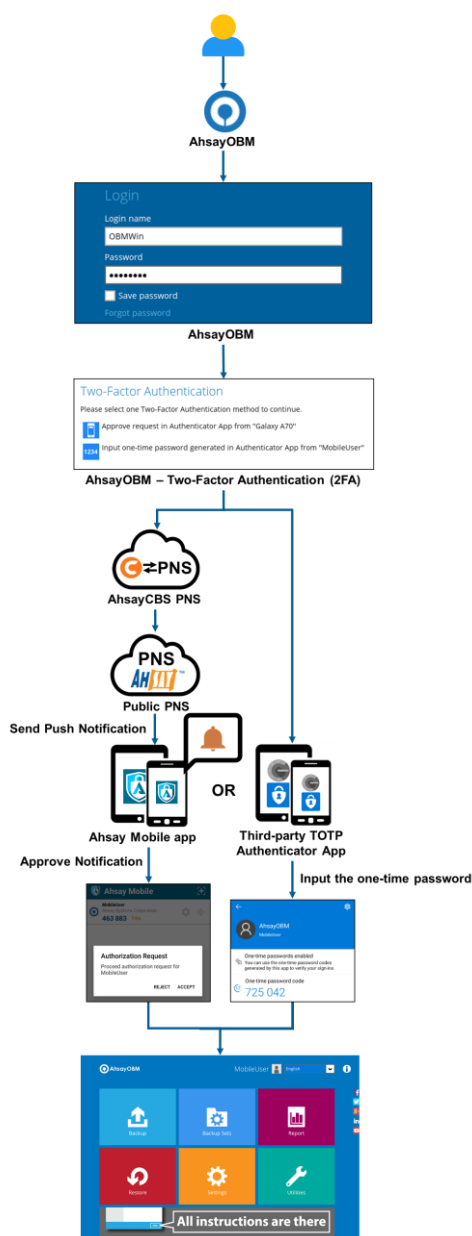


## 1.4 Two-Factor Authentication

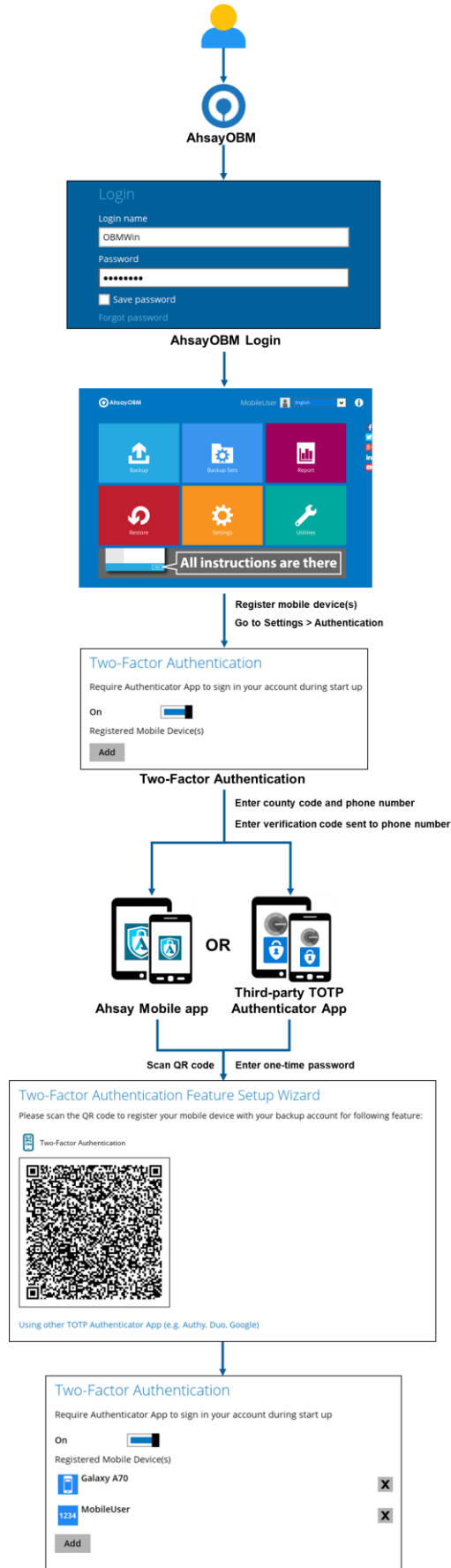
New two-factor authentication implemented on AhsayOBM v8.5.0.0 onwards, to include support for TOTP (Time-based One-time Password) and Push notification authentication using the Ahsay Mobile app to provide additional security for the user login process. Since aside from logging in with just a username and password, if two-factor authentication is enabled for the account, there will be an added step that is needed to be able to login.

Upon initial login to AhsayOBM, you will have an option to setup two-factor authentication or skip the setup and do it later. If you continue the setup of two-factor authentication, it will be automatically enabled for your account. Several mobile devices may be added for authentication.

For logins with two-factor authentication enabled, you will be asked to select the method that you would like to use. This depends on the authenticator app used, you will either accept the login request in the Ahsay Mobile app or enter a one-time password generated in the third-party TOTP authenticator app such as Google Authenticator, Microsoft Authenticator, LastPass etc.



This illustrates the registration of mobile devices for Two-Factor Authentication.



## 2 Requirements for Ahsay Mobile app

### 2.1 Backup Software Version Requirement

- Download and install the latest version of AhsayOBM v8.5.0.0 or above.
- Download and install the latest version of Ahsay Mobile app on the Play Store for android mobile devices and on the App Store for iOS mobile devices.

### 2.2 Network Connection

Ensure that the Ahsay Mobile app is connected to the same local network as the AhsayOBM machine. Failure to do so will prevent you from performing backup and/or restore.

### 2.3 Android and iOS Version Requirement

- For android device, android version must be 8 or above.
- For apple device, iOS version must be 12.0.0 or above.

## 3 Requirements for AhsayOBM on Windows

### 3.1 Hardware Requirements

Refer to the link below for details of the minimum and recommended requirements for installing AhsayOBM:

[FAQ: Ahsay Hardware Requirement List \(HRL\) for version 8.1 or above](#)

### 3.2 Software Requirements

Refer to the following article for the list of compatible operating systems and Hyper-V platforms:

[FAQ: Ahsay Software Compatibility List \(SCL\) for version 8.1 or above](#)

Refer to the following article for the list of compatible operating system for OpenDirect and Granular Restore:

[FAQ: Ahsay Software Compatibility List \(SCL\) for Granular and OpenDirect Restore](#)

### 3.3 Antivirus Exclusion Requirement

To optimize performance of AhsayOBM on Windows, and to avoid conflict with your antivirus software, refer to the following wiki article the list of processes and directory paths that should be added to all antivirus software white-list / exclusion list:

[https://wiki.ahsay.com/doku.php?id=public:8014\\_suggestion\\_on\\_antivirus\\_exclusions](https://wiki.ahsay.com/doku.php?id=public:8014_suggestion_on_antivirus_exclusions)

#### NOTE

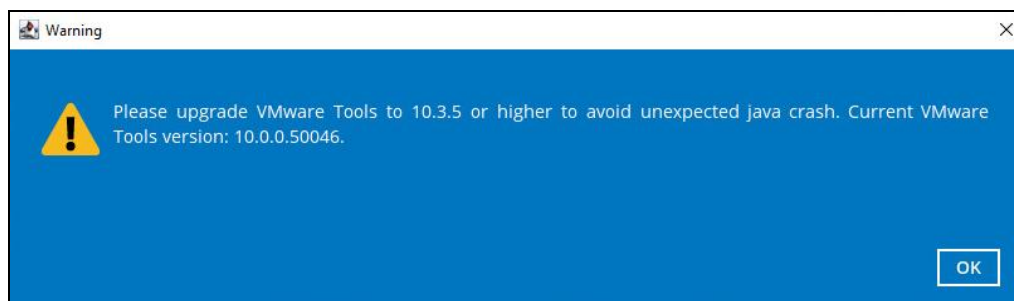
The bJW.exe process is automatically added to Windows Defender exclusion list for Windows 10 and 2016 / 2019, during installation / upgrade via installer or upgrade via AUA.

For mobile backups, the mobile backup destination must also be added to all antivirus software white-list / exclusion list.

### 3.4 Upgrade VMware Tools Requirement

To avoid unexpected java crash, if the Windows machine is a guest VM hosted on a VMware Host then it is highly recommended that the VMware tools version installed on the guest VM must be 10.0.5 or above.

Below is the warning message that will be displayed if the version of the VMware Tools is less than 10.0.5.



#### NOTE

For more information about the upgrade of VMware Tools, refer to this article [https://wiki.ahsay.com/doku.php?id=public:5288\\_ahsayobc\\_crash\\_on\\_vm\\_with\\_vmware\\_tools\\_pre-10.0.5](https://wiki.ahsay.com/doku.php?id=public:5288_ahsayobc_crash_on_vm_with_vmware_tools_pre-10.0.5).

### 3.5 Temporary Directory Requirements

The temporary directory is used for various purposes, such as storage of temporary spooled file (for database specific backup type in AhsayOBM), remote file list, local file list, temporary delta file and other files of temporary nature.

It is strongly recommended to use a local drive instead of a network drive to ensure optimal backup/restore performance.

### 3.6 Network Drive Requirements

The login accounts for network drives must have read and write access permission to ensure that backup and restore would be successful.

### 3.7 Firewall Settings

Make sure that your firewall settings allows network traffic through the following domain and/or ports:

- For AhsayOBM to function correctly must allow outbound connections to \*.ahsay.com via port 80 and 443.
- For mobile backup inbound / outbound network traffic must be allowed through the following default ports: HTTP port: 54000 and UDP port: 54200.

The actual ports used may be different, please refer to [Chapter 1.3: Mobile Backup Server \(MBS\)](#) for more details.

### 3.8 Two-Factor Authentication Requirements

Please refer to the [Ahsay Mobile App User Guide for Android and iOS – Chapter 2.4](#) for details of the minimum and recommended requirements for using Two-Factor Authentication on Ahsay Mobile app.

### 3.9 Mobile Backup Requirements

Please refer to the [Ahsay Mobile App User Guide for Android and iOS – Chapter 2.5](#) for details of the minimum and recommended requirements for installing the Ahsay Mobile app.

### 3.10 Limitations

#### Enhanced Network Drive Support

- For network drives which have not been already setup or mapped in Windows.
- Temporary folder location is not supported with individual login credentials but can still be setup separately using existing Windows User Authentication login.
- It also does not support Pre-Backup and Post-Backup Commands.
- Not supported on “Restore Raw file” and “Restore to local computer” options.
- Not supported for mobile backup destinations.



## 3.11 Best Practices and Recommendations

### 3.11.1 Periodic Backup Schedule

The periodic backup schedule should be reviewed regularly to ensure the interval is sufficient to handle the data volume on the machine. Over time, data usage pattern may change on a production server, i.e. the number of new files created, the number of files which are updated/delete, new users may be added etc.

When using periodic backup schedules with small backup intervals such as backup every 1 minute, 2 minutes, 3 minutes etc. although the increased backup frequently does ensure that changes to files are captured regularly which allows greater flexibility in recovery to a point in time.

Consider the following key points to efficiently handle backup sets with periodic backup schedule.

- **Hardware** – to achieve optimal performance, compatible hardware requirements is a must. Ensure you have the backup machine's appropriate hardware specifications to accommodate frequency of backups,
  - so that the data is always backed up within the periodic backup interval
  - so that the backup frequency does not affect the performance of the production server
- **Network** – make sure to have enough network bandwidth to accommodate the volume of data within the backup interval.
- **Storage** – ensure you have enough storage quota allocated based on the amount of new data and changed data you will backup.

**Retention Policy** – also make sure to take into account the retention policy settings and retention area storage management which can grow because of the changes in the backup data for each backup job.





### 3.11.2 Set up of both Periodic and Continuous Backup Schedule









On a Windows platform, although it is possible to setup both Periodic backup schedule and Continuous backup schedules on a File backup sets, it is recommended to only use one schedule as only one schedule backup job can run at any one time.

For example, a backup job is started by the Periodic backup schedule and is running, if a Continuous backup is scheduled to run, the backup job will be skipped and vice versa.

### 3.11.3 Periodic Backup Schedule vs. Continuous Backup Schedule

The following table shows the comparison between a periodic and continuous backup schedule.

Features	Periodic Backup Schedule	Continuous Backup Schedule
Will run whether or not a change on the backup source is made		
Run Retention Policy after backup		

Exclude system files from the backup		
Only apply to files smaller than (MB) size		
Exclude Filter		
Supported on all operating systems (i.e. Windows, MacOS, Linux, FreeBSD, QNAP, and Synology)		Only supported on Windows operating system
Supports all backup set types		Only supports File Backup Sets

### 3.11.4 Temporary Directory Folder Location

Temporary directory folder is used by AhsayOBM for storing backup set index files and any incremental or differential backup files generated during a backup job.

To ensure optimal backup/restoration performance, it is recommended that the temporary directory folder is set to a local drive with sufficient free disk space.

## 4 Get Started with AhsayOBM

This quick start guide will walk you through the following 6 major parts to get you started with using AhsayOBM.

### Download and Install

Download and install AhsayOBM on your Windows machine

### Launch the App

Launch and log in to AhsayOBM

### Setup 2FA and/or Mobile Backup

Register mobile device for 2FA and/or mobile backup (optional)

### Create a Backup Set

Create a backup set according to your preference

### Run Backup Jobs

Run the backup job to backup data

### Restore Data

Restore backed up data to your system

## 5 OpenDirect Restore

### 5.1 What is OpenDirect Restore?

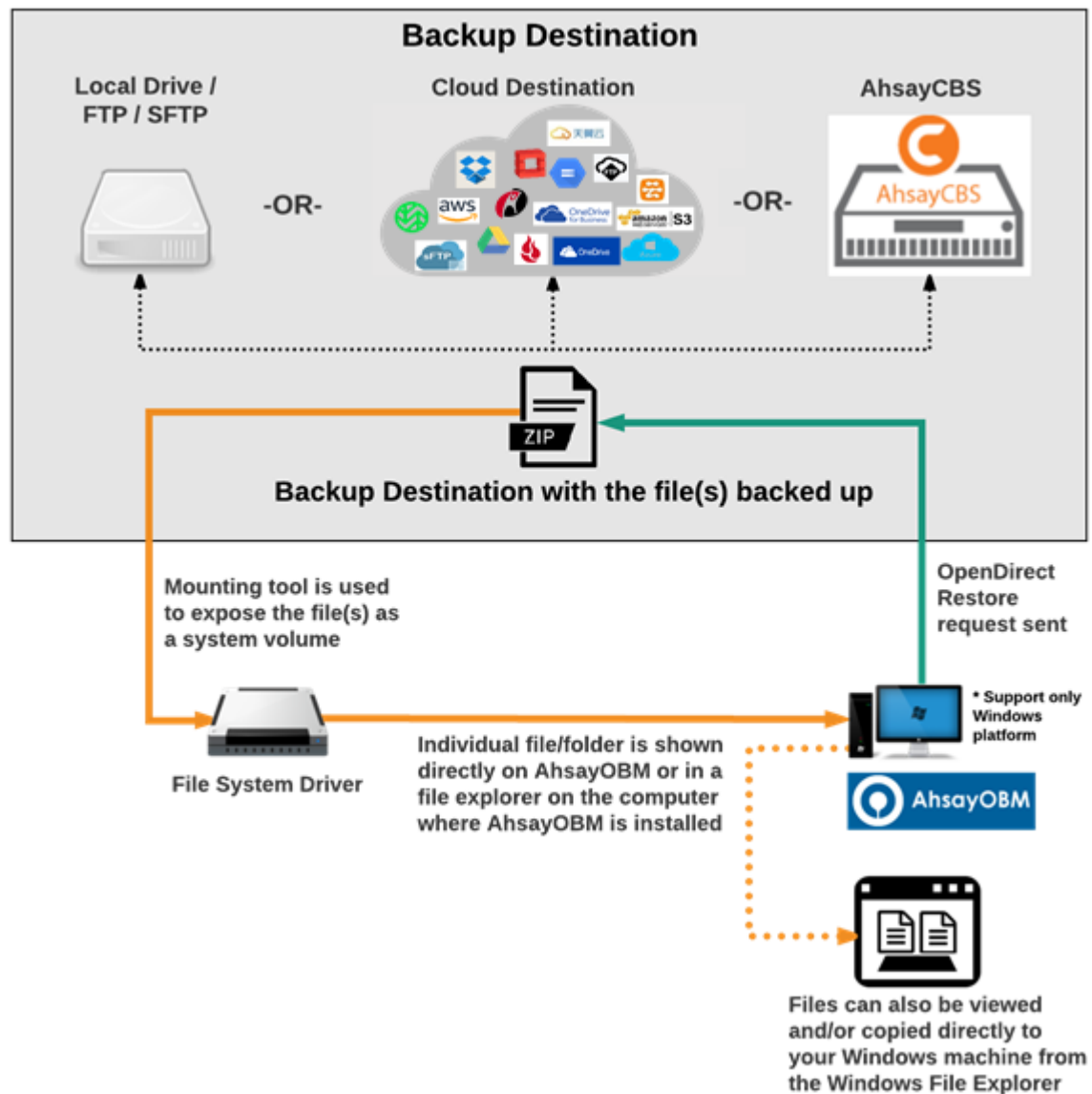
OpenDirect restore is an additional restore options for restoring files from a Windows File backup set. The OpenDirect restore method makes use of the granular restore technology to make selective restore of individual files from a large compressed or image file, for example zip, RAR, ISO files, without the need to restore the compressed or image file first, to give you a fast and convenient file restore solution.

During the OpenDirect restore process, the files/folder can be viewed and/or copied from the Windows File Explorer on the Windows machine you are performing the restore. OpenDirect restore is only supported on File backup sets created and backed up using AhsayOBM on Windows platform with OpenDirect restore feature enabled.

#### **IMPORTANT**

OpenDirect restore requires an additional OpenDirect / Granular Restore add-on module license to work. Contact your backup service provider for further details.

## 5.2 How does OpenDirect Restore work?



## 5.3 Benefits of using OpenDirect Restore

### Comparison between OpenDirect File Restore and Traditional File Restore

OpenDirect Restore	
Introduction	
OpenDirect restore allows you to quickly access individual files from a large compressed or image file by viewing and/or copying files from the file explorer on the Windows you are performing the restore, without having to fully restore the whole compressed or image file first.	
Pros	
<b>Restore of Entire Compressed File Not Required</b>	As opposed to the traditional restore where you have to restore the entire compressed or image file first before you can access any individual file in it, OpenDirect restore allows you to view and download individual files from a compressed or image file, without having to restore compressed file or image file first.
<b>Ability to Restore Selected Files</b>	When restoring a large compressed or image file, sometimes, you may only need to restore individual file(s) out of the entire file, therefore, OpenDirect restore gives you the flexibility to restore selective file(s) quickly, so it saves you time and effort to achieve your restore goal.
Cons	
<b>No Encryption and Compression</b>	To ensure optimal restore performance, the backup of the files in an OpenDirect file backup set will <b>NOT</b> be encrypted and compressed, therefore, you may have to take these factors in consideration when selecting this restore option.

Traditional Restore	
Introduction	
The traditional restore method restores the entire compressed file or image file. Backed up data can only be accessed when complete restore is performed.	
Pros	
<b>Backup with Compression and Encryption</b>	Backup file(s) are compressed, therefore in smaller file size, and encrypted before being uploaded to the backup destination.
Cons	
<b>Slower Recovery</b>	As the entire compressed or image file must be restored before you can access any individual files, restore time could be long if the file size is large



## 5.4 Requirements

### 5.4.1 Supported Backup Modules

OpenDirect restore is only supported on File backup sets created and backed up using AhsayOBM on Windows platform with OpenDirect restore feature enabled

### 5.4.2 License Requirements

An OpenDirect / Granular restore add-on module license is required per backup set for this feature to work. Contact your backup service provider for more details

### 5.4.3 Backup Quota Storage

As compression is not enabled for OpenDirect file backup sets, to optimize restore performance the storage quota required will be higher than non-OpenDirect file backup sets. Contact your backup service provider for details

### 5.4.4 Windows Operating System

AhsayOBM must be installed on a 32 bit or 64-bit Windows Operating System as libraries for OpenDirect only supports Windows platform.

Windows 2008 R2 SP1 or above	Windows 2012	Windows 2012 R2
Windows 2016	Windows 7 SP1 or above	Windows 8
Windows 8.1	Windows 10	Windows 2019

### 5.4.5 Available Spare Drive Letter

One spare drive letter must be available on the Windows machine for the OpenDirect restore process, as the compressed file or image is mounted on Windows as a logical drive. AhsayOBM will automatically take the next available drive letter in alphabetical order for the compressed or image file.

#### NOTES

1. The Windows drive letters A, B, and C are not used by OpenDirect restore.
2. The OpenDirect restore assigned drive letter(s) will be released once you exit from AhsayOBM UI.

### 5.4.6 Network Requirements

Recommended minimum network speed is **at least 100Mbps download speed**.

The network bandwidth requirements will increase in proportion to the size of the compressed file/image and or the incremental delta chain length to ensure optimal performance. Working with limited network bandwidth may severely affect the granular restore performance.

You can use an online network speed test website (e.g., [www.speedtest.net](http://www.speedtest.net)) to get an idea of the actual bandwidth of the machine

### 5.4.7 Other Dependencies

The following dependencies are restore-related. Therefore, they will be checked by AhsayOBM only when an OpenDirect restore is performed. Absence of these elements will not affect the backup job but would cause the restore to fail.

- Microsoft Visual C++ 2015 Redistributable (x86) / (x64)  
<https://www.microsoft.com/en-us/download/details.aspx?id=48145>
- Update for Universal C Runtime in Windows  
<https://support.microsoft.com/en-us/help/2999226/update-for-universal-c-runtime-in-windows>
- **For Windows 7 and Windows Server 2008 R2 only**  
Microsoft Security Advisory 3033929  
<https://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/security/3033929.aspx>

### 5.4.8 Permissions

The Windows login account used for installation and operation of the AhsayOBM client machine requires Administrator privileges.

## 6 Download and Install AhsayOBM

There are two installation modes of AhsayOBM, online installation and offline installation. Below is the table of comparison between online installation and offline installation.

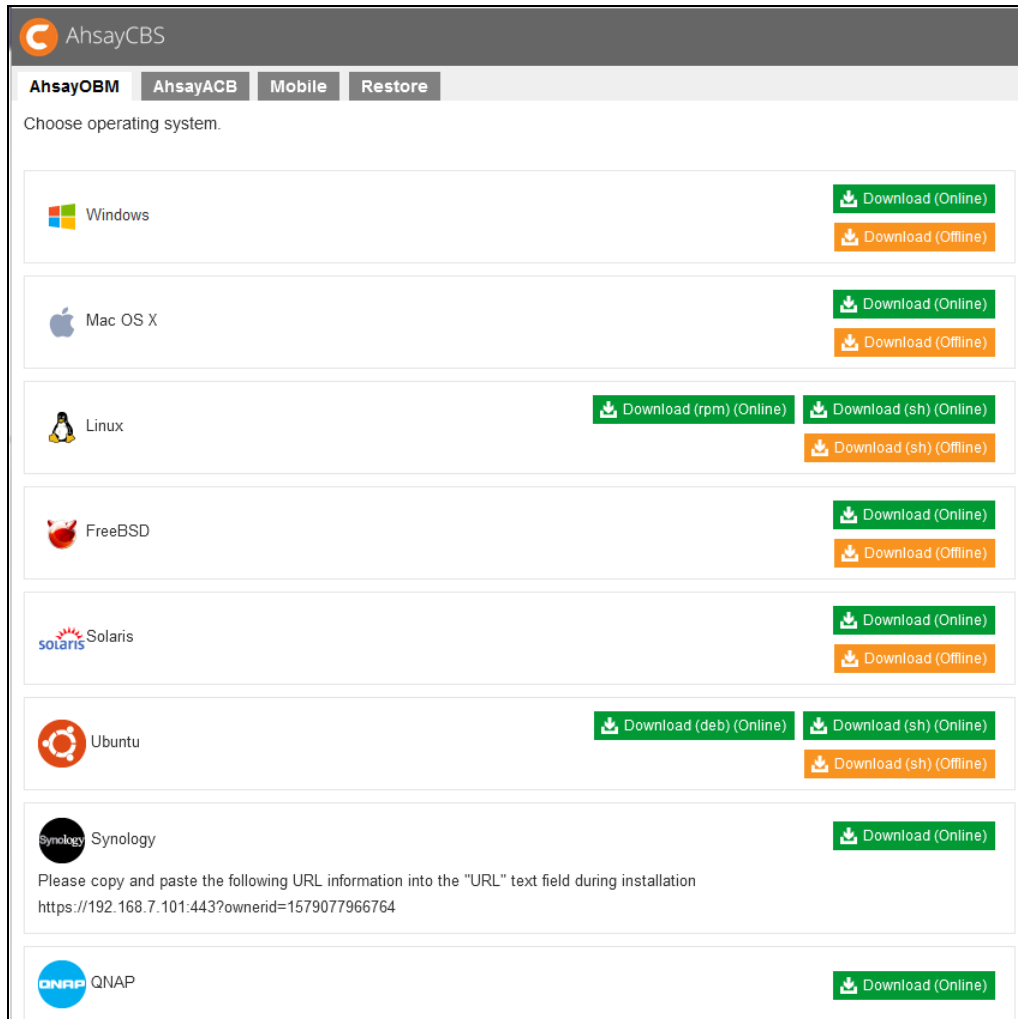
	Online Installation	Offline Installation
<b>Installation Time</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>➤ Takes more time as it needs to download the binary and component files (80MB to 132MB depending on operating system) each time the installation is run.</li><li>➤ Online installer size is 6KB to 3.5MB depending on operating system as it contains only the initial installation package files.</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>➤ Takes less time as all the necessary binary and component files are already available in the offline installer and offline installer can be downloaded once but reused many times.</li><li>➤ Offline installer size is 50MB to 195MB depending on operating system as it contains all the necessary binary and component files.</li></ul>
<b>Deployments</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>➤ Suitable for single or small amount of device installations.</li><li>➤ Suitable for sites with fast and stable internet connection as internet connection is needed each time when an installation is run.</li><li>➤ A slow internet connection will result in longer installation time and interrupted, or unstable internet connection may lead to unsuccessful installation.</li><li>➤ Ensures the latest version of the product is installed.</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>➤ Suitable for multiple or mass device installations.</li><li>➤ Suitable for client sites with metered internet connections as once the offline installer is downloaded, internet connection is not needed each time when an installation is run.</li><li>➤ May need to update the product version after installation if an older offline installer is used.</li></ul>

## 6.1 Download AhsayOBM

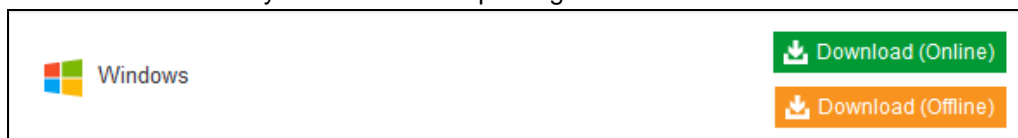
1. In a web browser, click the blue icon on the top right corner to open the download page for the AhsayOBM installation package file from your backup service provider's website.



2. In the **AhsayOBM** tab of the download page, you can choose the AhsayOBM installer by operating system.



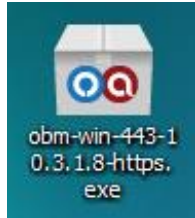
3. In the **Windows** section, click on the **Download (Online)** or **Download (Offline)** button to download the AhsayOBM installation package.



## 6.2 Install AhsayOBM

### 6.2.1 Option 1: Online Installation Option

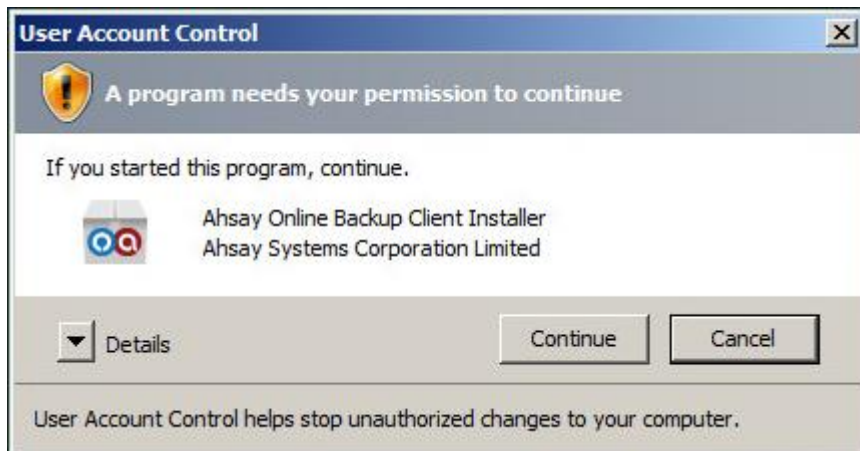
1. Launch the online installation package file you have downloaded from the download section above.



2. Click **Run** when you see this message.



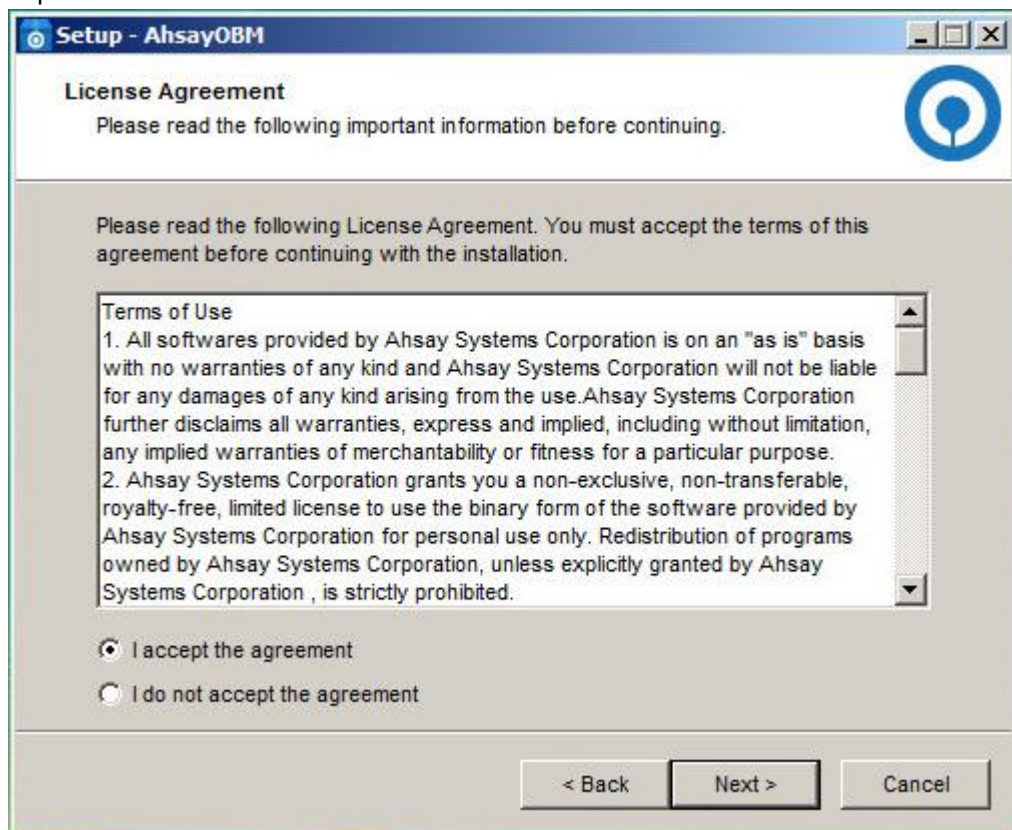
3. The following dialog box will appear only if User Account Control is enabled. Click **Continue** to start the installation.



4. Click **Next** to continue.

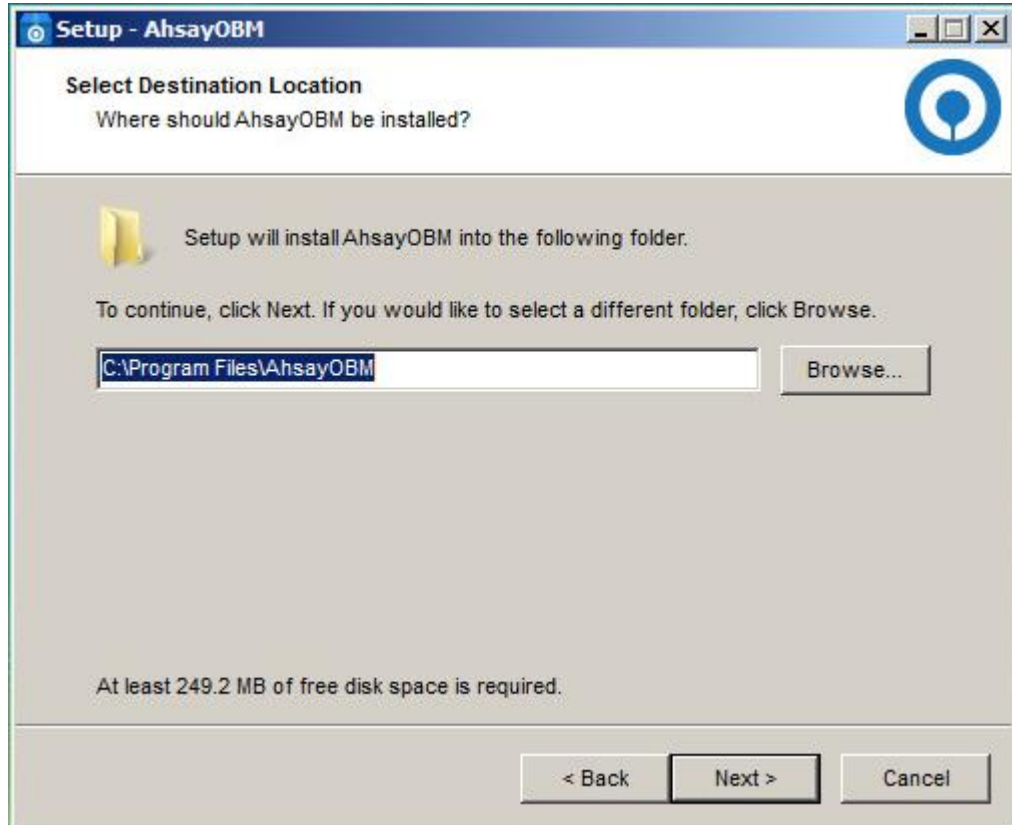


5. Select **I accept the agreement** after reading the license agreement. Then, click **Next** to proceed.





6. Choose the installation directory. Then, click **Next** to continue.

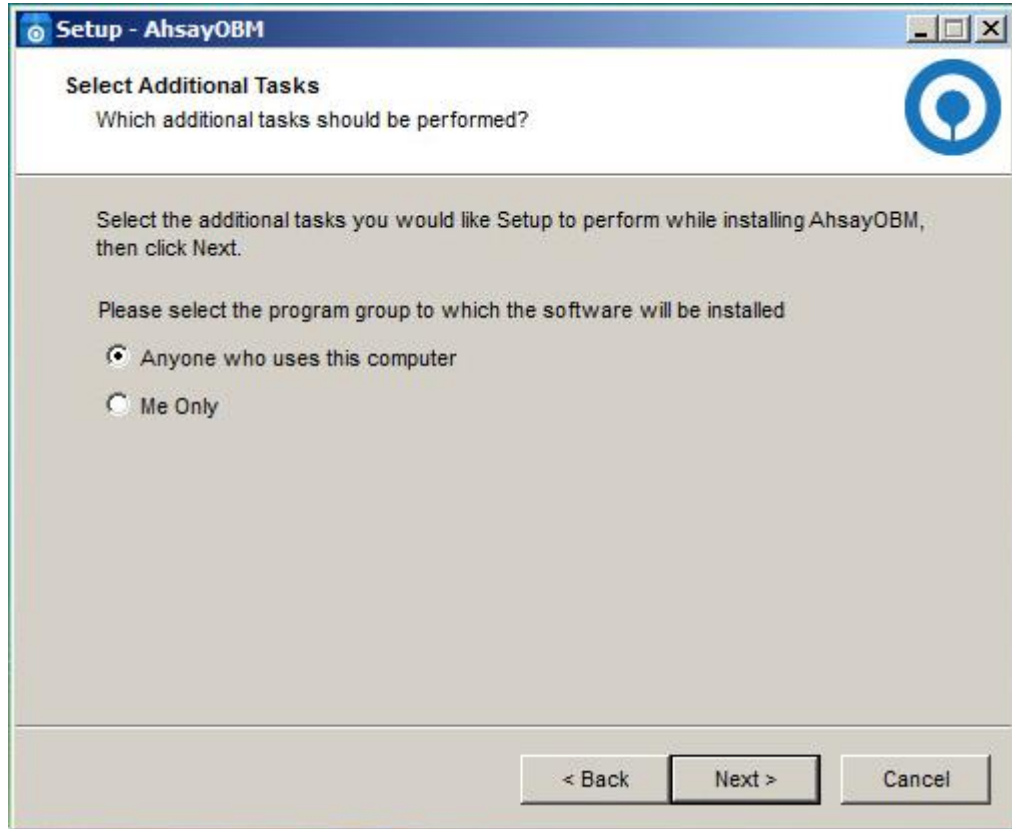


7. Select the program group to which the software will be installed. The default setting is "Anyone who uses this computer". The following are the difference between the two settings:
- Anyone who uses this computer – the AhsayOBM System Tray icon will be available to all Windows users and backup notifications will be displayed on the Windows System Tray. For more information, please refer to [Chapter 7.11 System Tray](#).
  - Me Only – the AhsayOBM System Tray icon will not be available and backup notifications will not be displayed on the Windows System Tray.

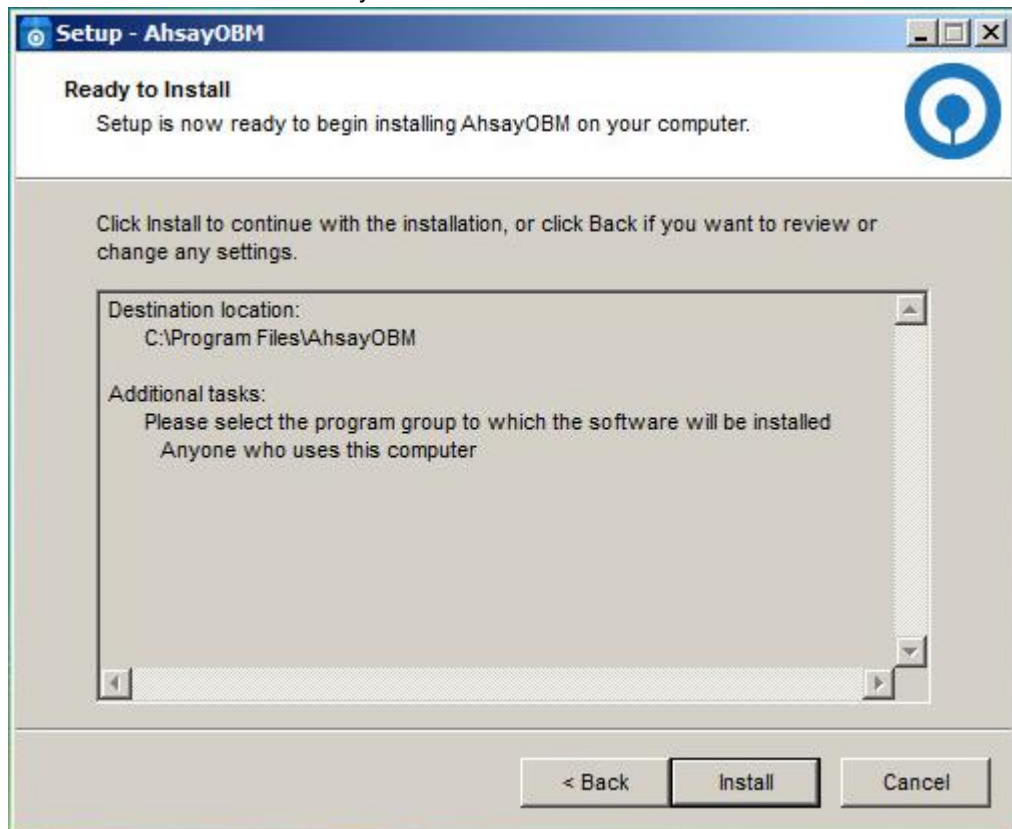
**NOTE**

Once the program group setting has been chosen and the installation completed; if you need to change the setting, this will require an uninstallation and re-installation of the application.

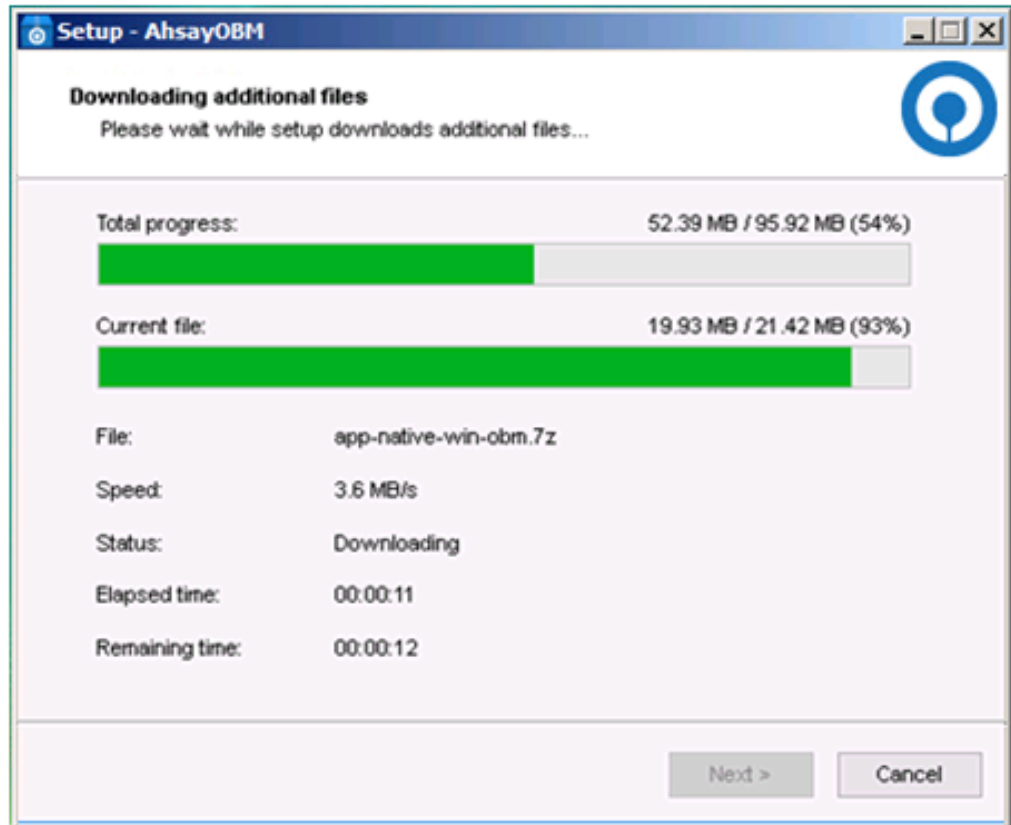
Click **Next** to proceed.



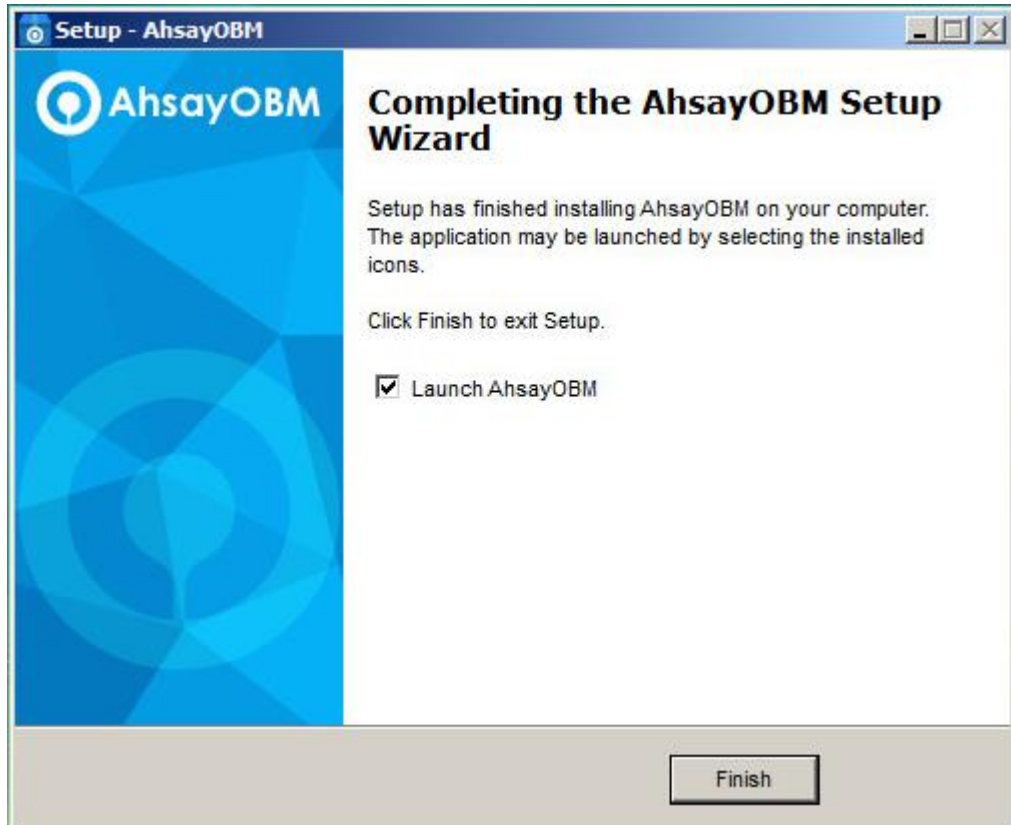
8. The installation will start after you click **Install**.



9. The component files will be downloaded first during installation.

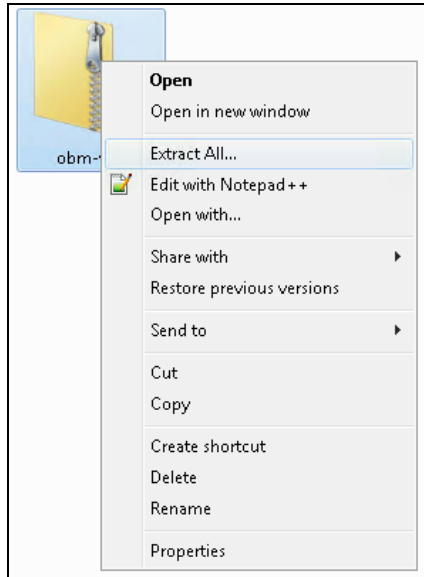


10. Click **Finish** to complete the installation.

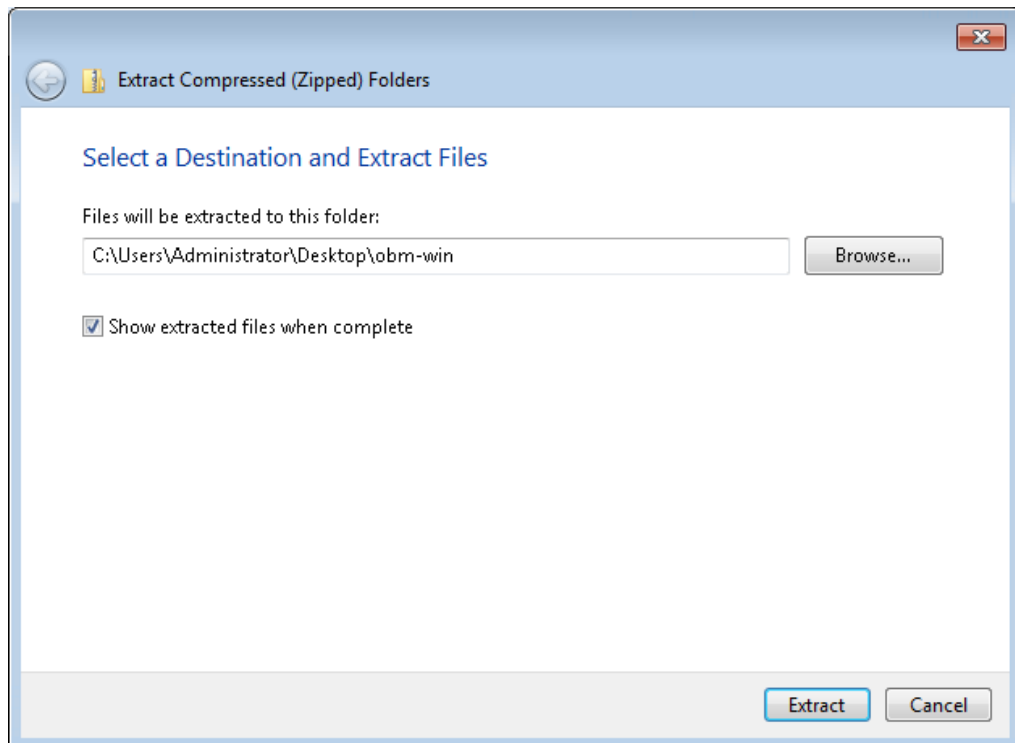


### 6.2.2 Option 2: Offline Installation Option

1. Extract the offline installation package file (**obm-win.zip**) you have downloaded from the download section above.



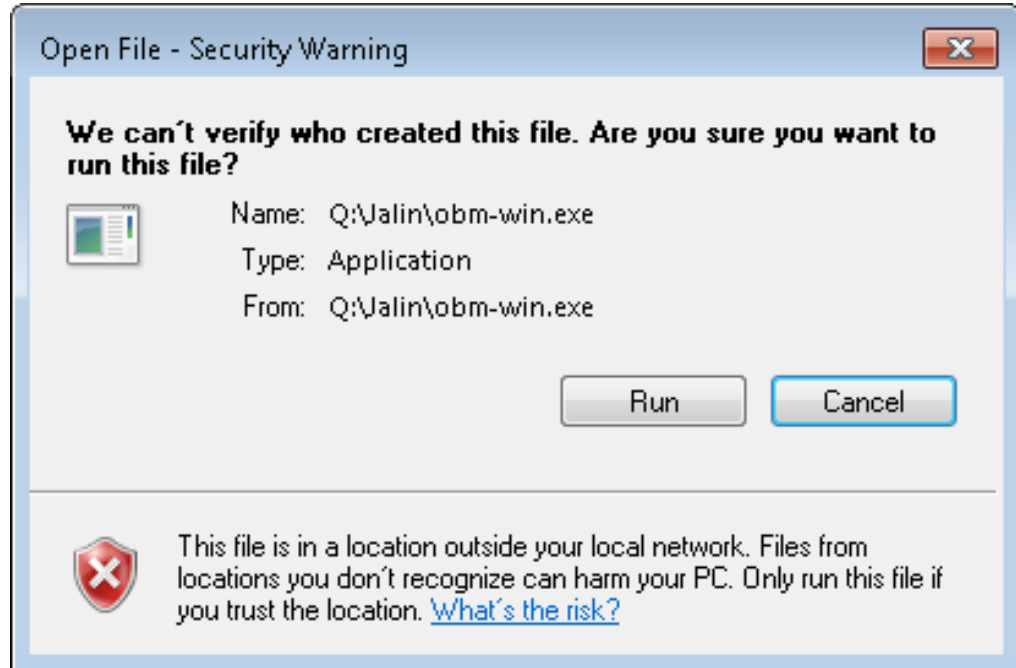
2. Select a destination and extract files.



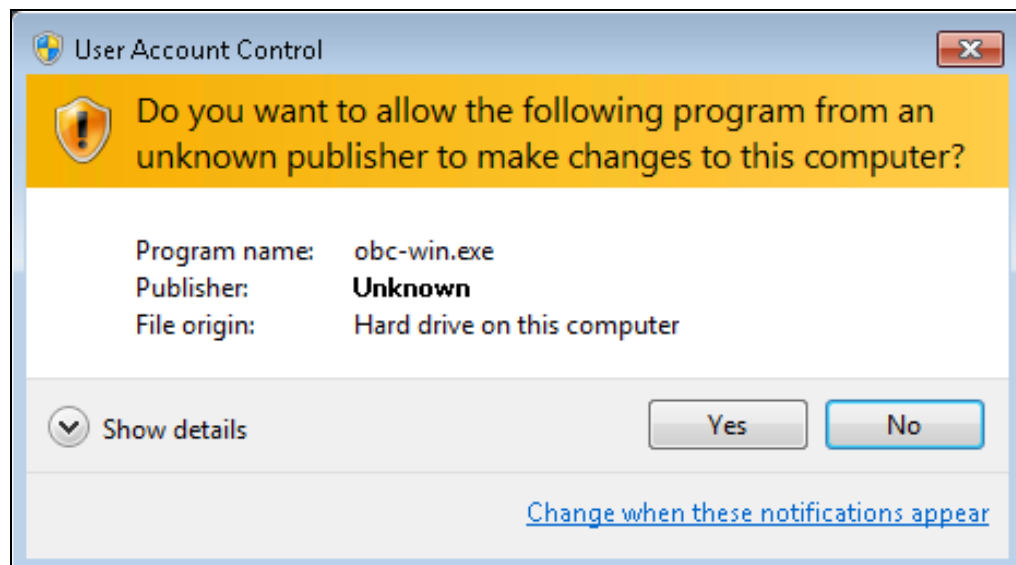
3. Launch the installer you have extracted from the zip format file.



4. Click **Run** when you see this message.



5. The following dialog box will appear only if User Account Control is enabled. Click **Yes** to start the installation.



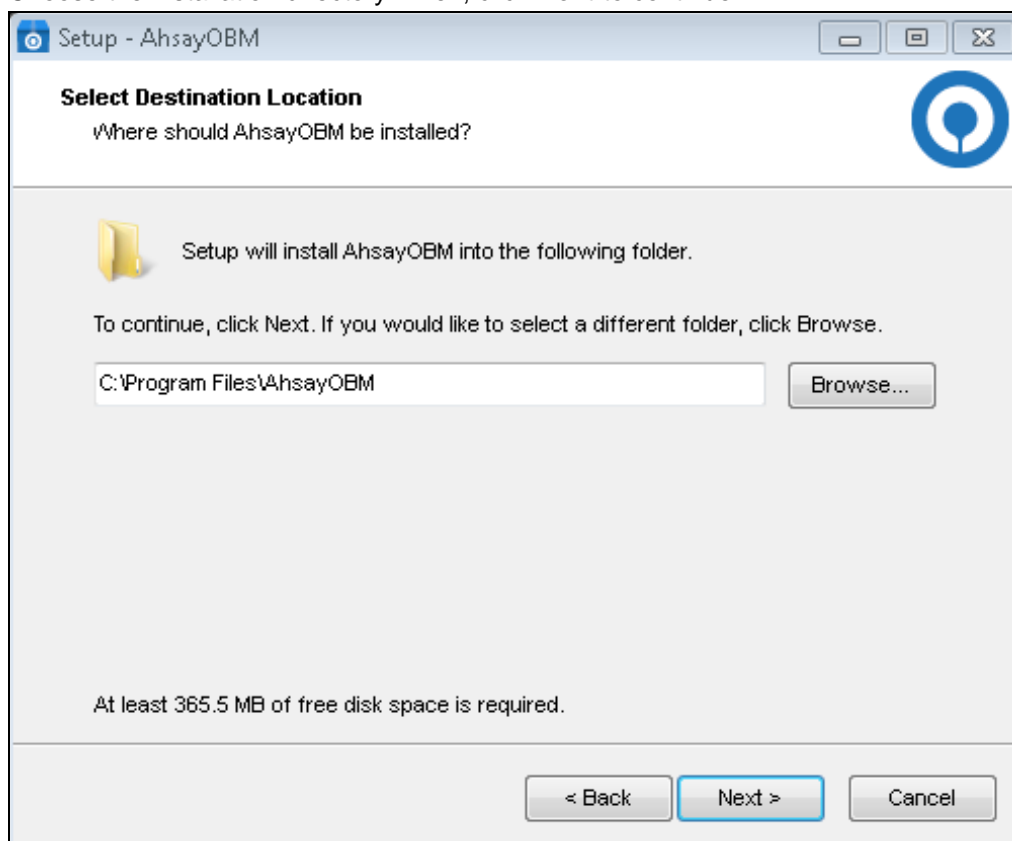
6. Click **Next** to continue.



7. Select **I accept the agreement** after reading the license agreement. Then, click **Next** to proceed.



8. Choose the installation directory. Then, click **Next** to continue.



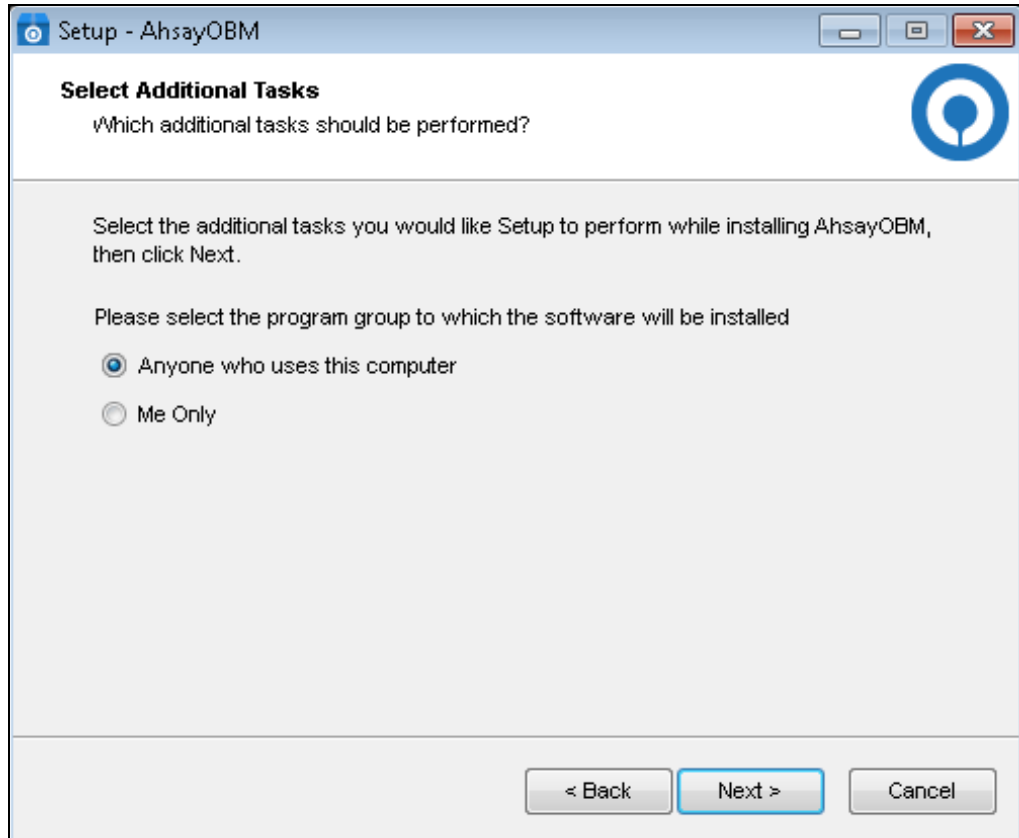
9. Select the program group to which the software will be installed. The default setting is “Anyone who uses this computer”. The following are the difference between the two settings:

- Anyone who uses this computer – the AhsayOBM System Tray icon will be available to all Windows users and backup notifications will be displayed on the Windows System Tray. For more information, please refer to [Chapter 7.11 System Tray](#).
- Me Only – the AhsayOBM System Tray icon will not be available and backup notifications will not be displayed on the Windows System Tray.

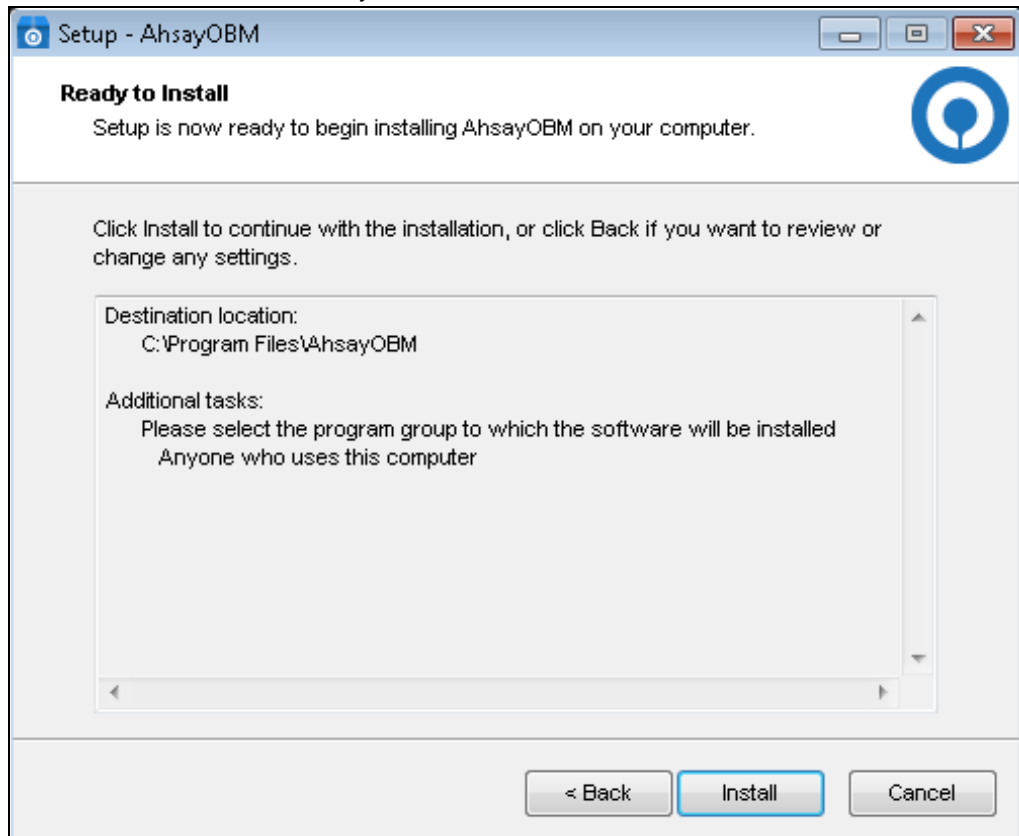
**NOTE**

Once the program group setting has been chosen and the installation completed; if you need to change the setting, this will require an uninstallation and re-installation of the application.

Click **Next** to proceed.

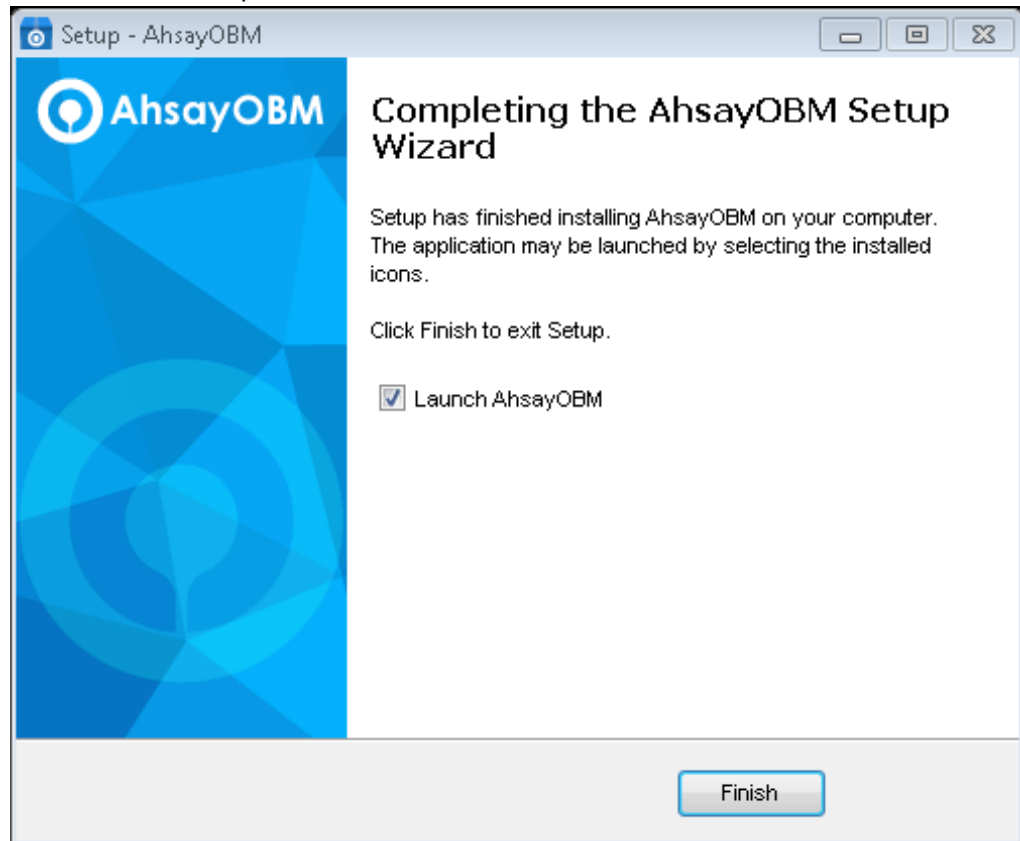


10. The installation will start after you click **Install**.





11. Click **Finish** to complete the installation.



## 6.3 AhsayOBM Services

The AhsayOBM Services is a key component which regulates and controls several important functions on AhsayOBM.

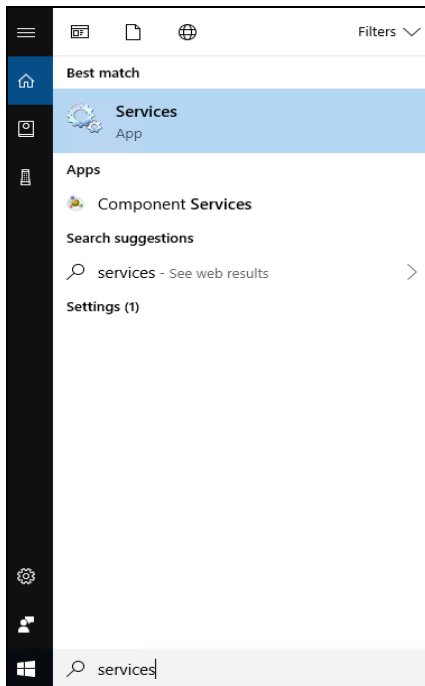
Function	Description
<b>Scheduled Backups</b>	Ensures that backup jobs which are setup to run at a certain date and/or time are started.
<b>Continuous Backups (Windows platform only)</b>	Ensures that Continuous backups are run according to the backup interval.
<b>Mobile Backup Server (MBS)</b>	<p>Ensures that registered mobile devices can perform backups to AhsayOBM.</p> <p>The MBS will be activated when a mobile device is registered for mobile backup on AhsayOBM.</p> <p>The MBS will be deactivated when all mobile devices have been deregistered from the mobile backup settings and the AhsayOBM services is restarted.</p>

Therefore, it is very important to ensure the AhsayOBM Services are running after:

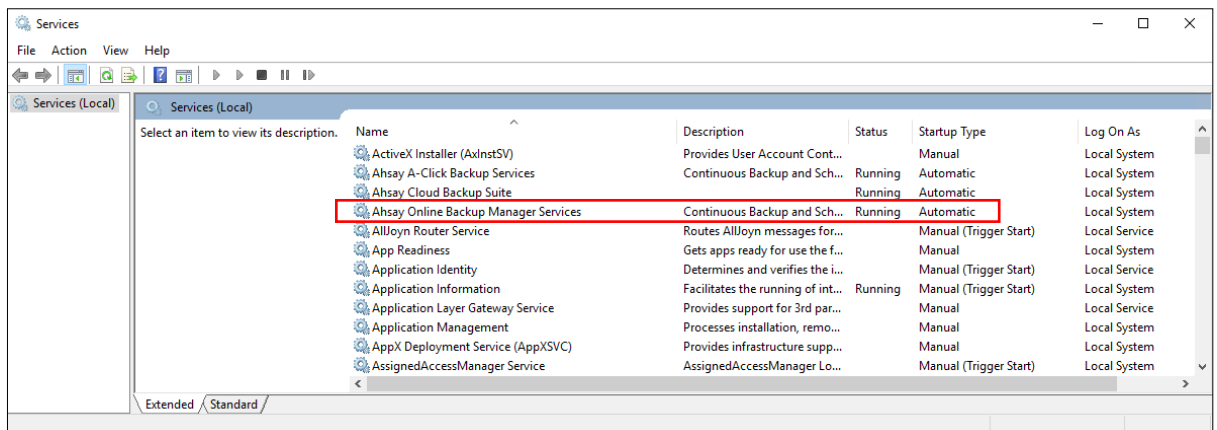
- a new AhsayOBM installation
- an AhsayOBM software update
- the machine was rebooted
- the machine is powered on
- the machine wakes up from hibernation or standby mode

Otherwise, all of the functions above will stop working.

To check if the AhsayOBM Scheduler Service is running properly on the local machine, go to start menu and search for **Services**.



Look for the **Ahsay Online Backup Manager Services** on the list. The **status** should be “Running”, and the **Startup Type** should be “Automatic”.

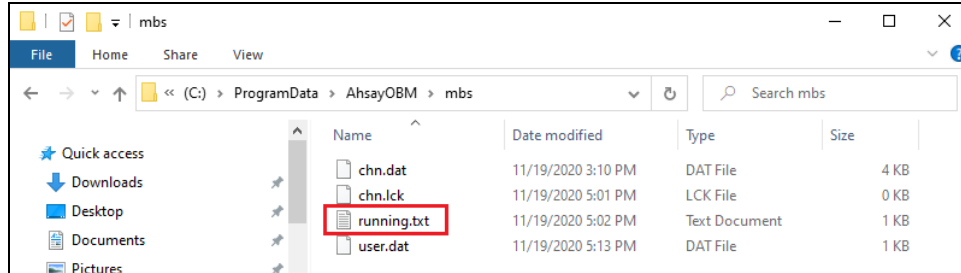


## 6.4 Mobile Backup Server (MBS) Status Check and Ahsay Mobile app Connection Check

Before starting a backup on your mobile device, check the following first:

1. Check HTTP port, IP address and UDP port in the **running.txt** file. Go to \ProgramData\AhsayOBM\mbs.

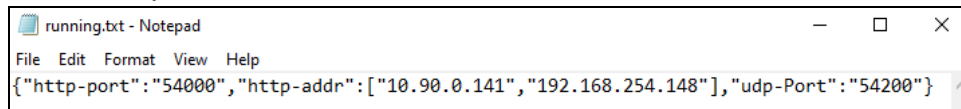
Example: C:\ProgramData\AhsayOBM\mbs



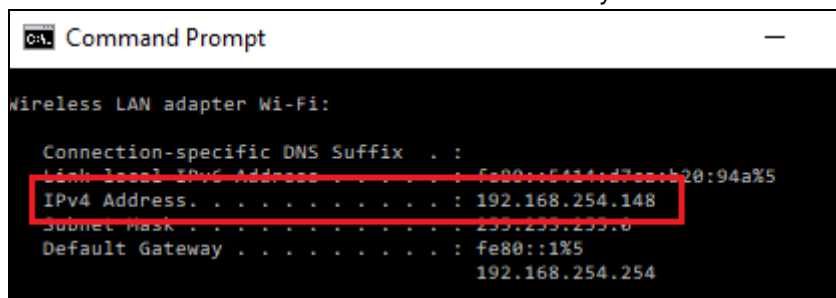
### NOTE

If the "running.txt" file does not exist, then the MBS is not running. Restart the AhsayOBM services.

After opening the file it will show the HTTP port, IP address and UDP port which are in actual use by the MBS.



2. Open a command prompt and check if the IP address captured in the running.txt file is the correct IP address of the machine where AhsayOBM is installed.



- To verify the actual HTTP port used by MBS, type the command `netstat -an|more`.

```

Administrator: Command Prompt
C:\WINDOWS\system32>netstat -an|more

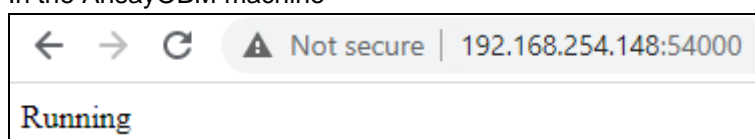
Active Connections

Proto Local Address           Foreign Address         State
TCP   0.0.0.0:80              0.0.0.0:0              LISTENING
TCP   0.0.0.0:135             0.0.0.0:0              LISTENING
TCP   0.0.0.0:445             0.0.0.0:0              LISTENING
TCP   0.0.0.0:1801            0.0.0.0:0              LISTENING
TCP   0.0.0.0:2103            0.0.0.0:0              LISTENING
TCP   0.0.0.0:2105            0.0.0.0:0              LISTENING
TCP   0.0.0.0:2107            0.0.0.0:0              LISTENING
TCP   0.0.0.0:5040            0.0.0.0:0              LISTENING
TCP   0.0.0.0:5357            0.0.0.0:0              LISTENING
TCP   0.0.0.0:7777            0.0.0.0:0              LISTENING
TCP   0.0.0.0:49664           0.0.0.0:0              LISTENING
TCP   0.0.0.0:49665           0.0.0.0:0              LISTENING
TCP   0.0.0.0:49666           0.0.0.0:0              LISTENING
TCP   0.0.0.0:49667           0.0.0.0:0              LISTENING
TCP   0.0.0.0:49668           0.0.0.0:0              LISTENING
TCP   0.0.0.0:49669           0.0.0.0:0              LISTENING
TCP   0.0.0.0:49673           0.0.0.0:0              LISTENING
TCP   0.0.0.0:49674           0.0.0.0:0              LISTENING
TCP   0.0.0.0:49732           0.0.0.0:0              LISTENING
TCP   0.0.0.0:49735           0.0.0.0:0              LISTENING
TCP   0.0.0.0:54000           0.0.0.0:0              LISTENING
TCP   10.30.0.141:135         0.0.0.0:0              LISTENING
TCP   10.90.0.141:56136       10.3.0.120:21          ESTABLISHED
TCP   127.0.0.1:4001          0.0.0.0:0              LISTENING
  
```

- Make sure that your firewall setting allows network traffic through the following HTTP and UDP ports to ensure that the communication between your machine and mobile device is successful: HTTP Port: 54000 to 54099 and UDP Port: 54200 to 54299. Otherwise, mobile backup and restore will not work.
- To perform a status check on the MBS. Open a browser on the AhsayOBM machine and type the IP address, followed by the TCP port.

For example: If the HTTP port used is 54000, `http://192.168.254.148:54000`, you should get the following result which shows “Running” status. This means the MBS is running.

In the AhsayOBM machine



- To run a connection test between the mobile device and machine open a browser in your mobile device and type the IP address followed by the TCP port.

For example: If the HTTP port used is 55000, `http://192.168.254.148:54000`, you should get the following result which shows “Running” status. This means the Ahsay Mobile app can successfully connect to the MBS and both backup and restore can proceed on the mobile device.

In the mobile device



## 7 Start AhsayOBM

Starting with AhsayOBM v8.5.0.0, you will find two new features introduced with this latest version which are the Mobile Backup and Two-Factor Authentication. With these new features there are several scenarios that will be encountered for first time login if, Mobile Backup and/or Two-Factor Authentication are enabled on the user account. Login steps for the different scenarios will be discussed in this chapter.

### 7.1 Login to AhsayOBM without 2FA

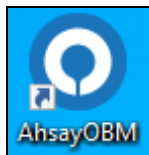
To login to AhsayOBM without two-factor authentication, here are the three scenarios:

- ▶ [Initial login to AhsayOBM with no 2FA and no Mobile Add-on Module](#)
- ▶ [Initial login to AhsayOBM with no 2FA and with Mobile Add-on Module](#)
- ▶ [Subsequent login to AhsayOBM with no 2FA](#)

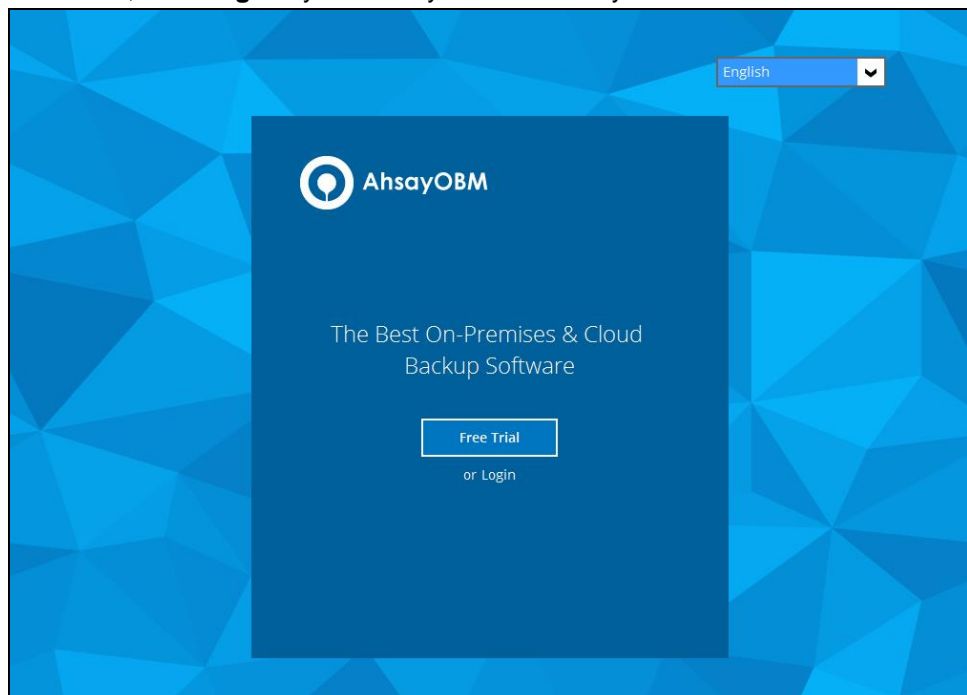
#### 7.1.1 Initial login to AhsayOBM with no 2FA and no Mobile Add-on Module

When logging in to AhsayOBM for the first time pre-v8.5 login sequence, please follow the steps below:

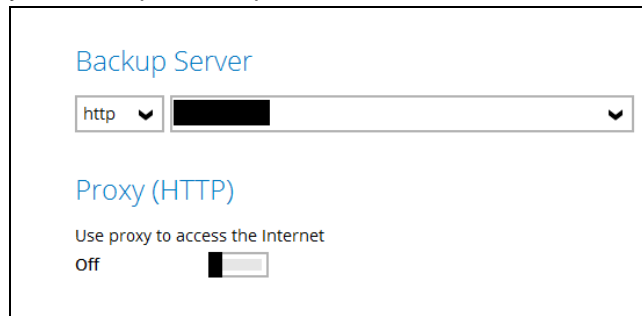
1. A shortcut icon of AhsayOBM will be available on your desktop after installation. Double-click the icon to launch the application.



2. The Free Trial Registration menu may be displayed when you login for the first time. If you want to create a free trial account please proceed to [Appendix E](#). Otherwise, click **Login** if you already have an AhsayOBM account.

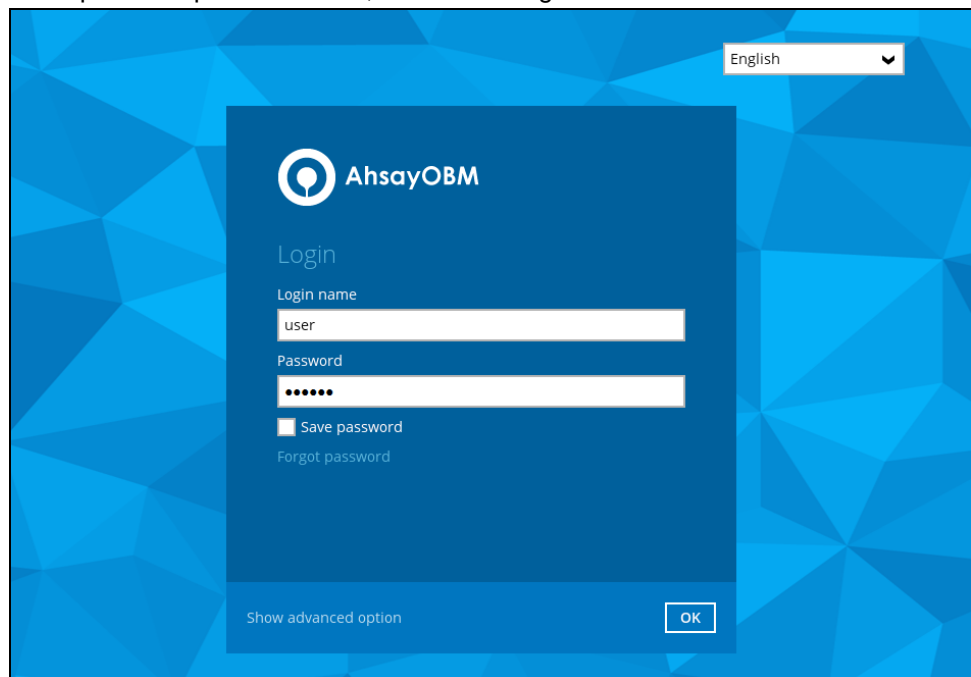


3. Click **Show advanced option** to enter the backup server settings provided by your backup service provider. Then, click **OK** to save the changes.



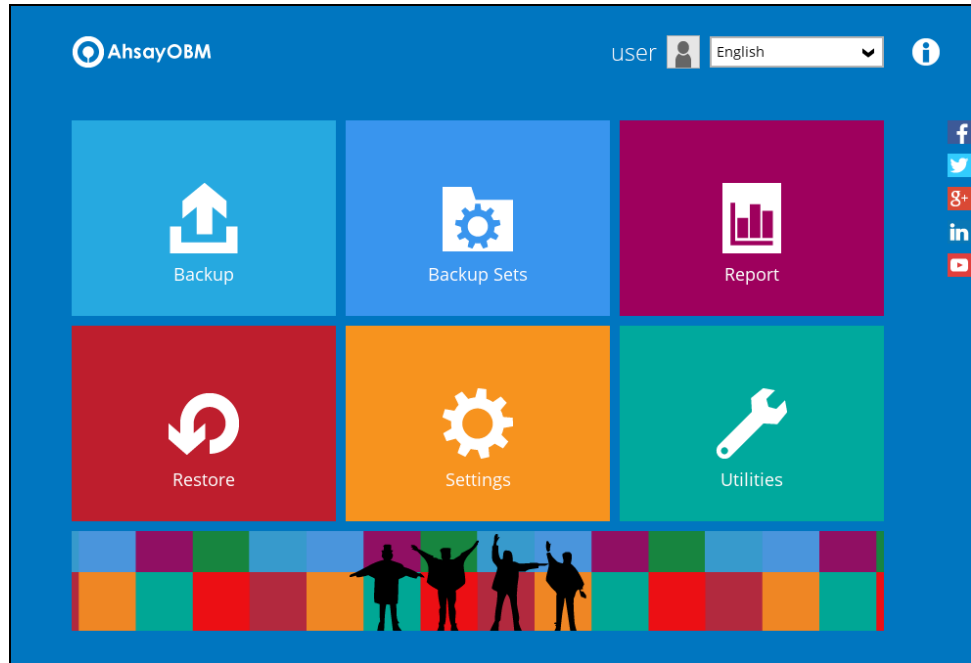
The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Backup Server". It contains a dropdown menu with "http" selected and a text input field with a blacked-out URL. Below this is a section titled "Proxy (HTTP)" with the text "Use proxy to access the Internet" and a toggle switch labeled "Off".

4. Enter the login name and password of your AhsayOBM account provided by your backup service provider. Then, click **OK** to login.



The screenshot shows the AhsayOBM Login dialog box. It has a blue background with a geometric pattern. The dialog box is white with the AhsayOBM logo and name at the top. Below the logo is the word "Login". There are two input fields: "Login name" with the text "user" and "Password" with masked characters. Below the password field is a checkbox labeled "Save password" and a link labeled "Forgot password". At the bottom of the dialog box, there is a link labeled "Show advanced option" and an "OK" button.

5. After successful login, the following screen will appear.





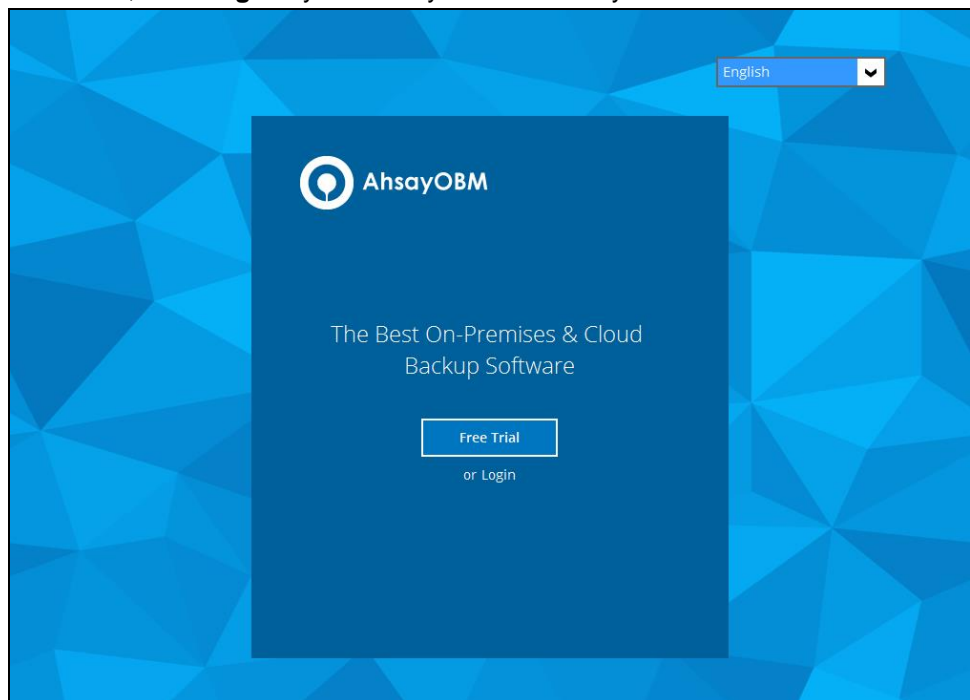
### 7.1.2 Initial login to AhsayOBM with no 2FA and with Mobile Add-on Module

When logging in to AhsayOBM for the first time without two-factor authentication but with Mobile Add-on Module enabled, please follow the steps below:

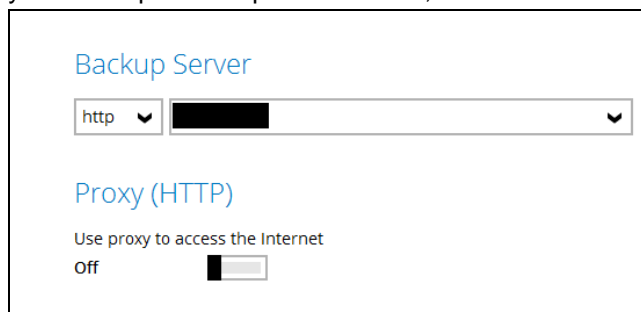
1. A shortcut icon of AhsayOBM will be available on your desktop after installation. Double-click the icon to launch the application.



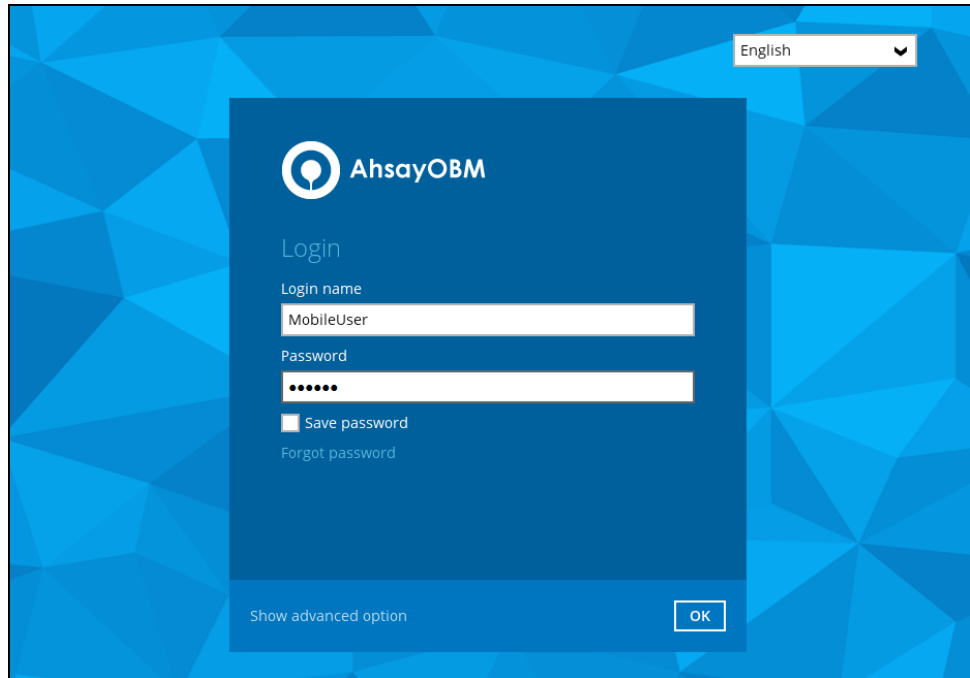
2. The Free Trial Registration menu may be displayed when you login for the first time. If you want to create a free trial account please proceed to [Appendix E](#). Otherwise, click **Login** if you already have an AhsayOBM account.



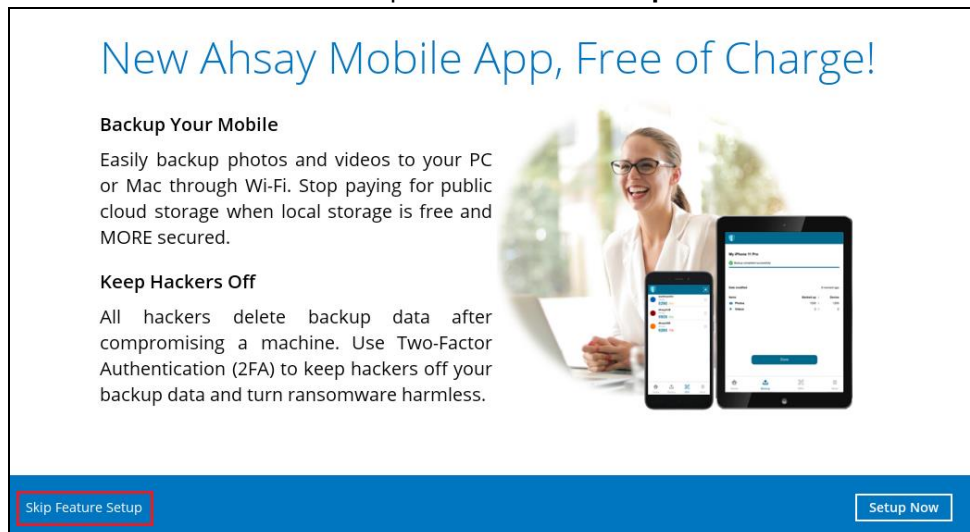
3. Click **Show advanced option** to enter the backup server settings provided by your backup service provider. Then, click **OK** to save the changes.

A dialog box for setting the backup server. It has a title 'Backup Server'. Below the title is a dropdown menu with 'http' selected and a text input field containing a redacted URL. Below this is a section titled 'Proxy (HTTP)' with the text 'Use proxy to access the Internet' and a toggle switch labeled 'Off'.

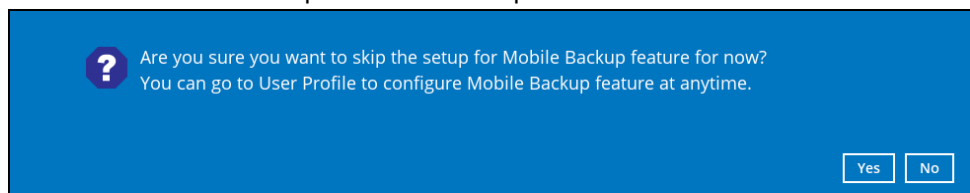
4. Enter the login name and password of your AhsayOBM account provided by your backup service provider. Then, click **OK** to login.

The image shows the AhsayOBM login interface. At the top right, there is a language dropdown menu set to 'English'. The main content area is a dark blue box with the AhsayOBM logo and the word 'Login'. Below the logo, there are two input fields: 'Login name' with the text 'MobileUser' and 'Password' with masked characters. There is a 'Save password' checkbox and a 'Forgot password' link. At the bottom of the login box, there is a 'Show advanced option' link and an 'OK' button. The background of the entire screen is a blue geometric pattern.

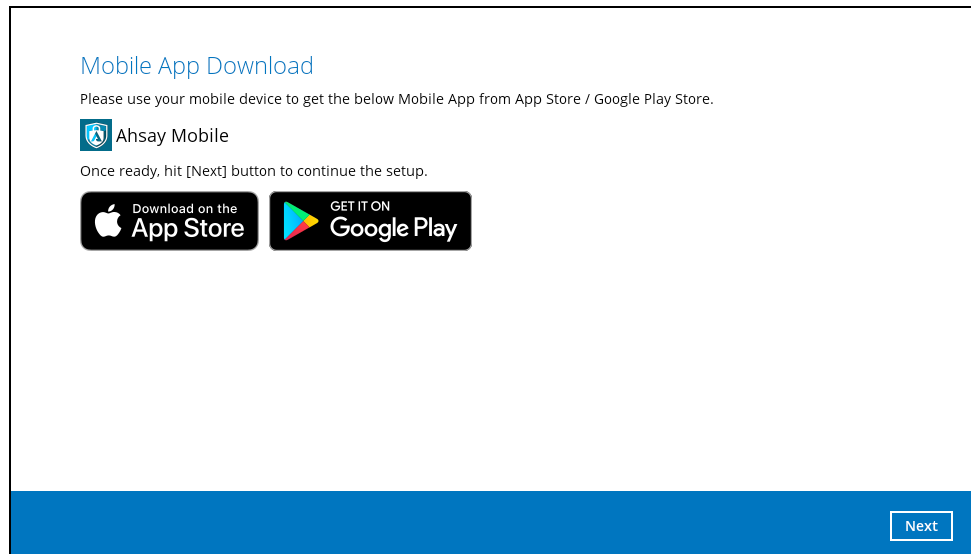
5. You will have the option to set up your mobile backup if the **Mobile Add-on Module is enabled** in the backup account. Click **Setup Now**.

The image is a promotional banner for the 'New Ahsay Mobile App, Free of Charge!'. It features a woman smiling next to a smartphone and a tablet displaying the app interface. The text on the left describes the app's features: 'Backup Your Mobile' (Easily backup photos and videos to your PC or Mac through Wi-Fi. Stop paying for public cloud storage when local storage is free and MORE secured.) and 'Keep Hackers Off' (All hackers delete backup data after compromising a machine. Use Two-Factor Authentication (2FA) to keep hackers off your backup data and turn ransomware harmless.) At the bottom, there are two buttons: 'Skip Feature Setup' (highlighted with a red box) and 'Setup Now'.

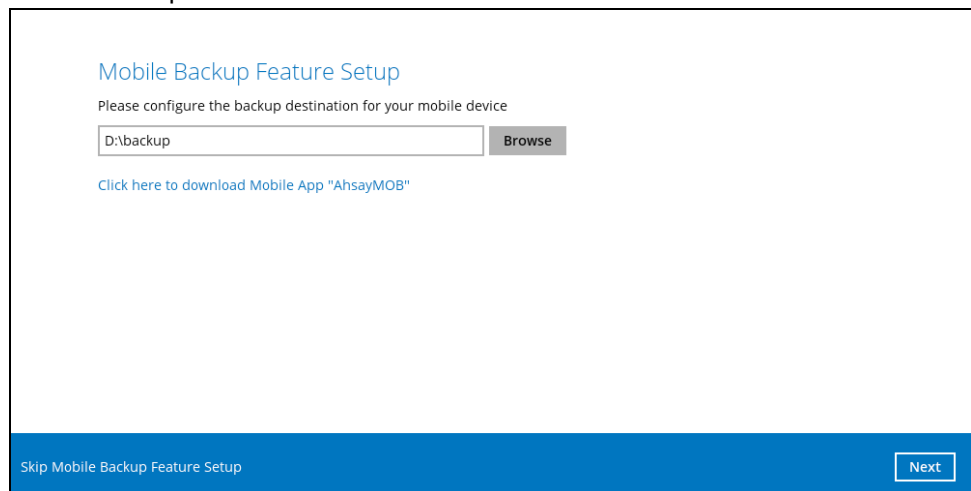
If you do not want to set up the mobile backup feature click **Skip Feature Setup** link. Click **Yes** in the pop-up message that will be displayed. Otherwise click **No** to continue with the set-up of mobile backup feature.

The image shows a blue pop-up message box. It contains a question mark icon and the text: 'Are you sure you want to skip the setup for Mobile Backup feature for now? You can go to User Profile to configure Mobile Backup feature at anytime.' At the bottom right, there are two buttons: 'Yes' and 'No'.

6. Download the Ahsay Mobile app from the App Store / Google Play Store. Click **Next**.



7. Click **Browse** to select the location where the backup of your device will be saved. Click **Next** to proceed.



#### NOTE

It is recommended to use a local drive as the mobile backup destination, the local drive should not be on Windows system drive C:\.

8. Select your country code and enter your phone number. Click **Send SMS Verification code** to receive the passcode.

### Two-Factor Authentication Feature Setup

For first time activation of Two-Factor Authentication feature, mobile device needs to pair with a verified phone number for account recovery.

Phone number

Philippines (+63)

\*This phone number will be used for account security and recovery only. Please be reminded that standard SMS charge will be applied.

**Send SMS Verification code**

[Click here to download Mobile App "AhsayMOB"](#)

Skip Two-Factor Authentication Feature Setup

Next

If you do not want to set up the 2FA feature click **Skip Two-Factor Authentication Feature Setup** link. Click **Yes** in the pop-up message that will be displayed to proceed with the login. Otherwise click **No** to continue with the set-up of 2FA feature.

?

Are you sure you want to skip the setup for Multi-Factor Authentication feature for now?  
You can go to User Profile to configure Multi-Factor Authentication feature at anytime.

Yes

No

This can also be setup in the AhsayCBS User Web Console, please refer to the [AhsayCBS User's Guide](#) for more information.

9. Enter the verification code and click **Next**.

Verification Code: HZDN563521

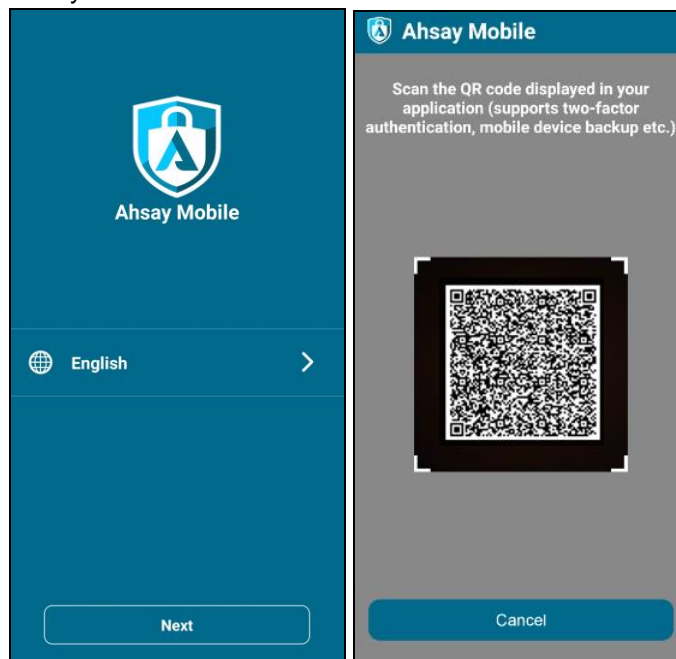
Verification code

HZDN - 563521 (00:04:37)

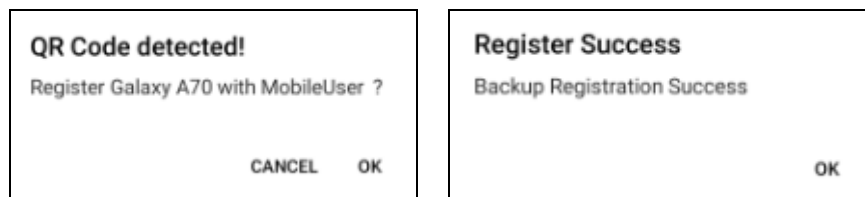
**Resend Verification code to SMS**

10. Pair your device with the backup account. There are two ways to do this:

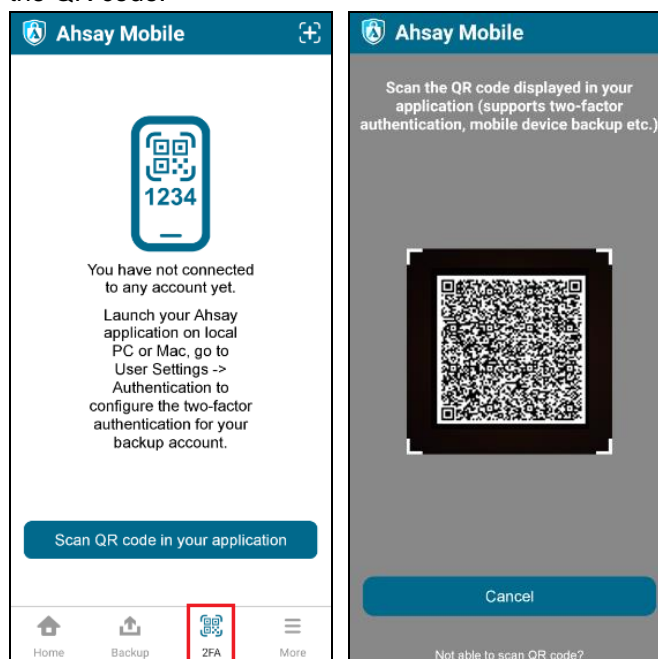
By using the Ahsay Mobile app, tap **Next** and scan the QR code displayed in AhsayOBM.



Then click **OK**.





Then go to **2FA** and tap **Scan QR code in your application**, once again scan the QR code.




## Device Pairing

Please scan the QR code to register your mobile device with your backup account for following feature:

 Mobile Backup

 Two-Factor Authentication




Please make sure below 2 ports are not blocked by any Firewall settings before pairing your mobile device for backup

TCP Port: 54000  
UDP Port: 54200

Using other TOTP Authenticator App (e.g. Authy, Duo, Google)

Skip Device Pairing

If you do not want to pair your device with the backup account click the **Skip Device Pairing** link. Click **Yes** in the pop-up message that will be displayed to proceed with the login. Otherwise click **No** to continue with the set-up of Mobile Backup and Two-Factor Authentication feature.



Are you sure you want to skip Device Pairing now?  
Once skipped, the mobile feature setup will be discarded.  
You can go to User Profile to configure mobile feature at anytime.


Yes

No

or

By using a third-party TOTP Authenticator App (e.g. Authy, Duo, Google), click the **Using other TOTP Authenticator App (e.g. Authy, Duo, Google)** link.

Click **Yes** if you want to use a third-party app as your authenticator. However if you use this, the Mobile Backup feature that you set up earlier will be discarded.



Are you sure you want to use other TOTP Authenticator App?  
Once using other TOTP Authenticator App, Mobile Backup feature will be discarded from this setup.  
You can go to User Profile to configure Mobile Backup feature at anytime.


Yes


No

Either scan the QR code using the third-party authenticator app or enter the Secret Key in the third-party authenticator app. After doing so, the one-time password will be generated in the authenticator app. Enter a name and the one-time password generated in the authenticator app here and click **Next**.

### Device Pairing

Please scan the QR code or input Secret Key to register your mobile device with your backup account for following feature:

 Two-Factor Authentication



Secret Key: FFFK MCFB K3SP MLBW

Enter a display name for user profile.



Enter the one-time password generated by Authenticator App.


 (00:00:07)
 

[Using AhsayMOB](#)

[Skip Device Pairing](#)
[Next](#)

This is a sample of the one-time password generated in the third-party Authenticator App Microsoft Authenticator.








AhsayOBM

MobileUser

One-time passwords enabled

 You can use the one-time password codes generated by this app to verify your sign-ins

One-time password code


 493 481


- After pairing the device, this message will be displayed. Click **OK** to proceed.

This is a sample of the message displayed when using Ahsay Mobile app.

### Mobile Feature Setup

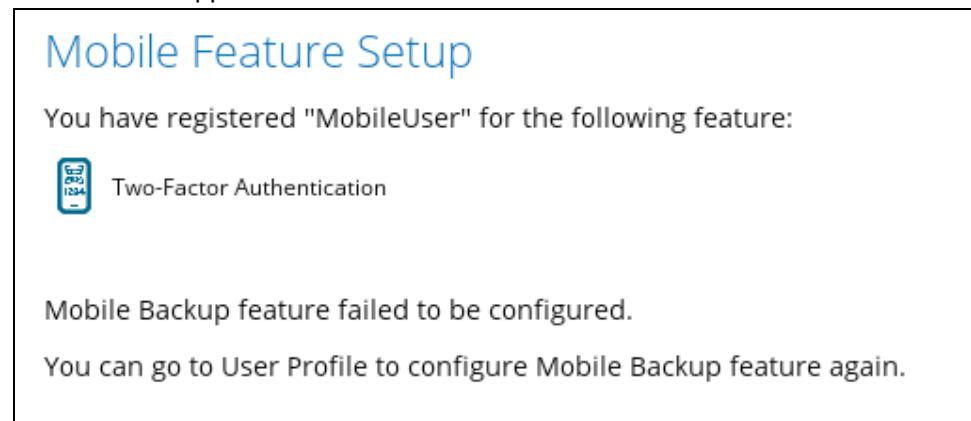
You have registered "Galaxy A70" for the following feature:

 Mobile Backup

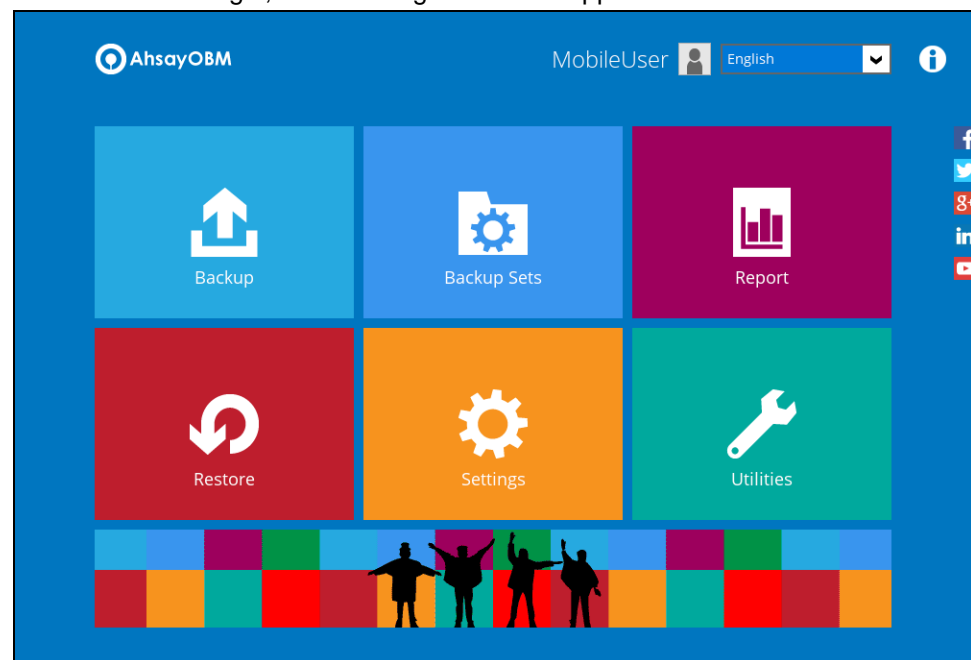
 Two-Factor Authentication

You can go to the backup page in Mobile App "AhsayMOB" to start Mobile Backup.

This is a sample of the message displayed when using a third-party TOTP Authenticator App.



12. After successful login, the following screen will appear.





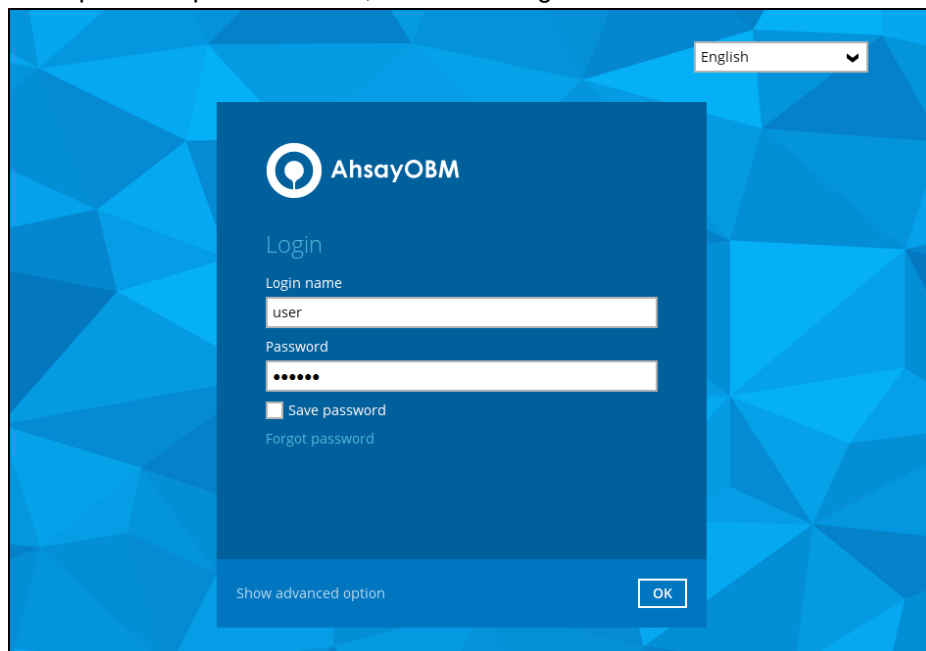
### 7.1.3 Subsequent login to AhsayOBM with no 2FA

For subsequent logins to AhsayOBM without two-factor authentication, please follow the steps below:

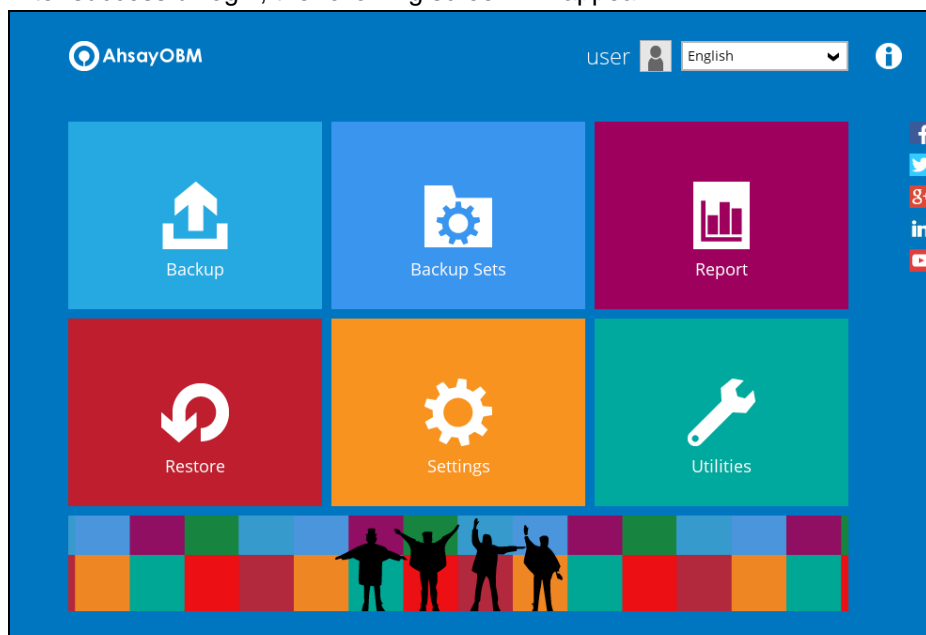
1. A shortcut icon of AhsayOBM will be available on your desktop after installation. Double-click the icon to launch the application.



2. Enter the login name and password of your AhsayOBM account provided by your backup service provider. Then, click **OK** to login.



3. After successful login, the following screen will appear.



## 7.2 Login to AhsayOBM with 2FA using Android or iOS mobile device

There are two types of Authenticator that can be used for the 2FA:

- **Ahsay Mobile Authenticator**
  - Supports two types of authentication:
    - i) Push Notification
    - ii) TOTP
  - Can be configured to support two 2FA modes:
    - i) Push Notification and TOTP (default mode)  
or
    - ii) TOTP only
- **Third-party TOTP Authenticator**  
(e.g. Authy, Duo, Google)

To log in to AhsayOBM with two-factor authentication, here are the three scenarios:

- [Initial login to AhsayOBM with 2FA and with no Mobile Add-on Module](#)
- [Initial login to AhsayOBM with 2FA and Mobile Add-on Module](#)
- [Subsequent login to AhsayOBM](#)

### 7.2.1 Initial login to AhsayOBM with 2FA and with no Mobile Add-on Module

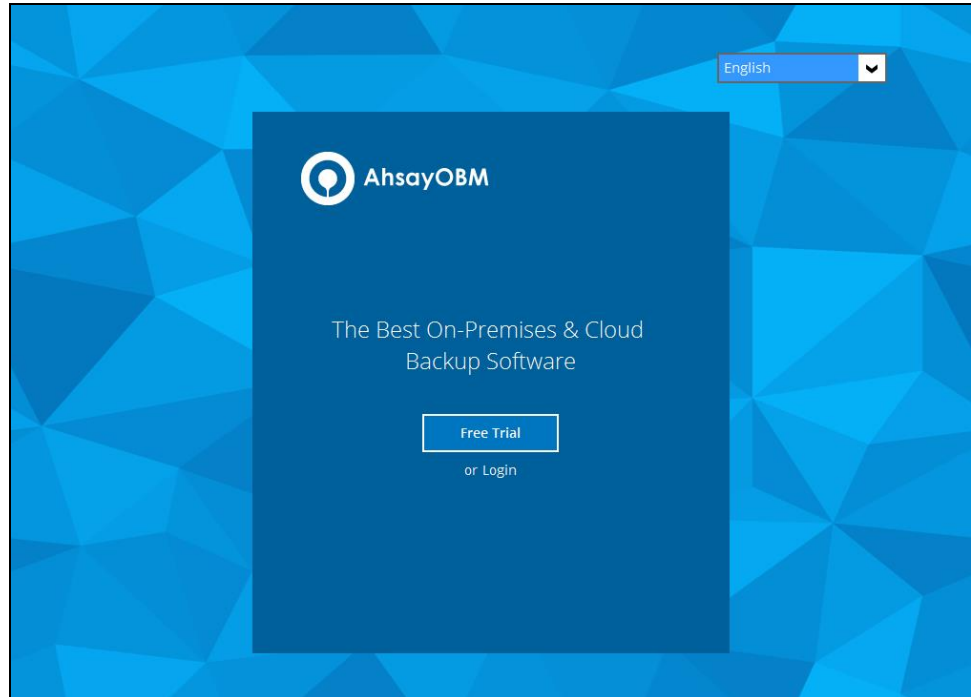
When logging in to AhsayOBM for the first time with two-factor authentication and with Mobile Add-on Module not enabled, please follow the steps below:

1. A shortcut icon of AhsayOBM will be available on your desktop after installation. Double-click the icon to launch the application.

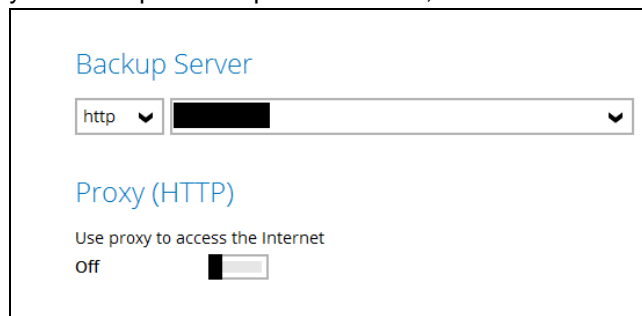


2. The Free Trial Registration menu may be displayed when you login for the first time. If you want to create a free trial account please proceed to [Appendix E](#).

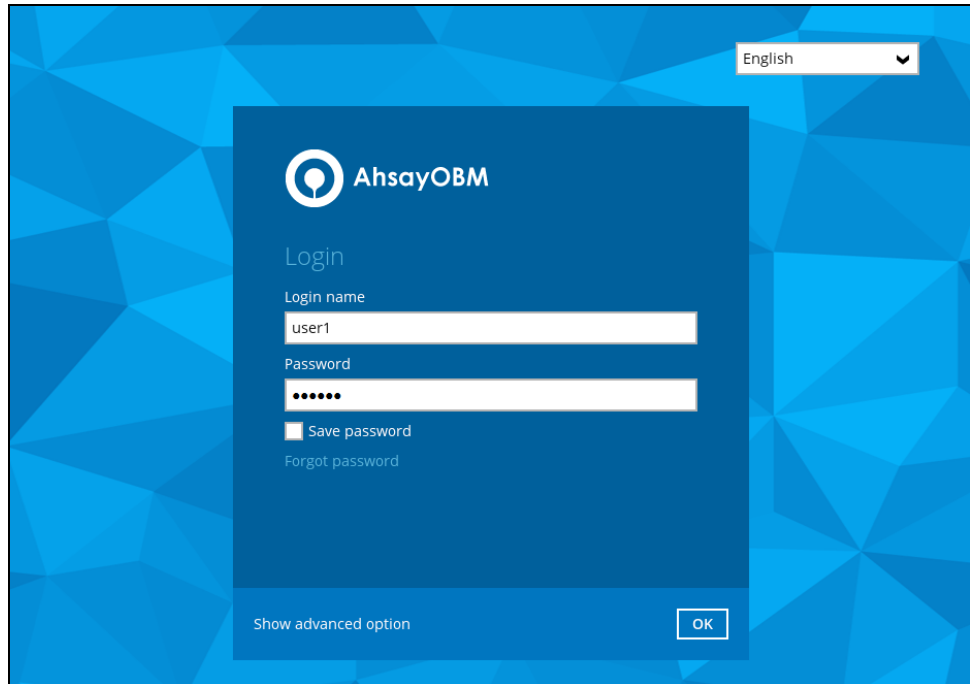
Otherwise, click **Login** if you already have an AhsayOBM account.



3. Click **Show advanced option** to enter the backup server settings provided by your backup service provider. Then, click **OK** to save the changes.

The image shows a 'Backup Server' settings form. It has a title 'Backup Server' in blue. Below the title, there is a dropdown menu with 'http' selected and a text input field containing a redacted URL. Below this, there is a section titled 'Proxy (HTTP)' in blue. Under this section, there is a label 'Use proxy to access the Internet' and a toggle switch labeled 'Off'.

4. Enter the login name and password of your AhsayOBM account provided by your backup service provider. Then, click **OK** to login.

The image shows the AhsayOBM login interface. It features a blue background with a geometric pattern. In the top right corner, there is a language dropdown menu set to 'English'. The central part of the screen is a dark blue box containing the AhsayOBM logo and the word 'Login'. Below the logo, there are two input fields: 'Login name' with the text 'user1' and 'Password' with masked characters. There is a 'Save password' checkbox and a 'Forgot password' link. At the bottom of the box, there is a 'Show advanced option' link and an 'OK' button.

English

**AhsayOBM**

Login

Login name  
user1

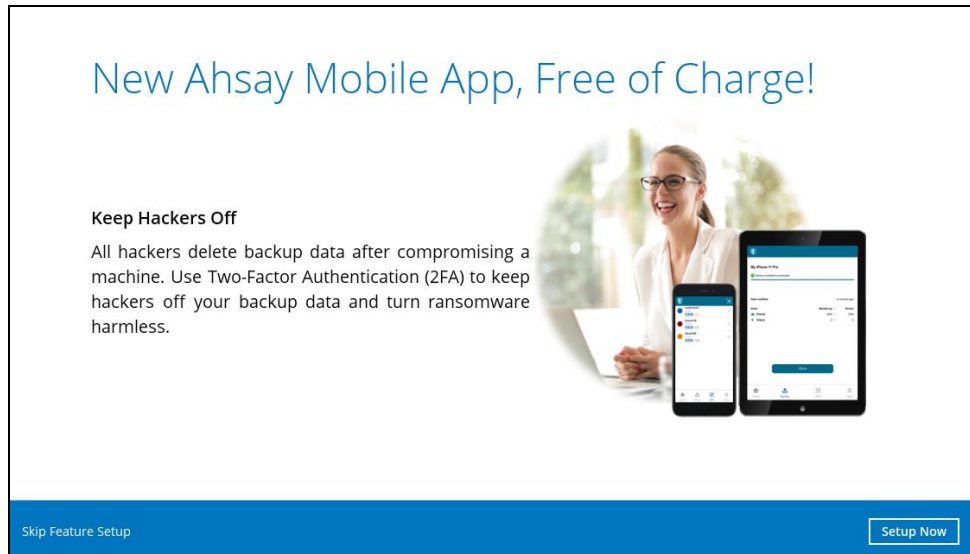
Password  
•••••

☐ Save password

[Forgot password](#)

[Show advanced option](#) **OK**

5. To set up your two-factor authentication, click **Setup Now**.

The image is a promotional banner for the Ahsay Mobile App. It has a white background with a blue header. The text 'New Ahsay Mobile App, Free of Charge!' is in blue. Below the text, there is a photo of a smiling woman with glasses sitting at a desk with a laptop. To her right are two smartphones displaying the app's interface. On the left side of the banner, there is a section titled 'Keep Hackers Off' with a paragraph of text. At the bottom, there is a blue bar with the text 'Skip Feature Setup' on the left and a 'Setup Now' button on the right.

## New Ahsay Mobile App, Free of Charge!

**Keep Hackers Off**


All hackers delete backup data after compromising a machine. Use Two-Factor Authentication (2FA) to keep hackers off your backup data and turn ransomware harmless.

Skip Feature Setup **Setup Now**



6. Download the Ahsay Mobile app from the App Store / Google Play Store. Click **Next**.

**Mobile App Download**

Please use your mobile device to get the below Mobile App from App Store / Google Play Store.

 Ahsay Mobile

Once ready, hit [Next] button to continue the setup.



[Next](#)

7. Select your country code then enter your phone number. Click the **Send SMS Verification code** button to receive the verification code.

**Two-Factor Authentication Setup**

For first time activation of Two-Factor Authentication feature, mobile device needs to pair with a verified phone number for account recovery.

Phone number

\*This phone number will be used for account security and recovery only. Please be reminded that standard SMS charge will be applied.

[Send SMS Verification code](#)

[Click here to download Mobile App "Ahsay Mobile"](#)

8. Enter the verification code sent to your mobile device then click **Next**.

Verification code

ELLI -  (00:04:13)

[Resend SMS Verification code](#)

[Click here to download Mobile App "Ahsay Mobile"](#)

Skip Two-Factor Authentication Feature Setup [Next](#)

Example of the verification code sent to mobile device

← ALRT

Today 5:23 PM

Verification Code: ELLI-[826926](#)

9. Ahsay Mobile supports two types of authentication method:

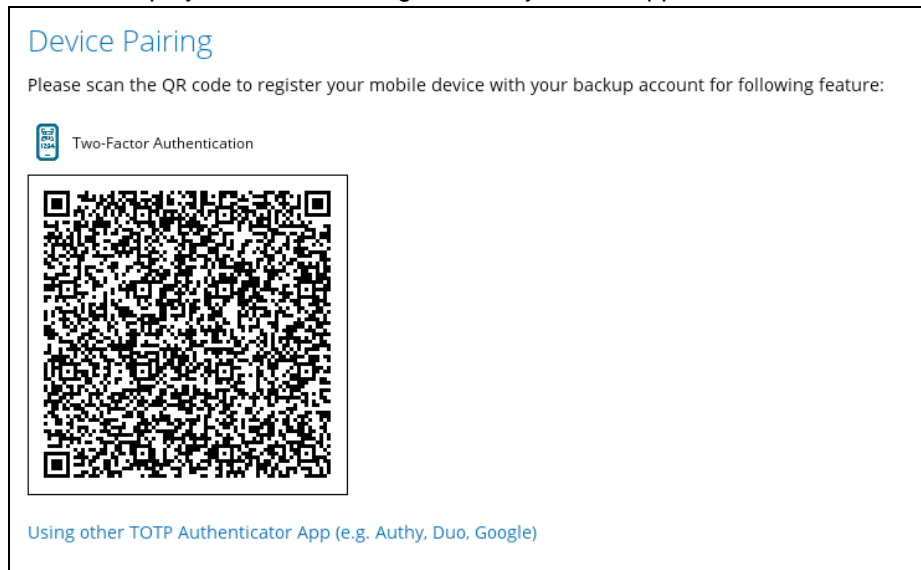
- Push Notification
- TOTP

Ahsay Mobile can be configured to support two 2FA modes:

- Push Notification and TOTP (default mode)  
or
- TOTP only

**Push Notification and TOTP (default mode)**

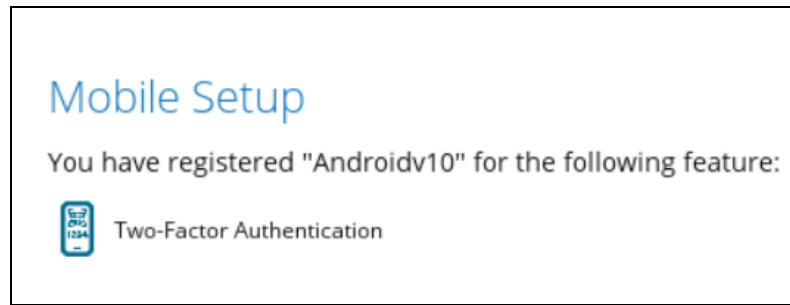
- i. To configure Push Notification and TOTP 2FA with Ahsay Mobile, simply scan the displayed QR code using the Ahsay Mobile app.



In this example, the Ahsay Mobile app is installed on a mobile device named "Androidv10".

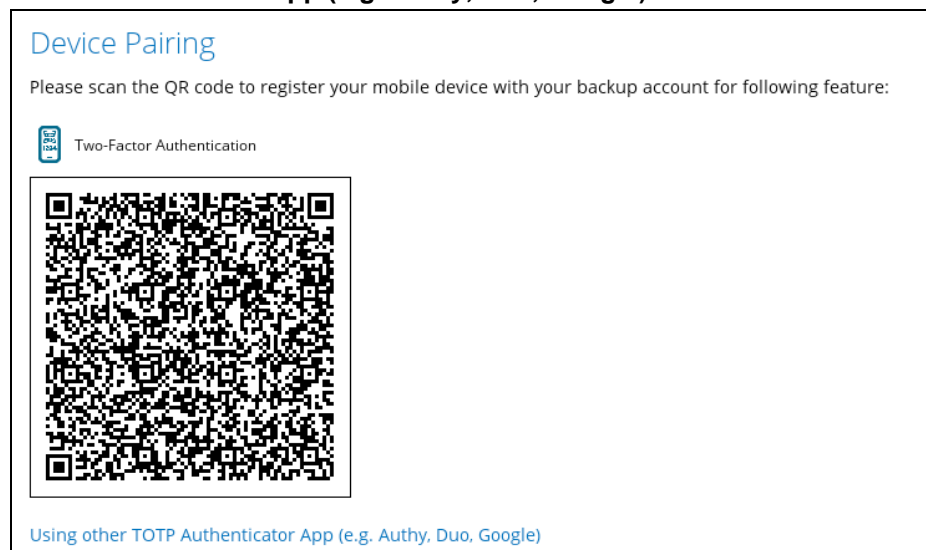


- ii. After successful scan of the QR code, you have now registered Ahsay Mobile for Push Notification and TOTP 2FA.

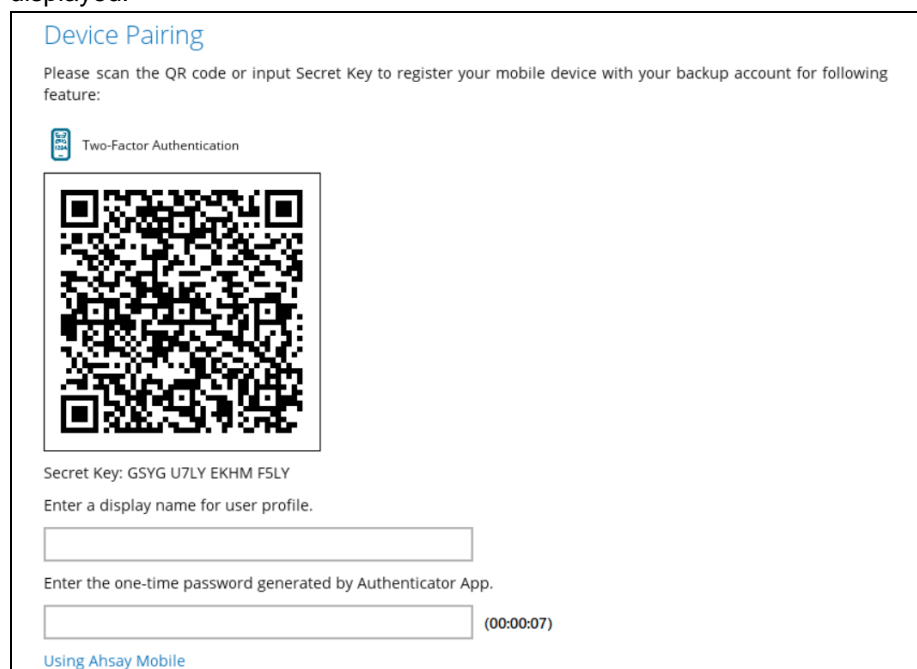


#### TOTP only

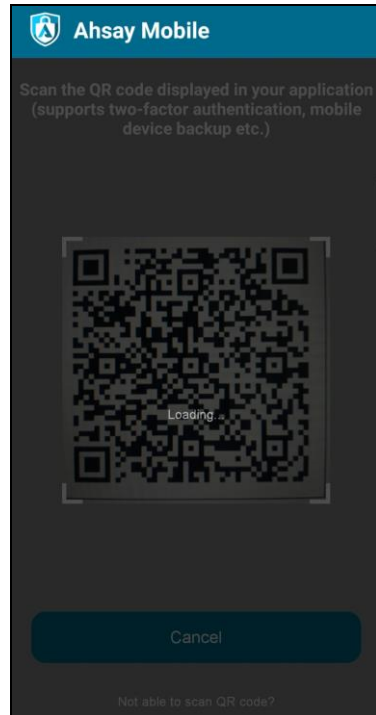
- i. To configure a TOTP only 2FA with Ahsay Mobile, click the “**Using other TOTP Authenticator App (e.g. Authy, Duo, Google)**” link.



- ii. After clicking the “**Using other TOTP Authenticator App (e.g. Authy, Duo, Google)**” link, the QR code for the TOTP Authenticator app will be displayed.

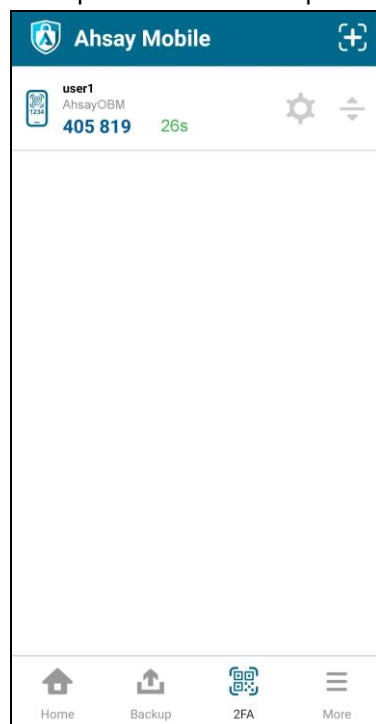


- iii. Scan the QR code using the Ahsay Mobile app.



- iv. After successful scan of the QR code, a TOTP account corresponding to the login name of the AhsayOBM, i.e., “user1” is created on Ahsay Mobile.

Example of the one-time password generated by Ahsay Mobile.







- v. Enter a display name for user profile, then input the TOTP generated by Ahsay Mobile. After entering the necessary details, click **Next** to finish the registration process.

### Device Pairing

Please scan the QR code or input Secret Key to register your mobile device with your backup account for following feature:

 Two-Factor Authentication



Secret Key: GSYG U7LY EKHM F5LY

Enter a display name for user profile.

Enter the one-time password generated by Authenticator App.


 (00:00:10)

[Using Ahsay Mobile](#)

- vi. Once the registration is successful, the following screen will be displayed. You have now registered Ahsay Mobile for TOTP only 2FA.

### Mobile Setup

You have registered "user1" for the following feature:


 Two-Factor Authentication


Alternatively, you may also use a third-party TOTP Authenticator App (e.g. Authy, Duo, Google).

Either scan the QR code using the third-party authenticator app or enter the Secret Key in the third-party authenticator app. After doing so, the one-time password will be generated in the authenticator app. Enter a name and the one-time password generated in the authenticator app and click **Next**.

### Device Pairing

Please scan the QR code or input Secret Key to register your mobile device with your backup account for following feature:

 Two-Factor Authentication



Secret Key: LP2C TCTG SPCB ZHEB



Enter a display name for user profile.


Enter the one-time password generated by Authenticator App.

(00:00:21)

[Using Ahsay Mobile](#)


Example of the one-time password generated in the third-party Authenticator App Microsoft Authenticator.






AhsayOBM  
user1

One-time passwords enabled

 You can use the one-time password codes generated by this app to verify your sign-ins


One-time password code

 088 220

Once the registration is successful, the following screen will be displayed. You have now registered a third-party authenticator app for 2FA.

## Mobile Setup

You have registered "user1" for the following feature:

 Two-Factor Authentication

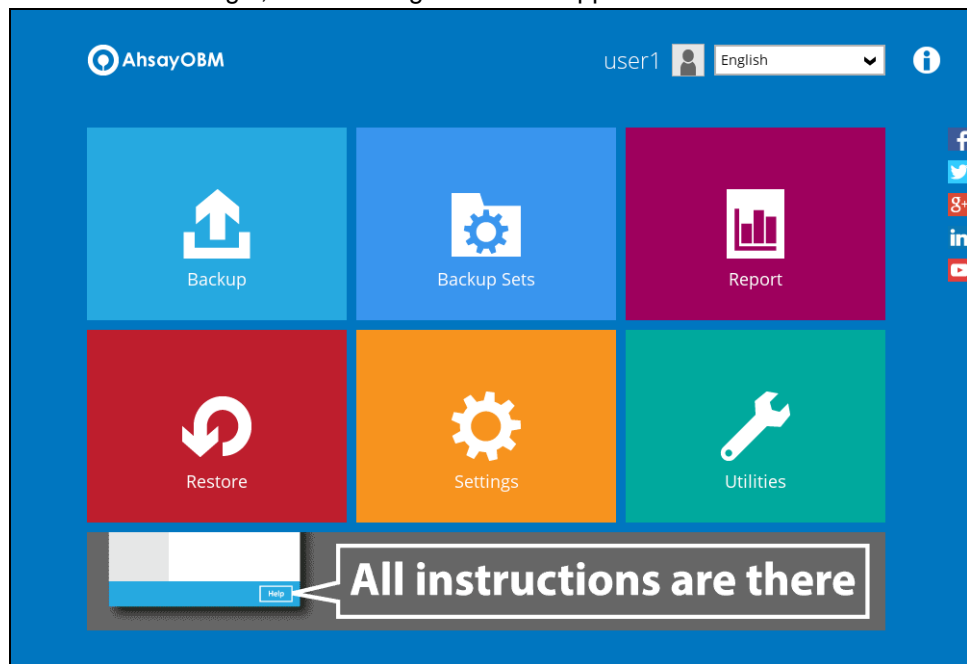
#### NOTE

In case device pairing takes a while, session timeout message will be displayed. Just click **OK** to resume with the device pairing.

### Mobile Setup

Due to session timeout, Two-Factor Authentication feature failed to be configured. .  
Click [OK] to configure the feature again.

10. After successful login, the following screen will appear.



#### NOTE

Please refer to the [Ahsay Mobile App User Guide for Android and iOS – Appendix A: Troubleshooting Login](#) if you are experiencing problems logging into AhsayOBM with Two-Factor Authentication using Ahsay Mobile app.

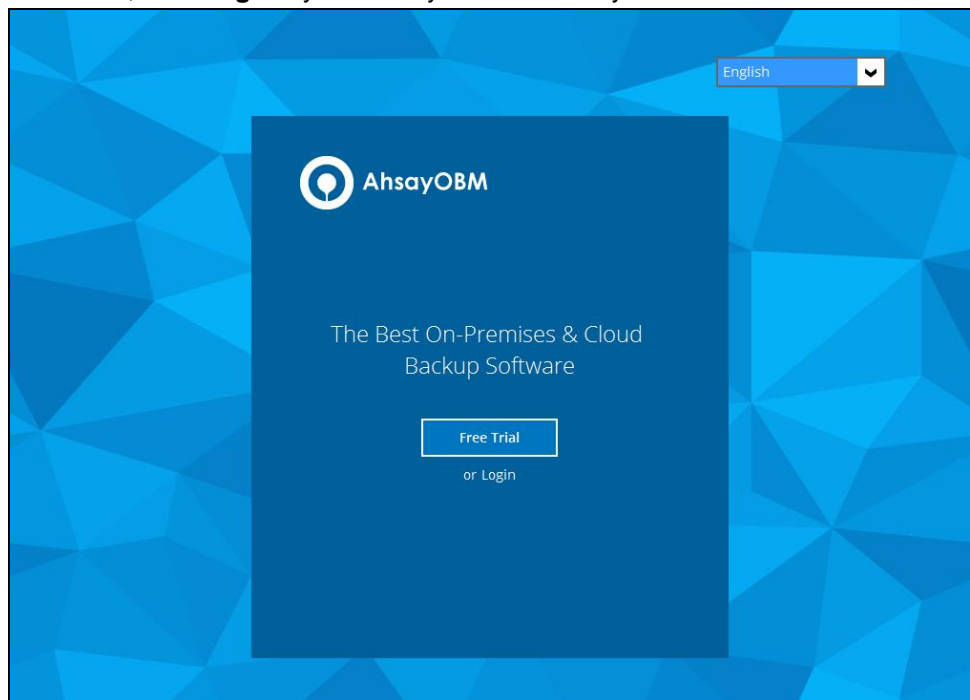
### 7.2.2 Initial login to AhsayOBM with 2FA and with Mobile Add-on Module

When logging in to AhsayOBM for the first time with two-factor authentication and with Mobile Add-on Module enabled, please follow the steps below:

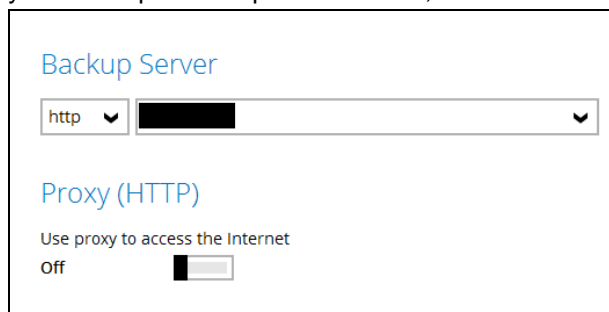
1. A shortcut icon of AhsayOBM will be available on your desktop after installation. Double-click the icon to launch the application.



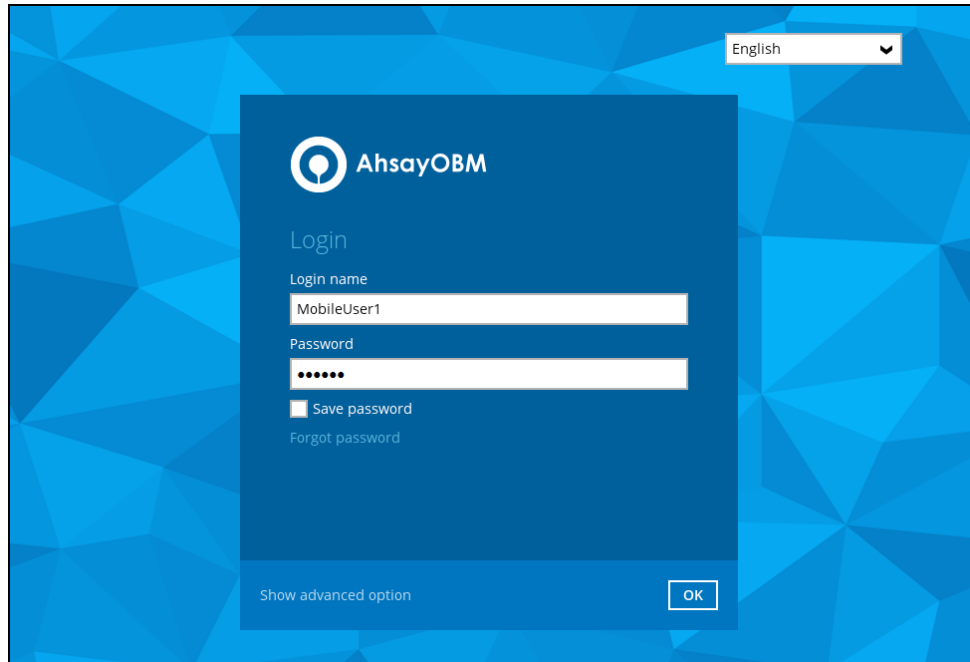
2. The Free Trial Registration menu may be displayed when you login for the first time. If you want to create a free trial account please proceed to [Appendix E](#). Otherwise, click **Login** if you already have an AhsayOBM account.



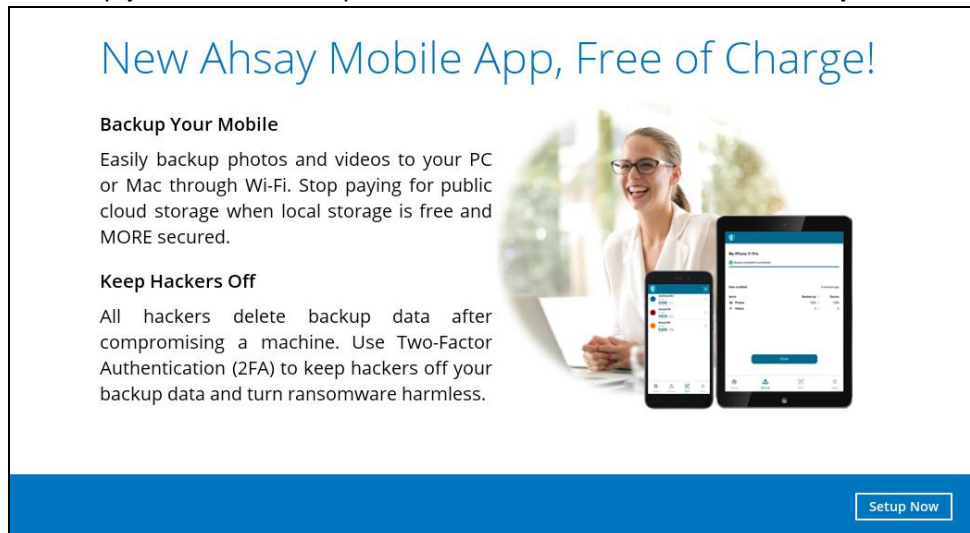
3. Click **Show advanced option** to enter the backup server settings provided by your backup service provider. Then, click **OK** to save the changes.

A dialog box for setting the backup server. It has a title 'Backup Server'. Below it is a dropdown menu with 'http' selected and a text input field containing a redacted URL. Below that is a section titled 'Proxy (HTTP)' with the text 'Use proxy to access the Internet' and a toggle switch labeled 'Off'.

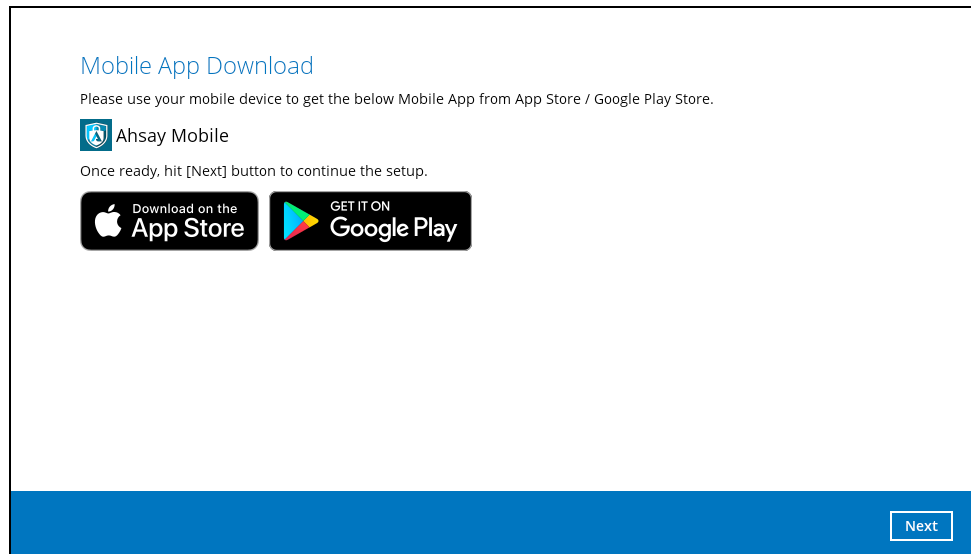
4. Enter the login name and password of your AhsayOBM account provided by your backup service provider. Then, click **OK** to log in.

The image shows the AhsayOBM login interface. It features a blue background with a geometric pattern. In the top right corner, there is a language dropdown menu set to 'English'. The central part of the screen is a dark blue box containing the AhsayOBM logo and the word 'Login'. Below the logo, there are two input fields: 'Login name' with the text 'MobileUser1' and 'Password' with masked characters. There is a checkbox for 'Save password' and a link for 'Forgot password'. At the bottom of the box, there is a link for 'Show advanced option' and an 'OK' button.

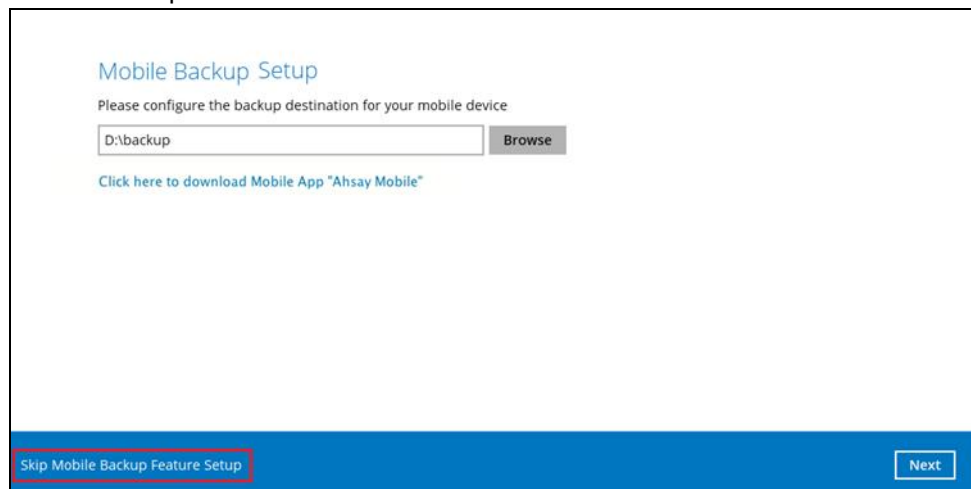
5. To set up your mobile backup and two-factor authentication, click **Setup Now**.

The image is a promotional banner for the Ahsay Mobile App. It has a white background with a blue header. The header text reads 'New Ahsay Mobile App, Free of Charge!'. Below the header, there are two sections: 'Backup Your Mobile' and 'Keep Hackers Off'. The 'Backup Your Mobile' section describes the app's ability to backup photos and videos to a PC or Mac via Wi-Fi. The 'Keep Hackers Off' section describes the app's two-factor authentication (2FA) feature. To the right of the text is a photograph of a smiling woman with glasses, wearing a white shirt, sitting at a desk with a laptop. In front of her are a smartphone and a tablet, both displaying the Ahsay app interface. At the bottom right of the banner is a blue button with the text 'Setup Now'.

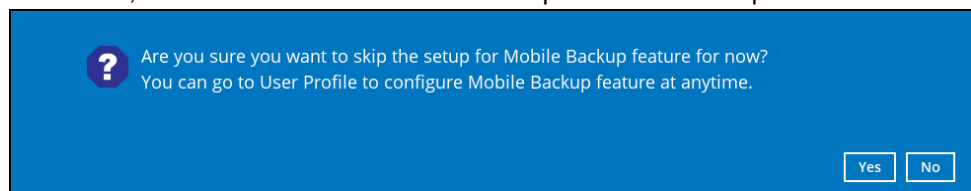
6. Download the Ahsay Mobile app from the App Store / Google Play Store. Click **Next**.



7. Click **Browse** to select the location where the backup of your device will be saved. Click **Next** to proceed.



If you do not want to set up the mobile backup feature click **Skip Mobile Backup Feature Setup** link. Click **Yes** in the pop-up message that will be displayed. Otherwise, click **No** to continue with the set-up of mobile backup feature.



#### NOTE

It is recommended to use a local drive as the mobile backup destination, the local drive should not be on Windows system drive C:\.

8. Select your country code then enter your phone number. Click the **Send SMS Verification code** button to receive the verification code.

### Two-Factor Authentication Setup

For first time activation of Two-Factor Authentication feature, mobile device needs to pair with a verified phone number for account recovery.

Phone number

Philippines (+63)

\*This phone number will be used for account security and recovery only. Please be reminded that standard SMS charge will be applied.

**Send SMS Verification code**

[Click here to download Mobile App "Ahsay Mobile"](#)

9. Enter the verification code sent to your mobile device then click **Next**.

Verification code

ELLI -  (00:04:13)

**Resend SMS Verification code**

[Click here to download Mobile App "Ahsay Mobile"](#)

Skip Two-Factor Authentication Feature SetupNext

Example of the verification code sent to mobile device

← ALRT


Today 5:23 PM


Verification Code: ELLI-[826926](#)


10. To register Ahsay Mobile for 2FA (Push Notification and TOTP) and Mobile Backup, simply scan the displayed QR code using the Ahsay Mobile app.

### Device Pairing

Please scan the QR code to register your mobile device with your backup account for following feature:

 Mobile Backup

 Two-Factor Authentication



Please make sure below 2 ports are not blocked by any Firewall settings before pairing your mobile device for backup

TCP Port: 54000  
UDP Port: 54200

[Using other TOTP Authenticator App \(e.g. Authy, Duo, Google\)](#)


In this example, the Ahsay Mobile app is installed on a mobile device named "Androidv10".




After successful scan of the QR code, you have now registered Ahsay Mobile for 2FA (Push Notification and TOTP) and Mobile Backup.

### Mobile Setup

You have registered "Androidv10" for the following feature:

 Mobile Backup

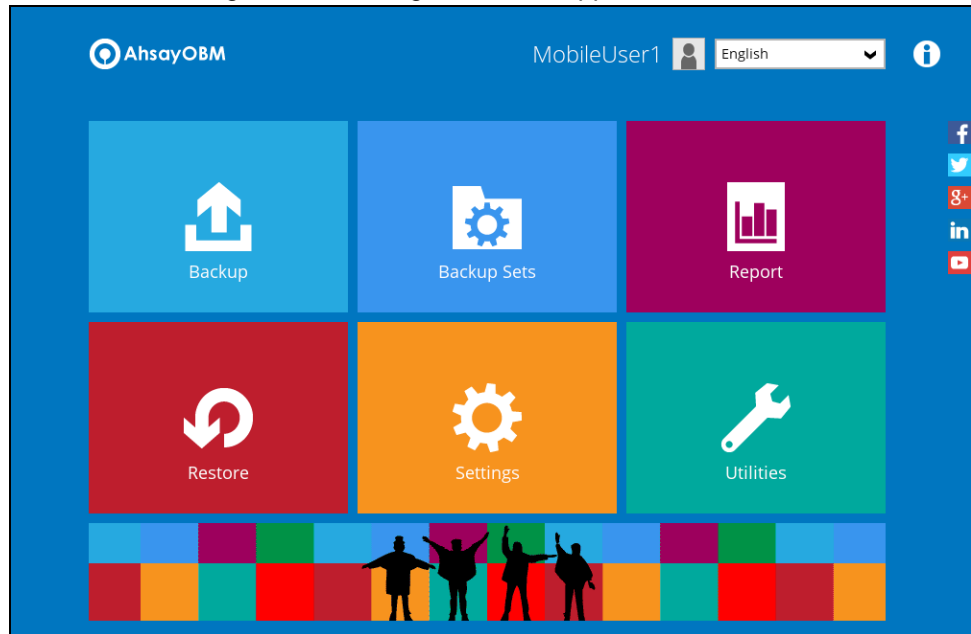
 Two-Factor Authentication

You can go to the backup page in Mobile App "Ahsay Mobile" to start Mobile Backup.



To configure a TOTP only 2FA with Ahsay Mobile, please refer to [TOTP only 2FA](#).

11. After successful login, the following screen will appear.



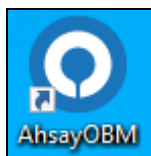
**NOTE**

Please refer to the [Ahsay Mobile App User Guide for Android and iOS – Appendix A: Troubleshooting Login](#) if you are experiencing problems logging into AhsayOBM with Two-Factor Authentication using Ahsay Mobile app.

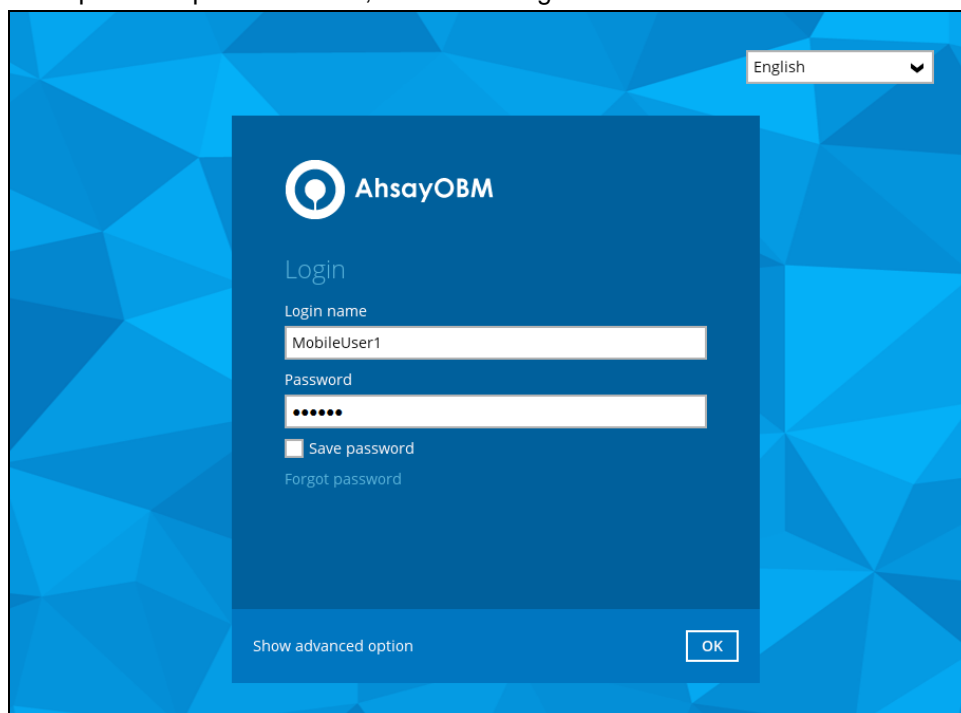
### 7.2.3 Subsequent login to AhsayOBM with 2FA

For subsequent logins to AhsayOBM with two-factor authentication, please follow the steps below:

1. A shortcut icon of AhsayOBM will be available on your desktop after installation. Double-click the icon to launch the application.



2. Enter the login name and password of your AhsayOBM account provided by your backup service provider. Then, click **OK** to login.

A screenshot of the AhsayOBM login window. The window has a blue background with a geometric pattern. In the center is a dark blue login form. The form contains the AhsayOBM logo and the word 'Login'. Below the logo are two input fields: 'Login name' with the text 'MobileUser1' and 'Password' with masked characters. There is a 'Save password' checkbox and a 'Forgot password' link. At the bottom of the form are two buttons: 'Show advanced option' and 'OK'. In the top right corner of the window, there is a language dropdown menu set to 'English'.

#### NOTE

Please refer to the [Ahsay Mobile App User Guide for Android and iOS – Appendix A: Troubleshooting Login](#) if you are experiencing problems logging into AhsayOBM with Two-Factor Authentication using Ahsay Mobile app.

3. Select the authentication method to continue with the login.

There are two authentication method to choose from and it is possible to use both methods on the same AhsayOBM user account:

#### • [Ahsay Mobile app](#)

- Supports two types of authentication:
  - i) Push Notification
  - ii) TOTP
- Can be configured to support two 2FA modes:
  - i) Push Notification and TOTP (default mode)

or

ii) TOTP only

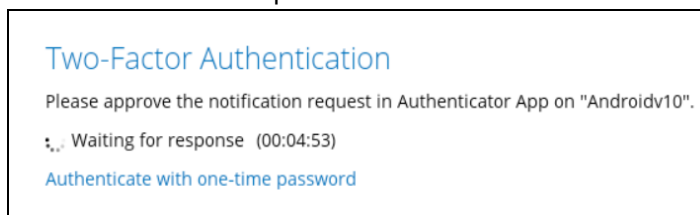
• [Third-party TOTP Authenticator App](#)

(e.g. Authy, Duo, Google)

If **Ahsay Mobile app** will be used as authenticator, there are two 2FA modes that can be selected.

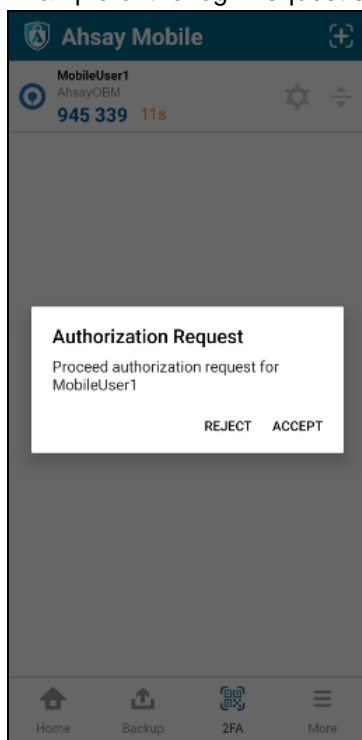
- Push Notification and TOTP (default mode)

Example of the 2FA alert screen on AhsayOBM after login with correct username and password.

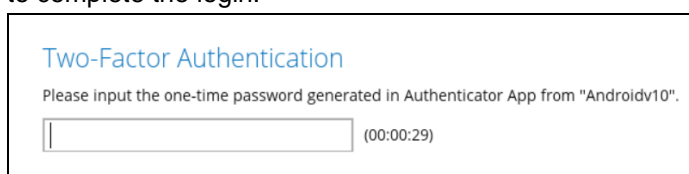


Push notification is the default 2FA mode. Accept the login request on Ahsay Mobile to complete the login.

Example of the login request sent to the Ahsay Mobile app.



However, if push notification is not working or you prefer to use one-time password, click the “**Authenticate with one-time password**” link, then input the one-time password generated from Ahsay Mobile to complete the login.



- TOTP only

Example of the 2FA alert screen on AhsayOBM after login with correct username and password.

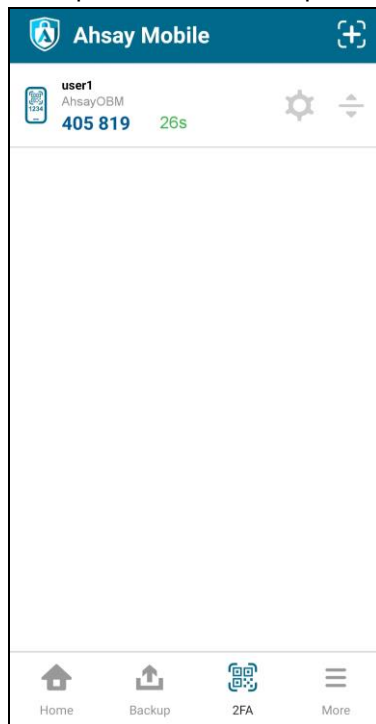
Input the one-time password generated by Ahsay Mobile to complete the login.

### Two-Factor Authentication

Please input the one-time password generated in Authenticator App from "Androidv10".

(00:00:29)

Example of the one-time password generated by Ahsay Mobile



If a third-party **TOTP Authenticator App** will be used instead, follow the steps below to login.

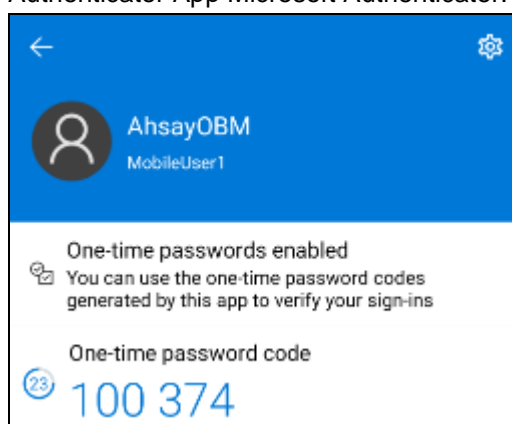
Enter the one-time password that is generated by the authenticator app and click **Next**.

### Two-Factor Authentication

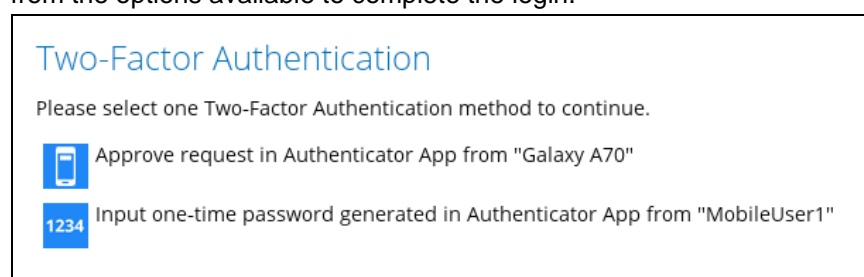
Please input the one-time password generated in Authenticator App from "MobileUser1".

(00:00:23)

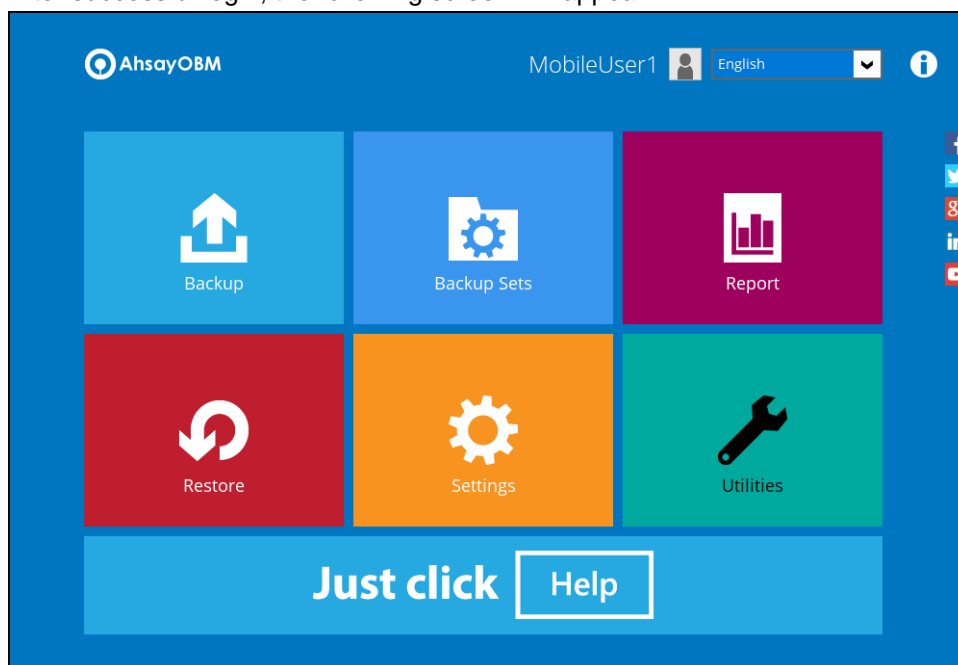
Example of the one-time password generated in the third-party Authenticator App Microsoft Authenticator.



In the following example, both Ahsay Mobile and a third-party TOTP Authenticator App has been setup for 2FA. Select your preferred 2FA method from the options available to complete the login.



4. After successful login, the following screen will appear.



**NOTE**

Please refer to the [Ahsay Mobile App User Guide for Android and iOS – Appendix A: Troubleshooting Login](#) if you are experiencing problems logging into AhsayOBM with Two-Factor Authentication using Ahsay Mobile app.

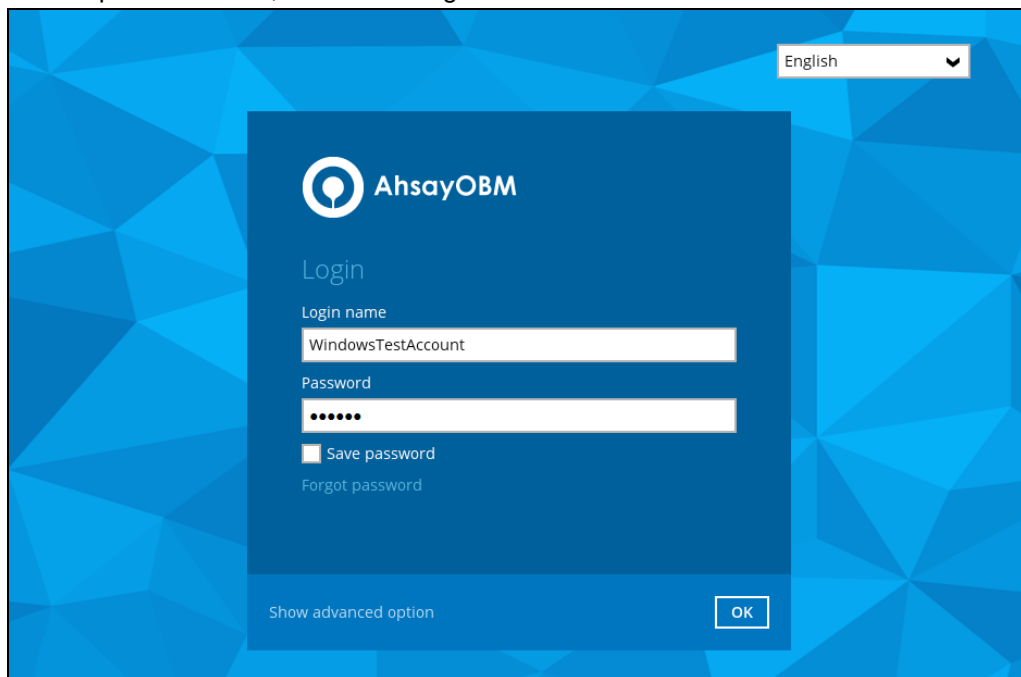
## 7.3 Login to AhsayOBM with 2FA using Twilio

For AhsayOBM user accounts using Twilio, please follow the steps below:

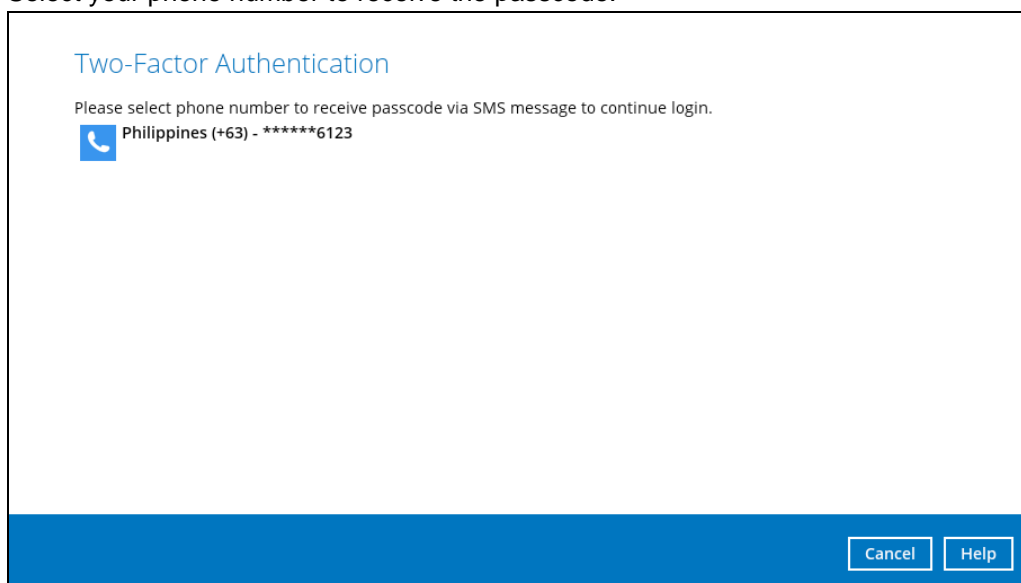
1. A shortcut icon of AhsayOBM will be available on your desktop after installation. Double-click the icon to launch the application.



2. Enter the login name and password of your AhsayOBM account provided by your backup service provider. Then, click **OK** to login.

A screenshot of the AhsayOBM login dialog box. The dialog has a blue background with a white AhsayOBM logo and the word 'Login' in white. It contains two input fields: 'Login name' with the text 'WindowsTestAccount' and 'Password' with masked characters '\*\*\*\*\*'. Below the password field is a checkbox labeled 'Save password' and a link 'Forgot password'. At the bottom left is a link 'Show advanced option' and at the bottom right is an 'OK' button. The background of the window shows a blue geometric pattern and a language dropdown menu set to 'English'.

3. Select your phone number to receive the passcode.

A screenshot of the Two-Factor Authentication dialog box. The title is 'Two-Factor Authentication' in blue. Below it, the text reads 'Please select phone number to receive passcode via SMS message to continue login.' There is a list of phone numbers with a blue telephone icon next to the first one: 'Philippines (+63) - \*\*\*\*\*6123'. At the bottom right, there are 'Cancel' and 'Help' buttons.

4. Enter the passcode and click **Verify** to login.

**Two-Factor Authentication**

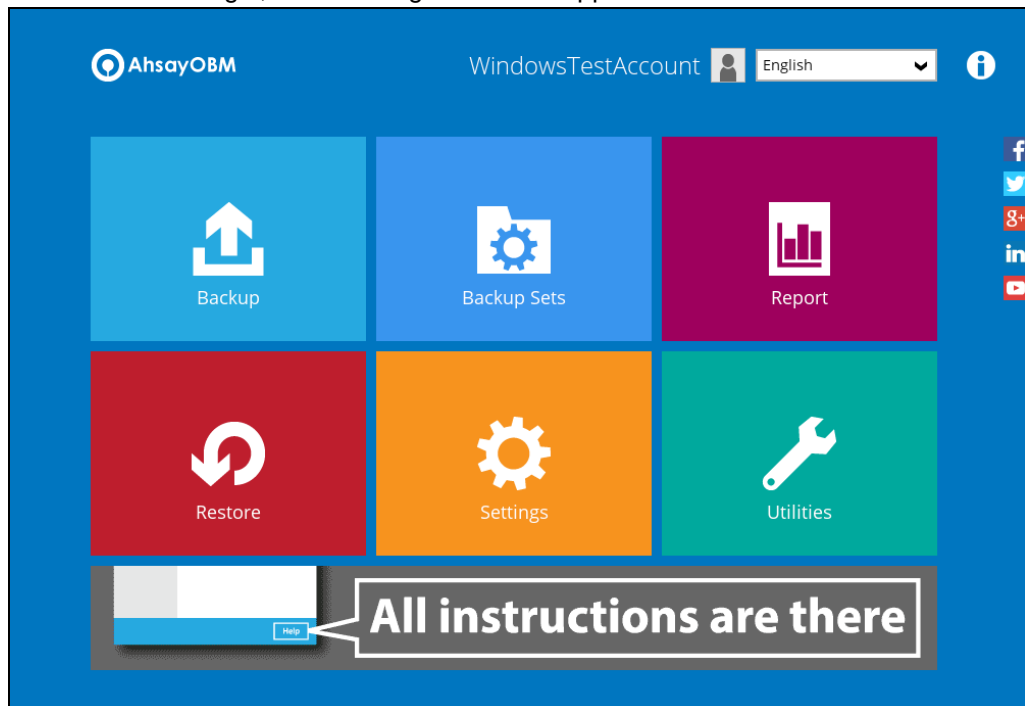
SMS message with a passcode was already sent to the phone number Philippines (+63) - \*\*\*\*\*6123  
Please enter the passcode to continue login.

XIUA -  (00:04:30)

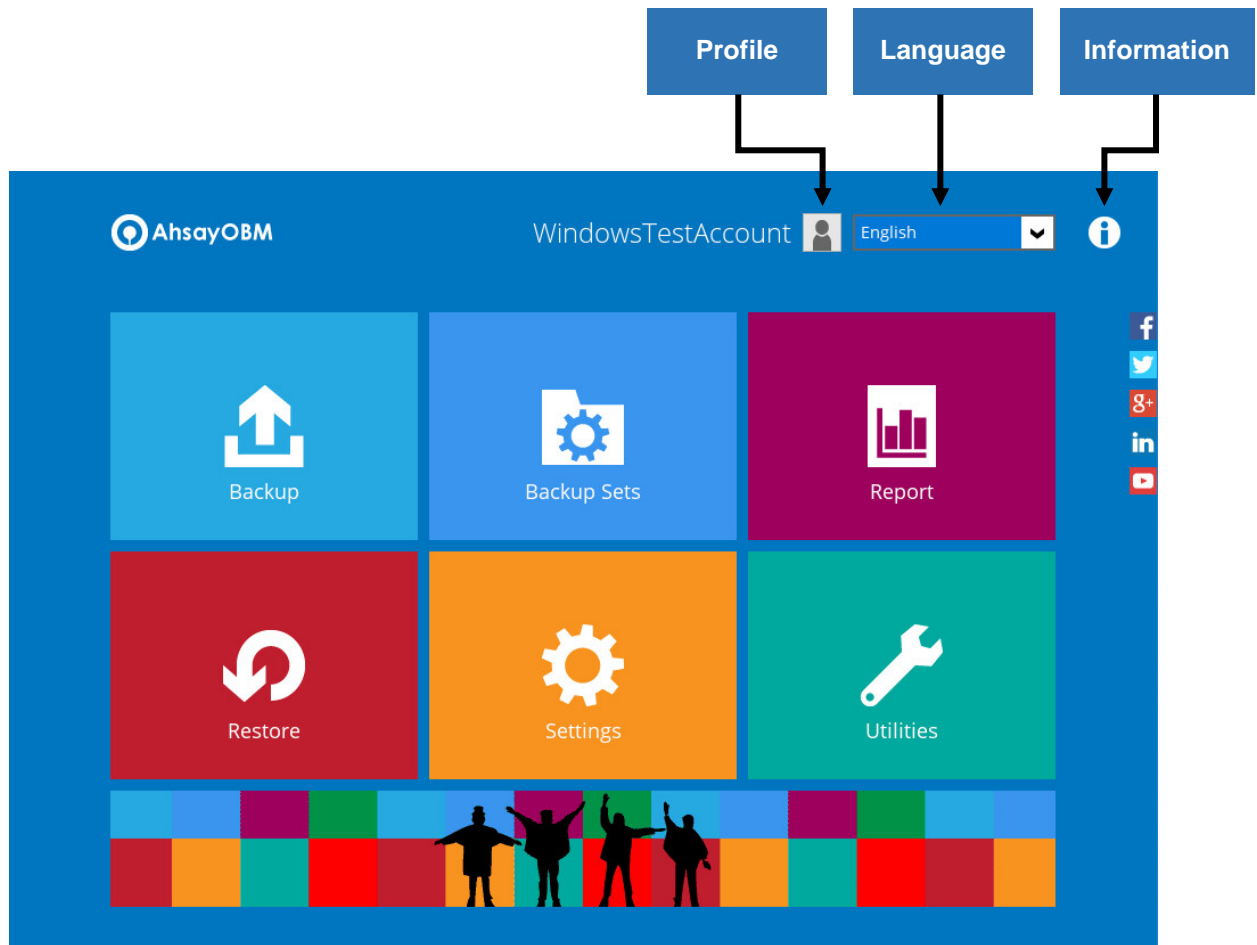
[Resend passcode](#)

[Verify](#) [Cancel](#) [Help](#)

5. After successful login, the following screen will appear.



## 8 AhsayOBM Overview



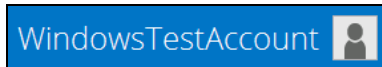
AhsayOBM main interface has nine (9) icons that can be accessed by the user, namely:

- [Profile](#)
- [Language](#)
- [Information](#)
- [Backup](#)
- [Backup Sets](#)
- [Report](#)
- [Restore](#)
- [Settings](#)
- [Utilities](#)



## 8.1 Profile

The **Profile** icon shows the settings that can be modified by the user. The features that will be shown will depend on if the user accounts was using Twilio Two-Factor Authentication in prior to upgrading to v8.5.0.0 or above and continues to use Twilio.

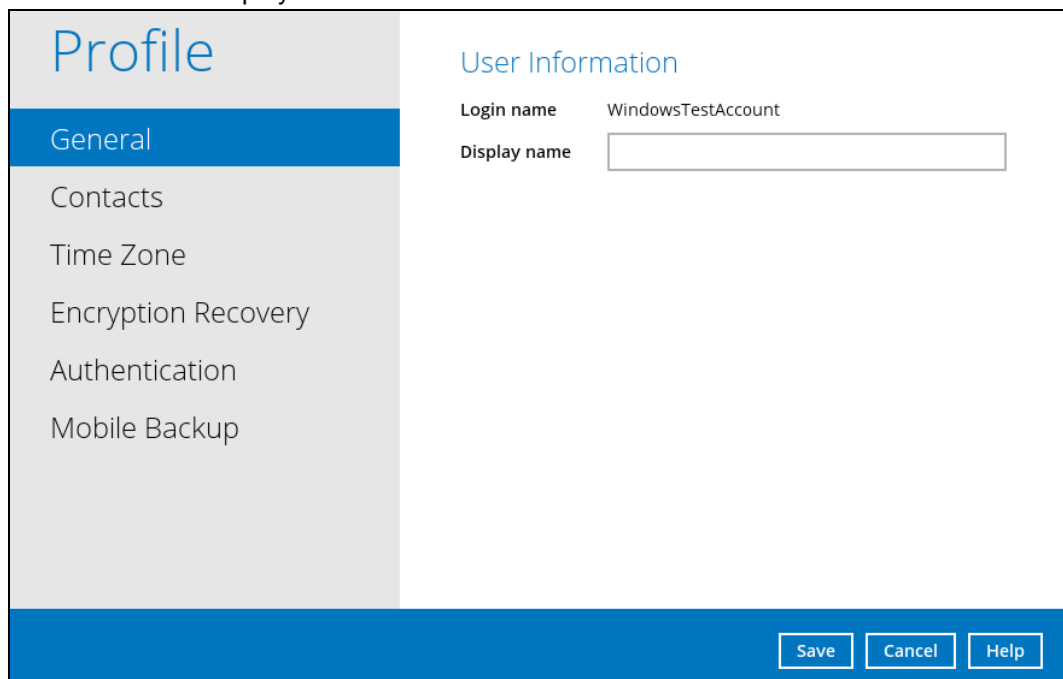


There are eight (8) available features:

- ◉ [General](#)
- ◉ [Contacts](#)
- ◉ [Time Zone](#)
- ◉ [Encryption Recovery](#)
- ◉ [Password](#) (Only shown for backup accounts created prior to AhsayOBM v8.5.0.0 and using Twilio for two-factor authentication.)
- ◉ [Authentication](#)
- ◉ [Mobile Backup](#) (Only available if the mobile add-on module is enabled on the user profile. Please contact your backup service provider for details.)
- ◉ [Security Settings](#) (Only shown for backup accounts created prior to AhsayOBM v8.5.0.0 and using Twilio for two-factor authentication.)

### 8.1.1 General

The General tab displays the user's information.

The screenshot shows the 'Profile' page with the 'General' tab selected. On the left is a sidebar with links: General, Contacts, Time Zone, Encryption Recovery, Authentication, and Mobile Backup. The main area is titled 'User Information' and contains two fields: 'Login name' with the value 'WindowsTestAccount' and 'Display name' with an empty text box. At the bottom right are three buttons: 'Save', 'Cancel', and 'Help'.

Control	Description
<b>Login name</b>	Name of the backup account.
<b>Display name</b>	Display name of the backup account upon logging in to the AhsayCBS User Web Console.

This will be the General tab for old backup account using Twilio for two-factor authentication.

## Profile

- General
- Contacts
- Time Zone
- Encryption Recovery
- Password
- Mobile Backup
- Security Settings

### User Information

**Login name** WindowsTestAccount  
**Display name**

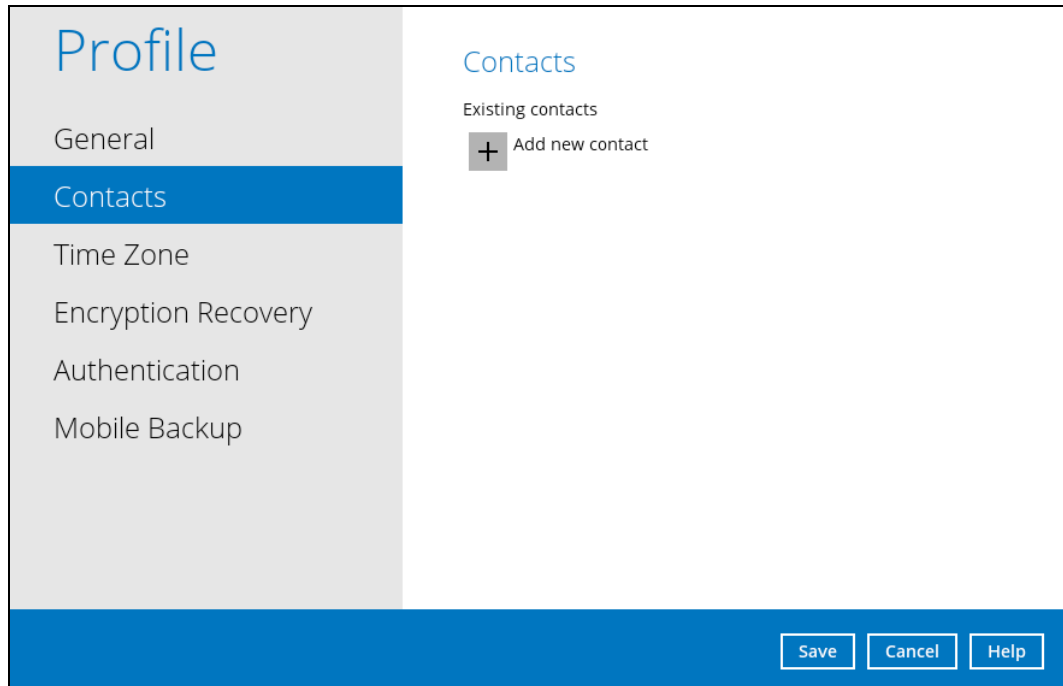
### Last Successful Login

Time: 10/09/2020 17:53 (CST)  
IP address: 180. 31  
Phone number (MFA): 63-  
Browser / App: Windows / Chrome

Control	Description
<b>Login name</b>	Name of the backup account.
<b>Display name</b>	Display name of the backup account upon logging in to the AhsayCBS User Web Console.
<b>Time</b>	The date and time the user last logged in.
<b>IP address</b>	The IP address used to login.
<b>Phone number (MFA)</b>	The phone number where sms authentication will be sent when 2FA is enabled.
<b>Browser / App</b>	The browser or app used to login in to AhsayCBS User Web Console or AhsayOBM.

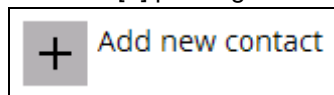
### 8.1.2 Contacts

This refers to the contact information of the user. You can also add multiple contacts or modify existing contact information. Having this filled in will help in sending backup and daily reports and even recovered backup set encryption key in case it was forgotten or lost.



To add a new contact, follow the instructions below:

1. Click the [+] plus sign to add a new contact.



2. Complete the following fields then click the [OK] button to return to the main screen.
  - Name
  - Email
  - Address
  - Company
  - Website
  - Phone 1
  - Phone 2

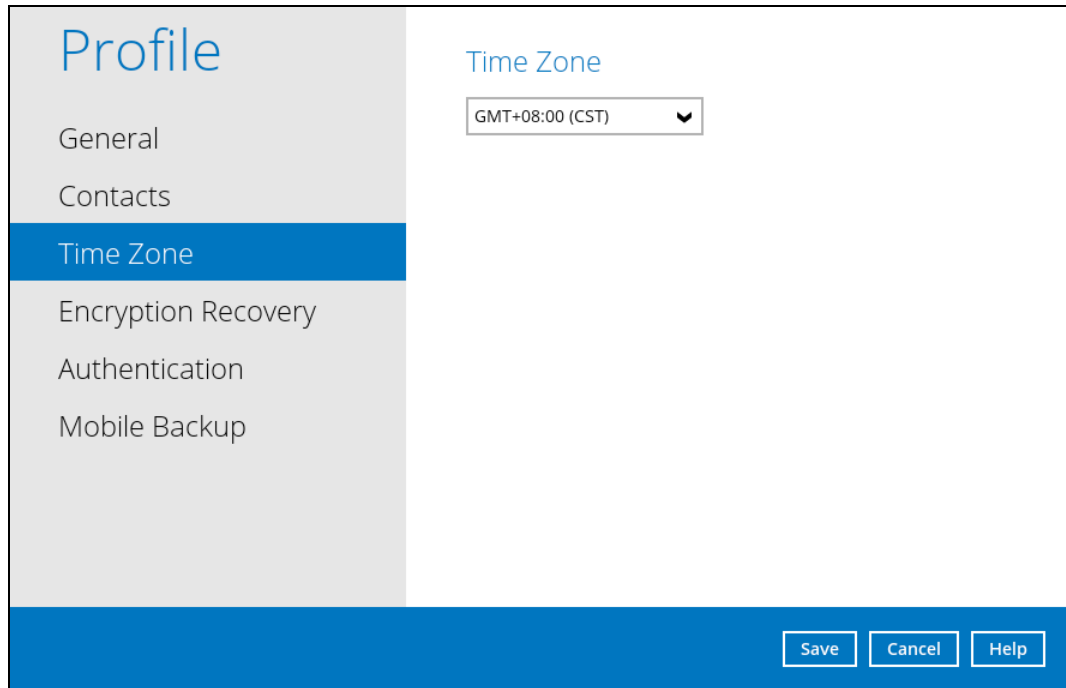
The screenshot shows a web interface with a dark header bar containing the word "Profile" in white. Below the header, the page title "New Contact" is displayed in blue. The form contains several input fields: "Name", "Email", "Address", "Company", and "Website". There is also a checkbox labeled "Send me encrypted email (S/MIME)". At the bottom right of the form, there are two buttons: "OK" and "Cancel".

3. Click the [Save] button to store the contact information.

The screenshot shows a web interface with a dark header bar containing the word "Profile" in white. Below the header, the page title "Profile" is displayed in blue. The left sidebar contains a list of menu items: "General", "Contacts", "Time Zone", "Encryption Recovery", "Authentication", and "Mobile Backup". The "Contacts" item is highlighted in blue. The main content area is titled "Contacts" in blue. Below the title, there is a section labeled "Existing contacts" which displays a contact card for "samplename" with the email "sample\_email@mail.com". Below the contact card is an "Add" button. At the bottom right of the page, there are three buttons: "Save", "Cancel", and "Help".

### 8.1.3 Time Zone

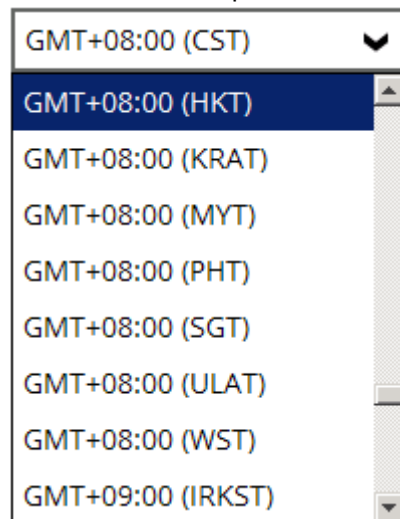
The time zone indicated.



The screenshot shows a 'Profile' settings page. On the left is a sidebar with a 'Profile' header and several menu items: 'General', 'Contacts', 'Time Zone' (which is highlighted with a blue background), 'Encryption Recovery', 'Authentication', and 'Mobile Backup'. The main content area is titled 'Time Zone' and contains a dropdown menu currently set to 'GMT+08:00 (CST)'. At the bottom right of the page are three buttons: 'Save', 'Cancel', and 'Help'.

To modify the time zone, follow the instructions below:

1. Select from the dropdown list.



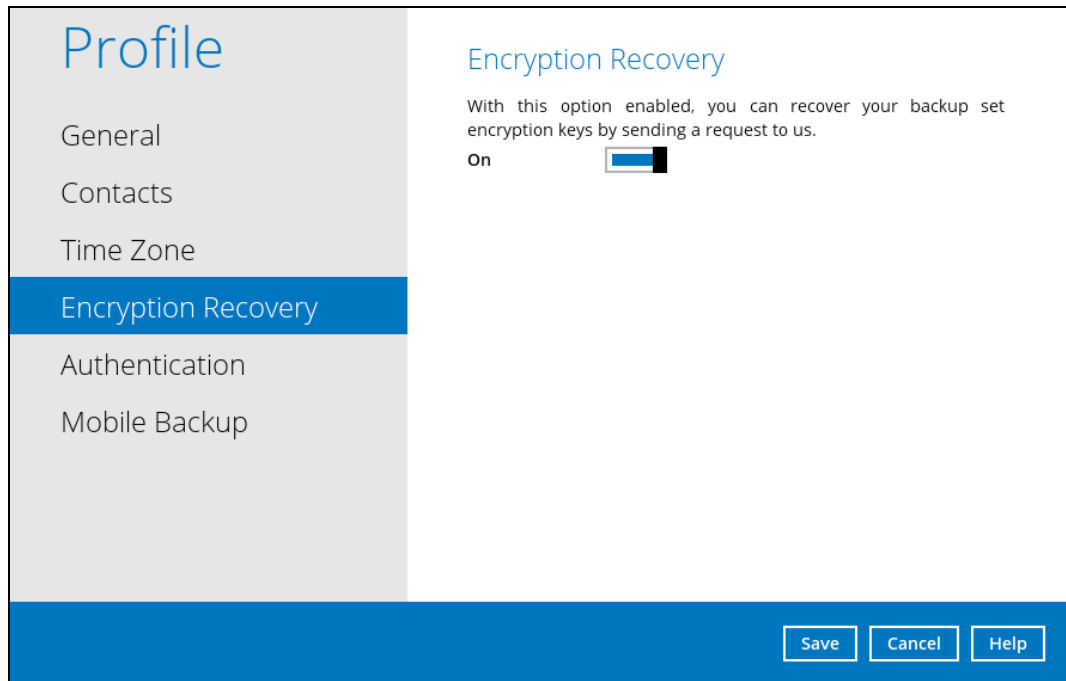
This screenshot shows the expanded dropdown menu for the Time Zone setting. The list contains the following options: 'GMT+08:00 (CST)', 'GMT+08:00 (HKT)', 'GMT+08:00 (KRAT)', 'GMT+08:00 (MYT)', 'GMT+08:00 (PHT)', 'GMT+08:00 (SGT)', 'GMT+08:00 (ULAT)', 'GMT+08:00 (WST)', and 'GMT+09:00 (IRKST)'. The 'GMT+08:00 (HKT)' option is currently selected and highlighted in blue.

2. Click the [Save] button to save the updated time zone.

### 8.1.4 Encryption Recovery

Backup set encryption key can be recovered by turning this feature on.

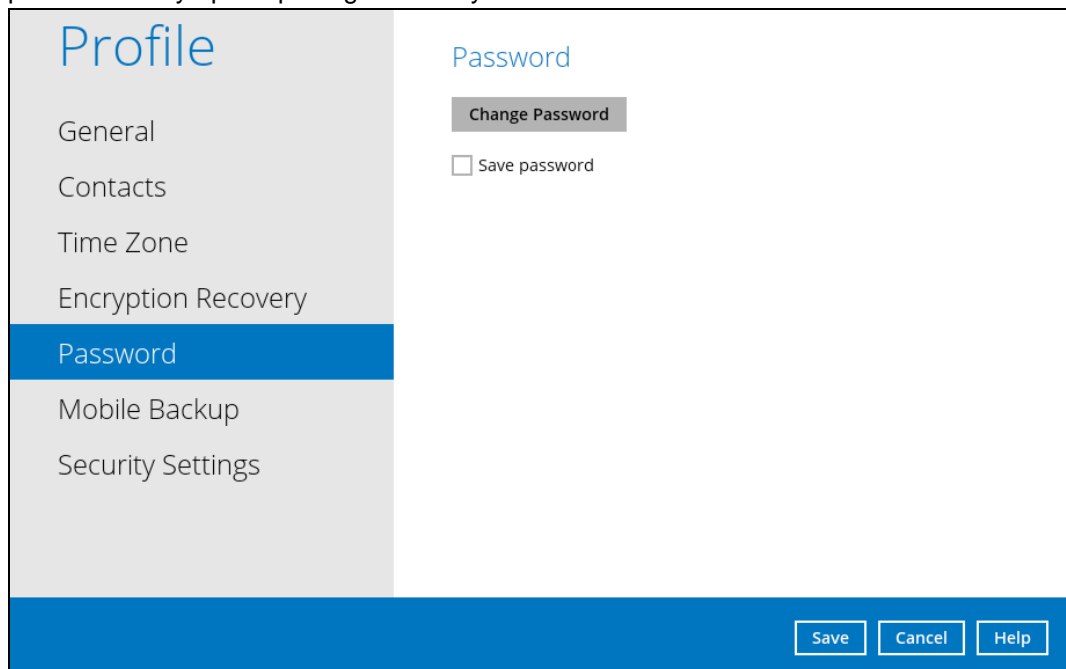
**Note:** This option may not be available. Please contact your backup service provider for more details.



The screenshot shows the 'Profile' settings page with 'Encryption Recovery' selected in the left sidebar. The main content area is titled 'Encryption Recovery' and contains the text: 'With this option enabled, you can recover your backup set encryption keys by sending a request to us.' Below this text is a toggle switch labeled 'On' which is currently turned on. At the bottom right of the page are three buttons: 'Save', 'Cancel', and 'Help'.

### 8.1.5 Password

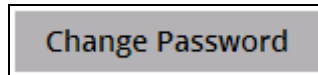
Login password can be modified anytime. Tick the [Save Password] box to bypass the password entry upon opening the AhsayOBM.



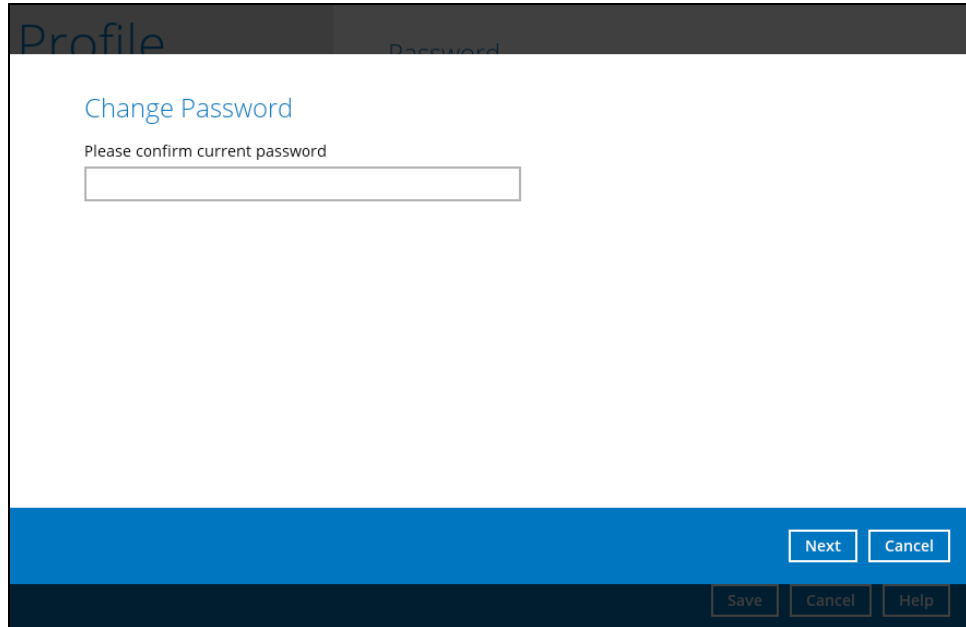
The screenshot shows the 'Profile' settings page with 'Password' selected in the left sidebar. The main content area is titled 'Password' and contains a 'Change Password' button and a checkbox labeled 'Save password' which is currently unchecked. At the bottom right of the page are three buttons: 'Save', 'Cancel', and 'Help'.

To modify the password, follow the instructions below:

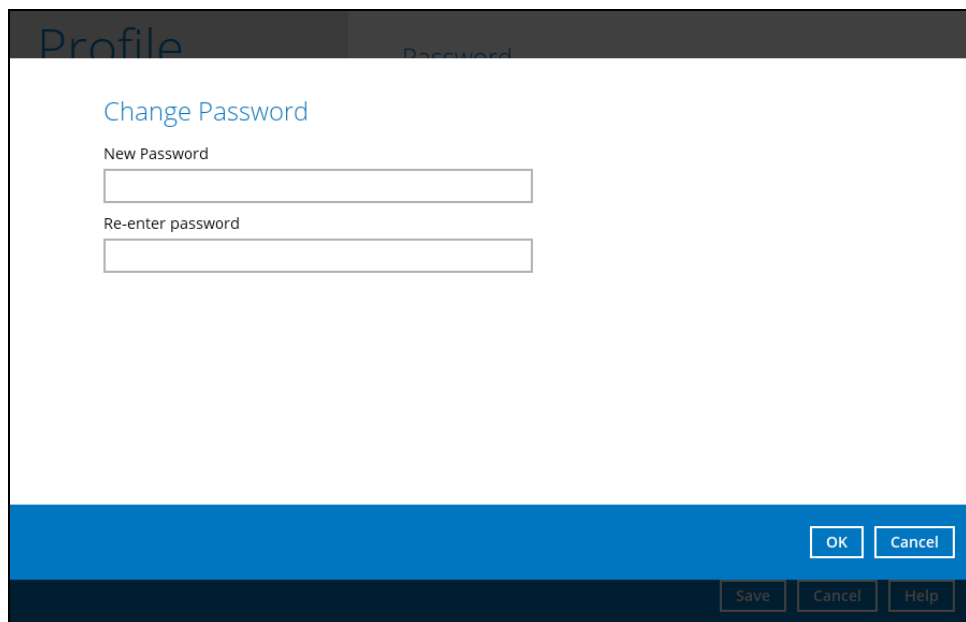
1. Click [Change Password].



2. Enter the current password, then click [Next].

A screenshot of a mobile application interface. At the top, there's a dark grey header with "Profile" on the left and "Password" on the right. Below the header, the title "Change Password" is displayed in blue. Underneath, the text "Please confirm current password" is followed by a single text input field. At the bottom, there's a blue bar containing "Next" and "Cancel" buttons. Below this bar, a dark grey footer contains "Save", "Cancel", and "Help" buttons.

3. Enter the New Password and re-enter, then click the [OK] button to return to the main screen.

A screenshot of the same mobile application interface. The title "Change Password" is in blue. Below it, the text "New Password" is followed by a text input field. Underneath, the text "Re-enter password" is followed by another text input field. At the bottom, there's a blue bar containing "OK" and "Cancel" buttons. Below this bar, a dark grey footer contains "Save", "Cancel", and "Help" buttons.

4. Click the [Save] button to store the updated password.

## 8.1.6 Authentication

You can use the Authentication function to:

- Change the “[Password](#)”.
- Enable or disable the “[Two-Factor Authentication](#)”.
- Add one or more device(s) registered for Two-Factor Authentication (2FA).

### NOTE

Please refer to the [Ahsay Mobile App User Guide for Android and iOS – Chapter 6.3.1](#) for the detailed step-by-step procedure.

- [Remove one or more device\(s\)](#) registered for Two-Factor Authentication (2FA).
- View details of the “[Last Successful Login](#)” for Password Lock and Two-Factor Authentication (2FA).

### NOTE

For Two-Factor Authentication (2FA), you can register your mobile device on both Ahsay Mobile app and a third-party authenticator apps (e.g. Authy, Duo, Google Authenticator, Microsoft Authenticator, and LastPass Authenticator).

The screenshot shows the 'Profile' page of the Ahsay Mobile app. On the left is a sidebar menu with options: General, Contacts, Time Zone, Encryption Recovery, Authentication (highlighted in blue), and Mobile Backup. The main content area is titled 'Authentication' and includes three sections: 'Password' with a 'Change Password' button and a 'Save password' checkbox; 'Two-Factor Authentication' with a toggle switch currently set to 'Off' and the text 'Require Authenticator App to sign in your account during startup'; and 'Last Successful Login' showing 'No login record'. At the bottom right, there are three buttons: 'Save', 'Cancel', and 'Help'.



## Password

Login password can be modified anytime. Tick the **Save Password** box to bypass the password entry upon opening the AhsayOBM.

The screenshot shows the 'Profile' settings page with the 'Authentication' tab selected. The 'Password' section includes a 'Change Password' button, a checked 'Save password' checkbox, and a 'Two-Factor Authentication' section with a toggle set to 'off'. The 'Last Successful Login' section shows 'No login record'. At the bottom right are 'Save', 'Cancel', and 'Help' buttons.

Profile

- General
- Contacts
- Time Zone
- Encryption Recovery
- Authentication**
- Mobile Backup

Password

Change Password

☒ Save password

Two-Factor Authentication

Require Authenticator App to sign in your account during startup

off

Last Successful Login

No login record

Save Cancel Help

To change the password, follow the instructions below:

1. Click the **Change Password**.

This screenshot is identical to the previous one, but the 'Save password' checkbox is now unchecked, indicating the 'Change Password' button has been clicked.

Profile

- General
- Contacts
- Time Zone
- Encryption Recovery
- Authentication**
- Mobile Backup

Password

Change Password

☐ Save password

Two-Factor Authentication

Require Authenticator App to sign in your account during startup

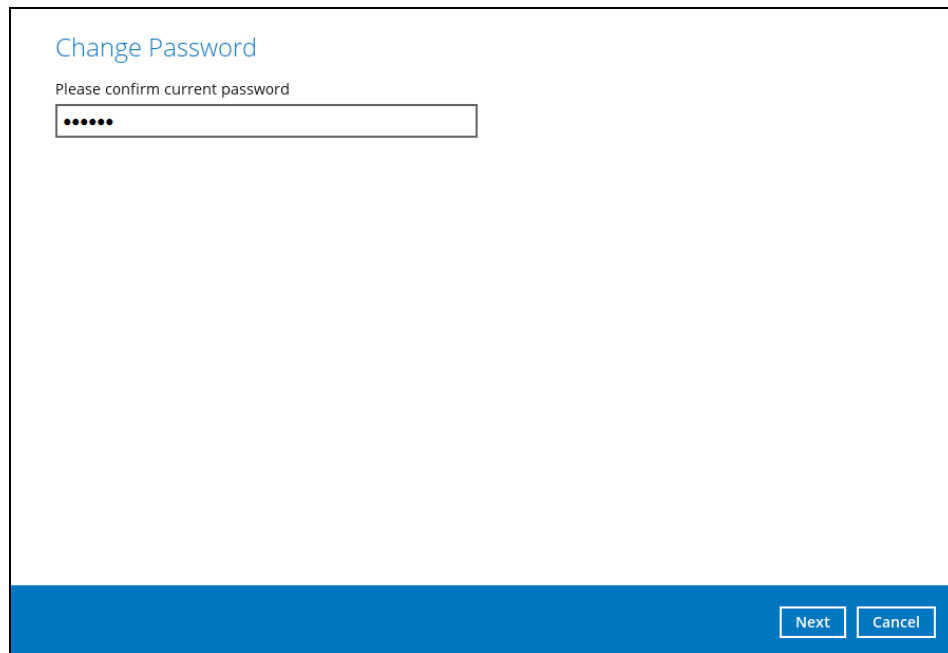
Off

Last Successful Login

No login record

Save Cancel Help

2. Enter the current password.



Change Password

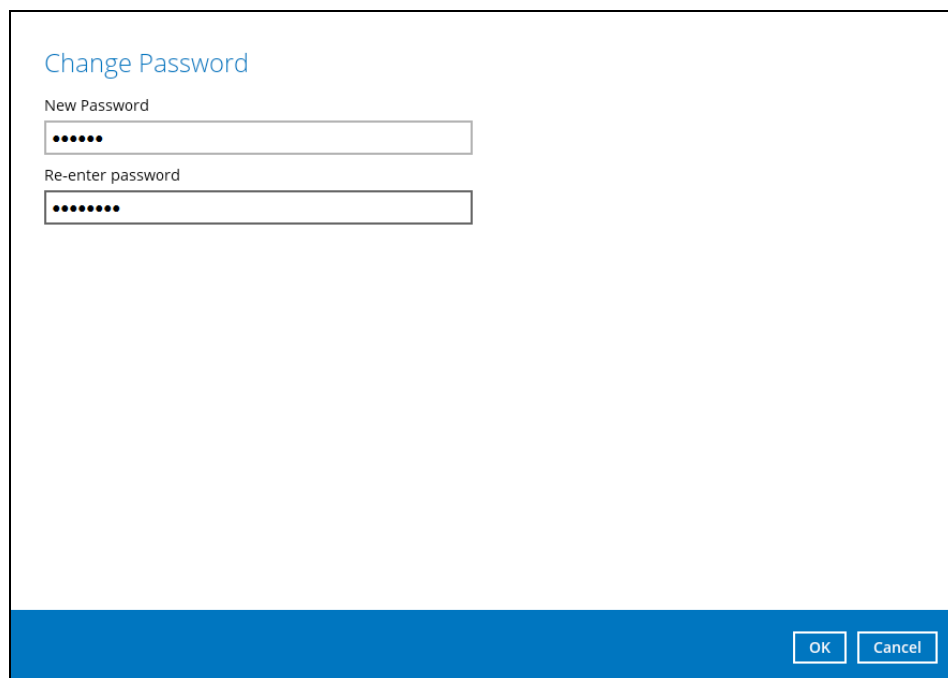
Please confirm current password

•••••

Next Cancel

This screenshot shows a 'Change Password' dialog box. The title 'Change Password' is at the top in blue. Below it, the instruction 'Please confirm current password' is displayed. A text input field contains six black dots, representing a masked password. At the bottom right, there are two buttons: 'Next' and 'Cancel'.

3. Enter the new password and re-enter it for authentication purposes. Click **OK** to return to main screen.



Change Password

New Password

•••••

Re-enter password

••••••••

OK Cancel

This screenshot shows the same 'Change Password' dialog box, but at a later stage. The 'New Password' field now contains six black dots. Below it, the 'Re-enter password' field contains eight black dots. The 'Next' button has been replaced by an 'OK' button, and the 'Cancel' button remains. The title 'Change Password' is still at the top.

4. Click **Save** to store the settings.

**Profile**

- General
- Contacts
- Time Zone
- Encryption Recovery
- Authentication**
- Mobile Backup

**Password**

[Change Password](#)

☐ Save password

**Two-Factor Authentication**

Require Authenticator App to sign in your account during startup

Off ☐

**Last Successful Login**

No login record

[Save](#) [Cancel](#) [Help](#)

## Two-Factor Authentication

To enable the two-factor authentication feature, follow the instructions below:

### NOTE

The Ahsay Mobile app or a third-party authenticator apps is needed for 2FA.

1. Go to **Settings > Authentication > Two-Factor Authentication**.

The screenshot shows the 'Profile' settings page. On the left, a sidebar lists 'General', 'Contacts', 'Time Zone', 'Encryption Recovery', 'Authentication' (highlighted in blue), and 'Mobile Backup'. The main content area is titled 'Two-Factor Authentication' and includes a 'Require Authenticator App to sign in your account during startup' section with a toggle switch currently set to 'Off'. Below this, there is a 'Last Successful Login' section showing 'No login record'. At the bottom, there are 'Save', 'Cancel', and 'Help' buttons.

2. Swipe lever to the right to turn it on.

For the detailed step-by-step procedure on how to add a mobile device, please refer to [Ahsay Mobile App User Guide for Android and iOS – Chapter 6.3.1](#)

This screenshot shows the same 'Two-Factor Authentication' settings page, but the toggle switch is now set to 'On'. Additionally, a 'Registered Mobile Device(s)' section has appeared with an 'Add' button. The 'Save', 'Cancel', and 'Help' buttons remain at the bottom.

To remove a mobile device, follow the instructions below:

1. Click the **[X]** button on the left side of the registered mobile device.

**Profile**

- General
- Contacts
- Time Zone
- Encryption Recovery
- Authentication**
- Mobile Backup

**Password**

[Change Password](#)

☐ Save password

**Two-Factor Authentication**

Require Authenticator App to sign in your account during startup

On ☒

Registered Mobile Device(s)

1234 Ahsay Mobile User	X
Redmi	X

[Add](#)

**Last Successful Login**

No login record

[Save](#) [Cancel](#) [Help](#)

2. A confirmation message will appear, click **Yes** to proceed. Otherwise, click **No**.

**Profile**

- General
- Contacts
- Time Zone
- Encryption Recovery

**Password**

[Change Password](#)

☒ Save password

**Two-Factor Authentication**

Require Authenticator App to sign in your account during startup

**Are you sure you want to delete the registered Mobile Device for Two-Factor Authentication feature?**

[Yes](#) [No](#)

**Last Successful Login**

No login record

[Save](#) [Cancel](#) [Help](#)

3. Mobile device is successfully removed.

The screenshot shows the 'Profile' settings page. On the left, a sidebar lists options: General, Contacts, Time Zone, Encryption Recovery, Authentication (highlighted in blue), and Mobile Backup. The main content area is titled 'Password' and includes a 'Change Password' button and a 'Save password' checkbox. Below this is the 'Two-Factor Authentication' section, which states 'Require Authenticator App to sign in your account during startup'. A toggle switch is currently in the 'On' position. Under 'Registered Mobile Device(s)', there is one entry for 'Redmi' with a delete icon (X). An 'Add' button is present. The 'Last Successful Login' section shows the time (07/12/2020 17:23 (SGT)), IP address (175.176.33.236), browser/app (OBM), and mobile device (Redmi). At the bottom, there are 'Save', 'Cancel', and 'Help' buttons.

To disable the two-factor authentication feature, follow the instructions below:

**NOTE**

Sliding the switch to right hand side will only turn off the two-factor authentication but it will not automatically delete the registered mobile device(s) for Two-Factor Authentication. If you need to delete the registered mobile device(s), this must be done manually first before disabling Two-Factor Authentication

1. Swipe the lever to the left to turn it off.

This screenshot shows the same 'Profile' settings page, but the 'Two-Factor Authentication' toggle switch is now in the 'Off' position. The 'Registered Mobile Device(s)' list now contains two entries: '1234 Ahsay Mobile User' and 'Redmi', each with a delete icon (X). The 'Last Successful Login' section now displays 'No login record'. The 'Save', 'Cancel', and 'Help' buttons remain at the bottom.

2. Click **Save** to save the settings.

# Profile

General

Contacts

Time Zone

Encryption Recovery

Authentication

Mobile Backup

## Password

Change Password

☐ Save password

## Two-Factor Authentication

Require Authenticator App to sign in your account during startup

off

## Last Successful Login

No login record

Save

Cancel

Help

## Last Successful Login

Displays the Date, Time, IP address, and Browser / App the user last logged in and the registered Mobile Device.

- ▶ Time – the date and time the user last logged in.
- ▶ IP address – the IP address used to login.
- ▶ Browser / App – the browser or app used to login to AhsayCBS User Web Console or AhsayOBM.
- ▶ Mobile Device – the name of the device used for authentication when 2FA is enabled.

The screenshot shows the 'Profile' page with a sidebar menu containing: General, Contacts, Time Zone, Encryption Recovery, Authentication (selected), and Mobile Backup. The main content area is divided into sections: 'Password' with a 'Change Password' button and a 'Save password' checkbox; 'Two-Factor Authentication' with a toggle set to 'On' and a list of 'Registered Mobile Device(s)' including 'Redmi' with an 'Add' button; and 'Last Successful Login' displaying: Time: 07/12/2020 17:23 (SGT), IP address: 175.176.33.236, Browser / App: OBM, and Mobile Device: Redmi. At the bottom are 'Save', 'Cancel', and 'Help' buttons.

Below is the screenshot If there is no login record yet.

This screenshot is similar to the previous one but shows 'No login record' under the 'Last Successful Login' section. In the 'Two-Factor Authentication' section, the 'Registered Mobile Device(s)' list includes '1234 Ahsay Mobile User' and 'Redmi', both with 'X' icons next to them. The 'Save password' checkbox is now checked. The bottom navigation bar remains the same with 'Save', 'Cancel', and 'Help' buttons.



## 8.1.7 Mobile Backup

You can use the Mobile backup function to:

- Add one or more device(s) registered for Mobile Backup.

### NOTE

Please refer to the [Ahsay Mobile App User Guide for Android and iOS – Chapter 7](#) for the detailed step-by-step procedure.

- [Remove one or more device\(s\)](#) registered for Mobile Backup.
- Register your device multiple times on a different backup destination.

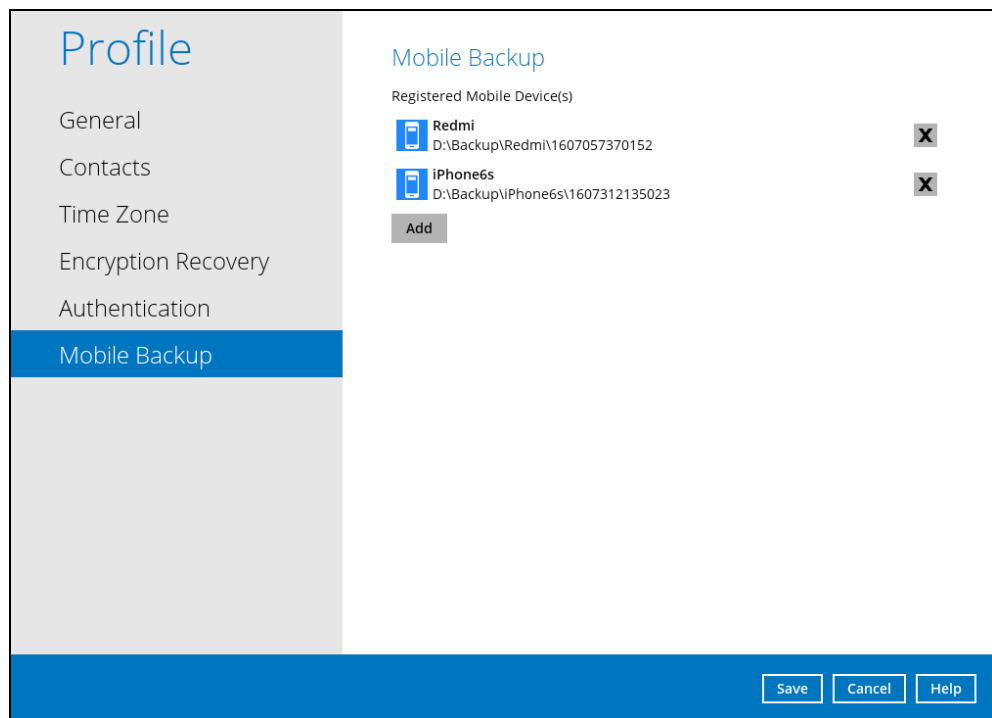
### NOTE

For the restore of photos and videos to an alternate mobile device, the other mobile devices must be registered first for mobile backup on AhsayOBM.

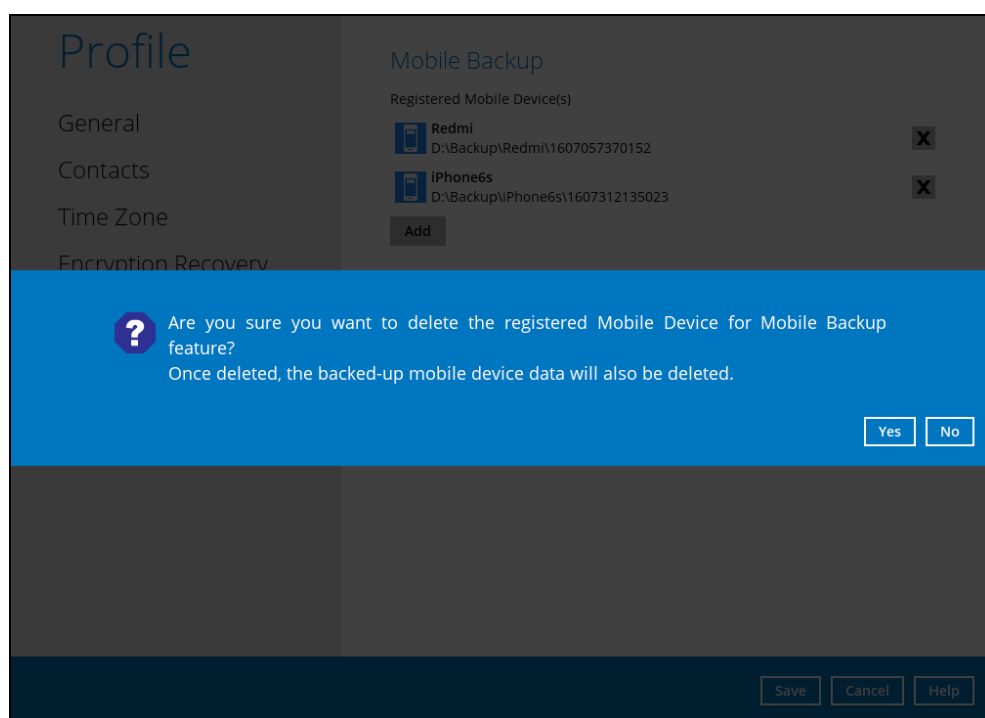
- Restore to a different mobile device on the same operating system.
- Restore to a different mobile device on another operating system, i.e. Android to iOS or iOS to Android.

To remove a mobile device, follow the instructions below:

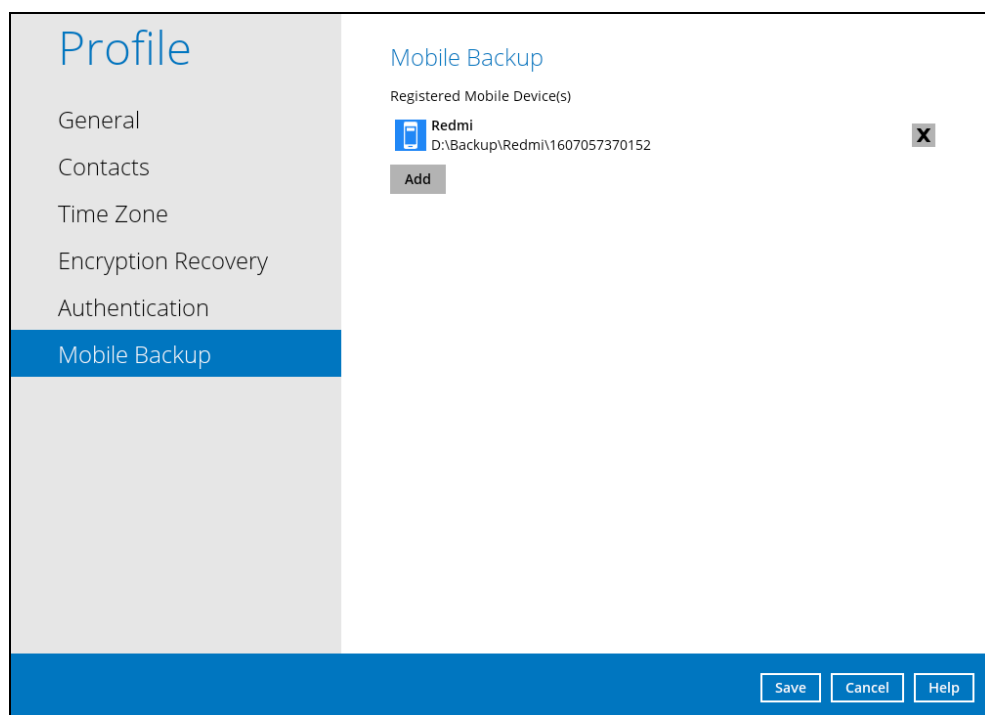
1. Click back **[X]** button on the left side of the registered mobile device.



2. A confirmation message will appear, click **Yes** to proceed. Otherwise, click **No**.



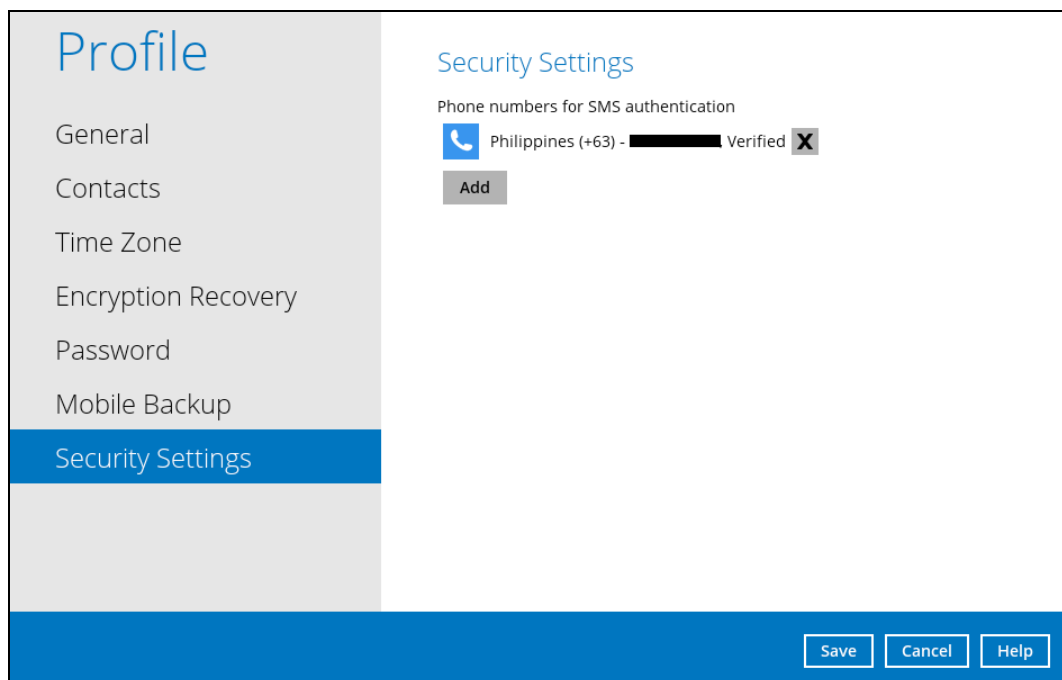
3. Mobile device is successfully removed along with any photos and videos backed up in the mobile backup destination.



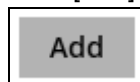
### 8.1.8 Security Settings

The **Security Settings** option is for backward compatibility with Twilio Two-Factor Authentication. It will only be visible if Twilio Two-Factor Authentication was enabled on the user account on pre-v8.5.0.0 AhsayOBM versions.

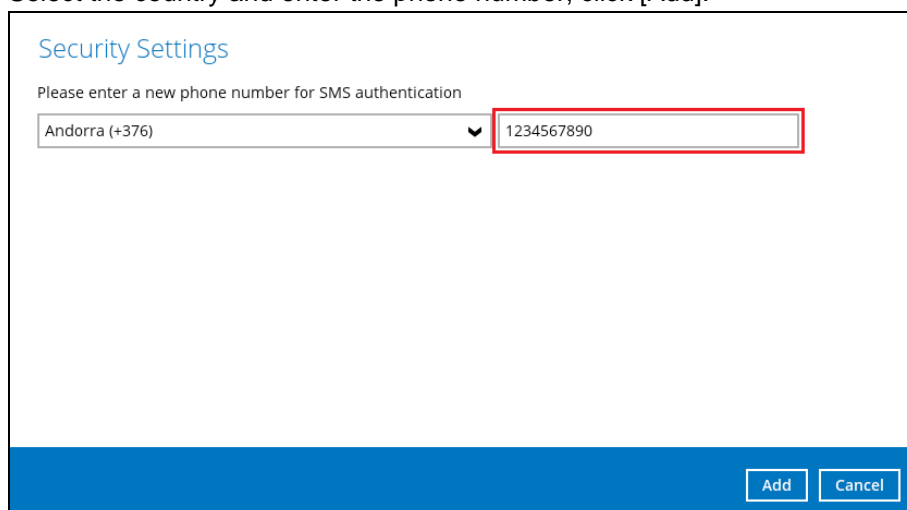
Phone numbers that will be used for sending sms authentication will be listed here and will show the status if it is verified or not. You can also add phone numbers here that can be used for sending the sms authentication.



1. Click [Add].



2. Select the country and enter the phone number, click [Add].







3. Click the [Save] button to save the phone number.


# Profile

- General
- Contacts
- Time Zone
- Encryption Recovery
- Password
- Mobile Backup
- Security Settings

## Security Settings

Phone numbers for SMS authentication

	Philippines (+63) - [REDACTED]	Verified	
	Philippines (+63) - [REDACTED]	Not verified	



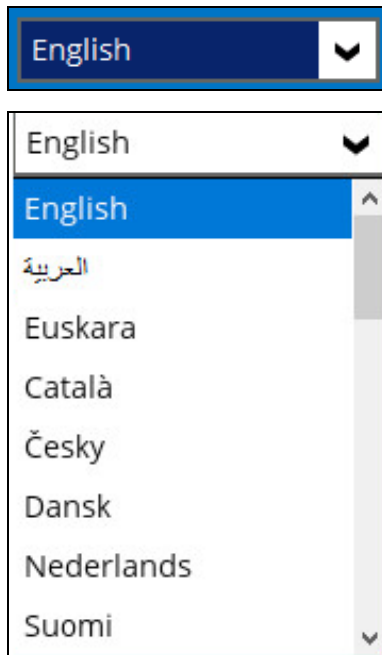
Save

Cancel

Help

## 8.2 Language

The list of available languages depends on the backup service provider.



## 8.3 Information

The **Information** icon displays the product version and system information of the machine where the AhsayOBM is installed.





## 8.4 Backup

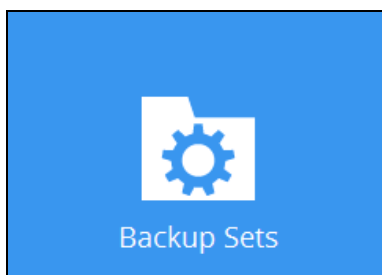
This feature is used to run the backup set/s.



To start backing up, follow the instructions on [Chapter 10 Run Backup Jobs](#)

## 8.5 Backup Sets

A backup set is a place for files and/or folders of your backed up data. This feature allows the user to select files individually or an entire folder to backup. It is also used to delete backup set/s.



To create or modify a backup set, follow the instructions on [Chapter 8 Create a Backup Set](#)

## Backup Set Settings

Below is the list of configurable settings under a Backup Set:

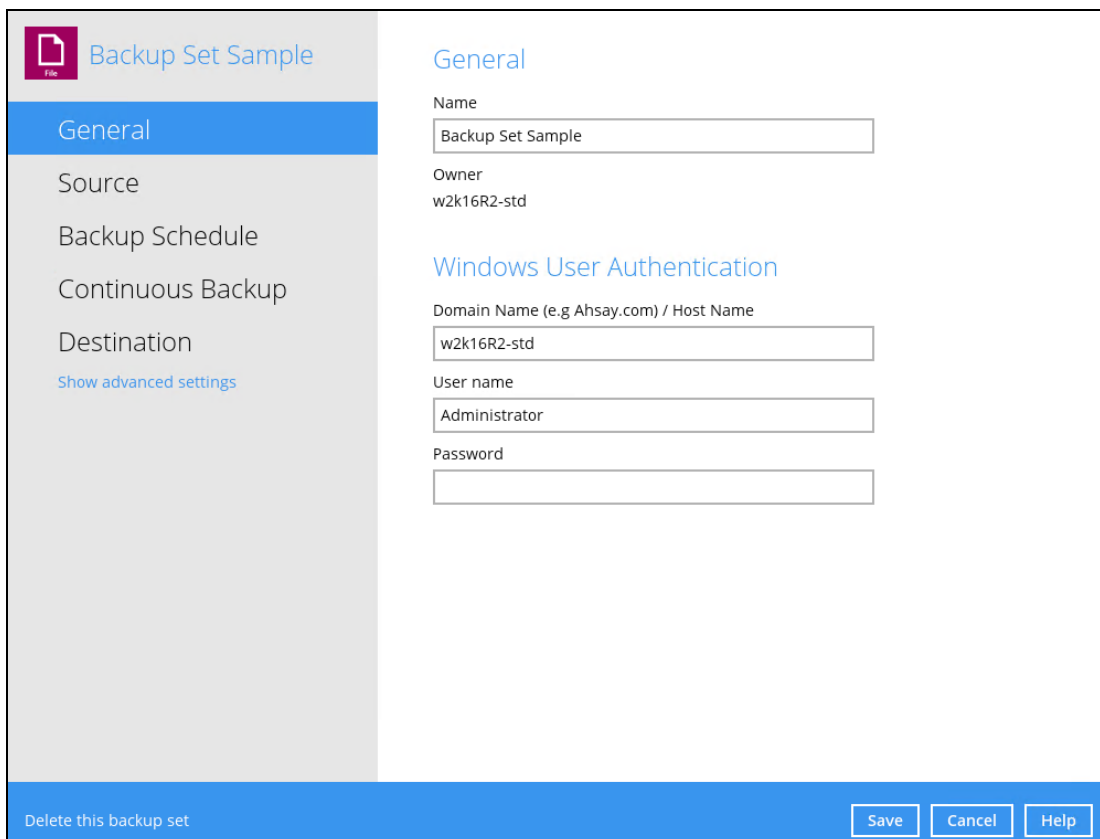
- [General](#)
- [Source](#)
- [Backup Schedule](#)
- [Continuous Backup](#)
- [Destination](#)

(Advanced settings)

- [In-File Delta](#)
- [Retention Policy](#)
- [Command Line Tool](#)
- [Reminder](#)
- [Bandwidth Control](#)
- [Others](#)

### General

This feature allows the user to modify the backup set name and manage the Windows User Authentication login credentials in the backup set.



The screenshot shows a software window titled "Backup Set Sample". On the left is a sidebar with a menu containing "General" (highlighted in blue), "Source", "Backup Schedule", "Continuous Backup", "Destination", and a link "Show advanced settings". The main area on the right is titled "General" and contains the following fields:

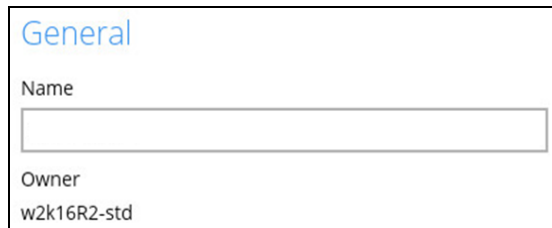
- Name:** A text box containing "Backup Set Sample".
- Owner:** A text box containing "w2k16R2-std".
- Windows User Authentication:** A section header.
- Domain Name (e.g Ahsay.com) / Host Name:** A text box containing "w2k16R2-std".
- User name:** A text box containing "Administrator".
- Password:** An empty text box.

At the bottom of the window is a blue bar with the text "Delete this backup set" on the left and three buttons: "Save", "Cancel", and "Help" on the right.

## Backup Set Name

To modify the name of a backup set, follow the steps below:

1. In the Name field, enter a new backup set name.



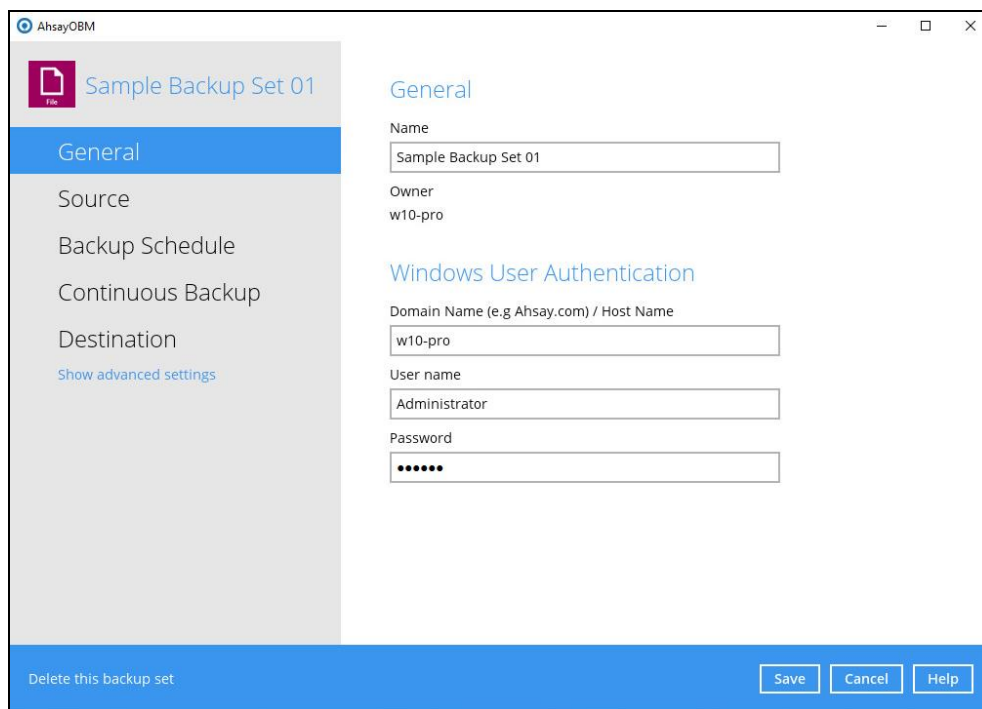
General

Name

Owner

w2k16R2-std

2. Click the [Save] button to save the updated backup set name.



AhsayOBM

Sample Backup Set 01

General

Source

Backup Schedule

Continuous Backup

Destination

[Show advanced settings](#)

Delete this backup set

General

Name

Sample Backup Set 01

Owner

w10-pro

Windows User Authentication

Domain Name (e.g. Ahsay.com) / Host Name

w10-pro

User name

Administrator

Password

\*\*\*\*\*

Save Cancel Help

### NOTE

In assigning a backup set name, make sure that it does not have an identical name.



## Windows User Authentication

To successfully perform backup and restore operations, AhsayOBM requires both read and write permission to all the files/folders selected in the backup source.

The Windows User Authentication login credentials are used by the AhsayOBM to ensure it has sufficient permission to access files and/or folders selected in the Backup Source, the temporary folder location, and the backup destination if it is a network drive accessible from backup machine via LAN, especially when running scheduled backup jobs, as the default Windows account used by the AhsayOBM scheduler service is a local system account which does not have access to network resources.

### Windows User Authentication

Domain Name (e.g Ahsay.com) / Host Name

User name

Password

- If files and/or folders selected are located on network drive(s), the login credentials for the Windows User Authentication must have permission to access network resources, (e.g. an administrator account).
- If the machine is a file server shared by multiple users, then the AhsayOBM will require login credentials with read/write permissions to access all the selected files and/or folders in the backup source (e.g. an administrator account).

Field	Description
<b>Domain Name</b>	The domain or host name of the machine.
<b>Username</b>	Login username used by the AhsayOBM to access files and/or folders selected in the backup source.
<b>Password</b>	Login password used by the AhsayOBM to access files and/or folders selected in the backup source.

## Source

This feature allows the user to select files and/or folders in the backup source to back up.

**Sample Backup Set**

General

**Source**

Backup Schedule

Continuous Backup

Destination

[Show advanced settings](#)

**Backup Source**

Select the files and folders that you want to backup

- ☐ Desktop
- ☐ My Documents
- ☐ Favorites
- ☐ Outlook
- ☐ Windows Live Mail

**Filter**

Apply filters to the backup source

Off ☐

[I would like to choose the files to backup](#)

Delete this backup set

Save Cancel Help

Quick or Shortcut

Filter

Advanced Backup Source

There are three (3) different ways to select files and/or folders to back up:

Option	Description
<b>Quick or Shortcut</b>	This allows the user to back up files and/or folders in the selected backup source entirely.
<b>Filter</b>	This allows the user to select or exclude files and/or folders from the backup job.
<b>Advanced Backup Source</b>	This allows the user to select files and/or folders individually to back up.

## Option 1: Quick or Shortcut

This option allows the user to quickly select a backup source to be backed up.

### Backup Source

Select the files and folders that you want to backup

☐ Desktop






☐ My Documents

☐ Favorites

☐ Outlook

☐ Windows Live Mail

If any of the following backup source is selected and the [Backup Schedule](#) is enabled, the Windows User Authentication will prompt the user to enter the login password. To select a backup source without entering the login password, the backup schedule must be disabled.

Desktop	
My Documents	
Favorites	
Outlook	
Windows Live Mail	

### Windows User Authentication

Domain Name (e.g Ahsay.com) / Host Name






User name

Password

### NOTE

During the creation of backup set, if this type of backup source (Quick or Shortcut) is selected and the Schedule is set to "on", the Windows User Authentication screen will be displayed. You will need to enter the login password, otherwise, the creation of backup set will not continue.

To know the locations of the folder(s) that will be backed up for each selected backup source, refer to the following table:

Backup Source	Description
<p>Desktop</p> 	<p>If Desktop is selected, all files and/or folders in the following location will be backed up:</p> <p><b>%UserProfile%\Desktop</b></p>
<p>My Documents</p> 	<p>If Documents is selected, all files and/or folders located in the following location will be backed up:</p> <p><b>%UserProfile%\Documents</b></p> <p>If the <a href="#">Follow Link</a> is enabled, all files and/or folders located in the following locations will also be backed up:</p> <p><b>%UserProfile%\Music</b></p> <p><b>%UserProfile%\Pictures</b></p> <p><b>%UserProfile%\Videos</b></p> <p><b>Note:</b> The Follow link is enabled by default.</p>
<p>Favorites</p> 	<p>If Favorites is selected, all files and/or folders located in the following location will be backed up:</p> <p><b>%UserProfile%\Favorites</b></p>
<p>Outlook</p> 	<p>If Outlook is selected, all files and/or folders located in the following location will be backed up:</p> <p><b>%UserProfile%\AppData\Local\Microsoft\Outlook</b></p>
<p>Windows Live Mail</p> 	<p>If Windows Live Mail is selected, all files and/or folders located in the following location will be backed up:</p> <p><b>%UserProfile%\AppData\Local\Microsoft\Windows Live Mail</b></p>

To select files and/or folder to back up using the Quick or Shortcut option, follow the steps below:

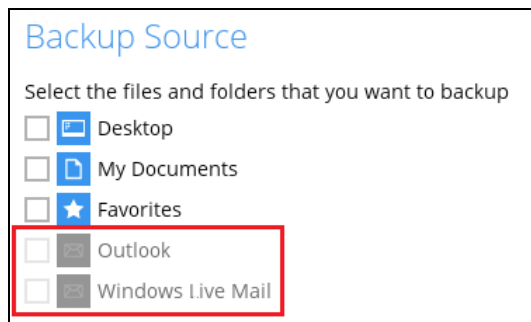
1. Select a backup source.

### Backup Source

Select the files and folders that you want to backup

☐ Desktop
 ☒ My Documents
 ☐ Favorites
 ☐ Outlook
 ☐ Windows Live Mail

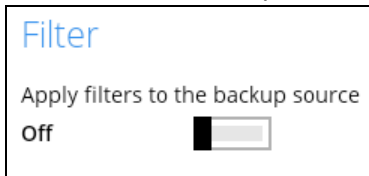
2. The Outlook and Windows Live Mail will be disabled if they were not installed on the machine.



3. Click the [Save] button to store the selected backup source.

## Option 2: Filter

The Filter Backup Source is an alternative way to select a backup source which does not require Windows User Authentication login password even if the backup schedule is enabled unless the filter backup source is located on a network drive.

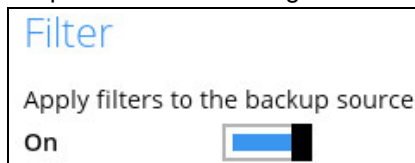


The following options in the filter backup source does not require Windows User Authentication login password:

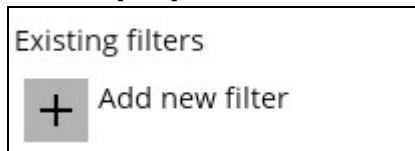
All hard disk drives	<div>Apply this filter to all files/folders in</div> <div><input type="radio"/> All hard disk drives</div>
Specific folder	<div><input checked="" type="radio"/> This folder only (Input local / network address or click [Change])</div> <div><input type="text"/> <div>Change</div></div> <div><input type="checkbox"/> This share requires access credentials</div>

To select files and/or folders to back up using the Filter Backup Source, follow the steps below:

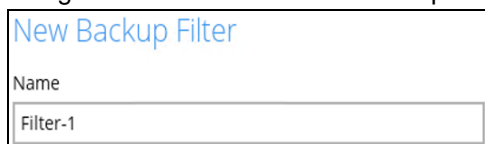
1. Swipe the lever to the right to turn on the filter setting.



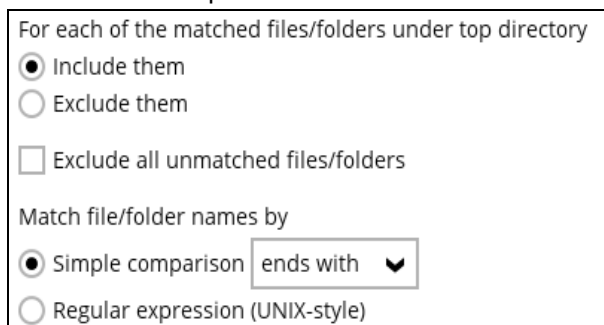
2. Click the [Add] button to create filter.



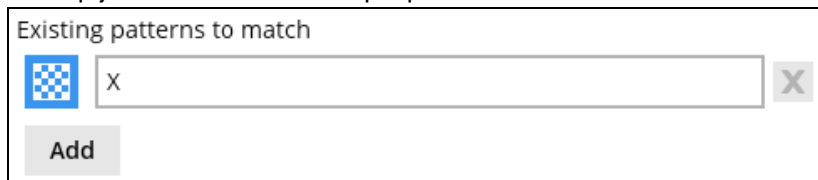
3. Assign a desired name to the backup filter.



4. Select from the options below.



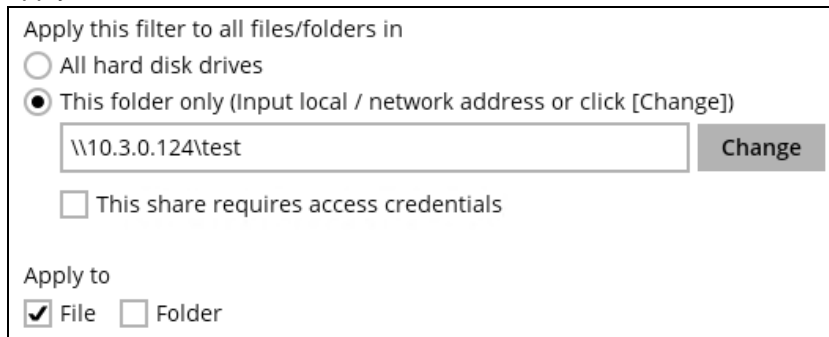
5. In this example, all files and/or folders that end with the letter 'X' will be included to the backup job. You can add multiple patterns here.



Existing patterns to match

Add

6. Select whether you would like to apply the filter to all files and/or folders in all hard disk drives or to a specific folder only. If 'This folder only' is selected, click the [Change] button to select the specific folder or input the local / network address that you would like to apply the filter to.



Apply this filter in

☐ All hard disk drives

☒ This folder only (Input local / network address or click [Change])

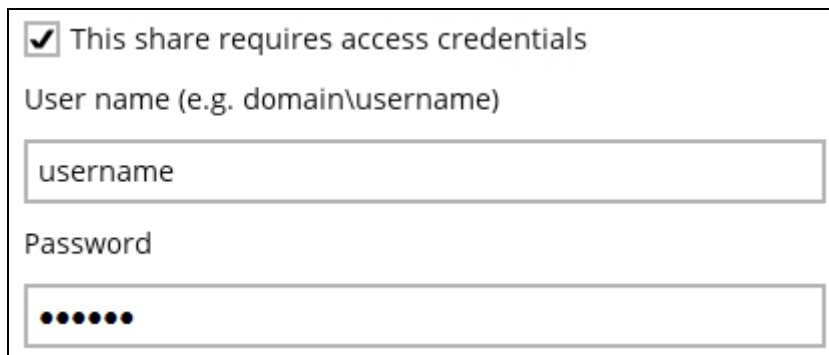
Change

☐ This share requires access credentials

Apply to

☒ File ☐ Folder

7. If 'This share requires access credentials' is checked, enter the User name and Password of the local or network drive. This checkbox will only be enabled if a local or network address is detected.

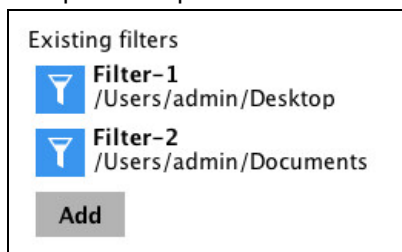


☒ This share requires access credentials

User name (e.g. domain\\username)

Password

8. Click the [OK] button to save the created filter, then click the [Save] button to save the settings. Once you run a backup, all files and/or folders that match the applied filter will be backed up.
9. Multiple backup filters can be created by clicking the [Add] button.



Existing filters

☐ Filter-1 /Users/admin/Desktop

☐ Filter-2 /Users/admin/Documents

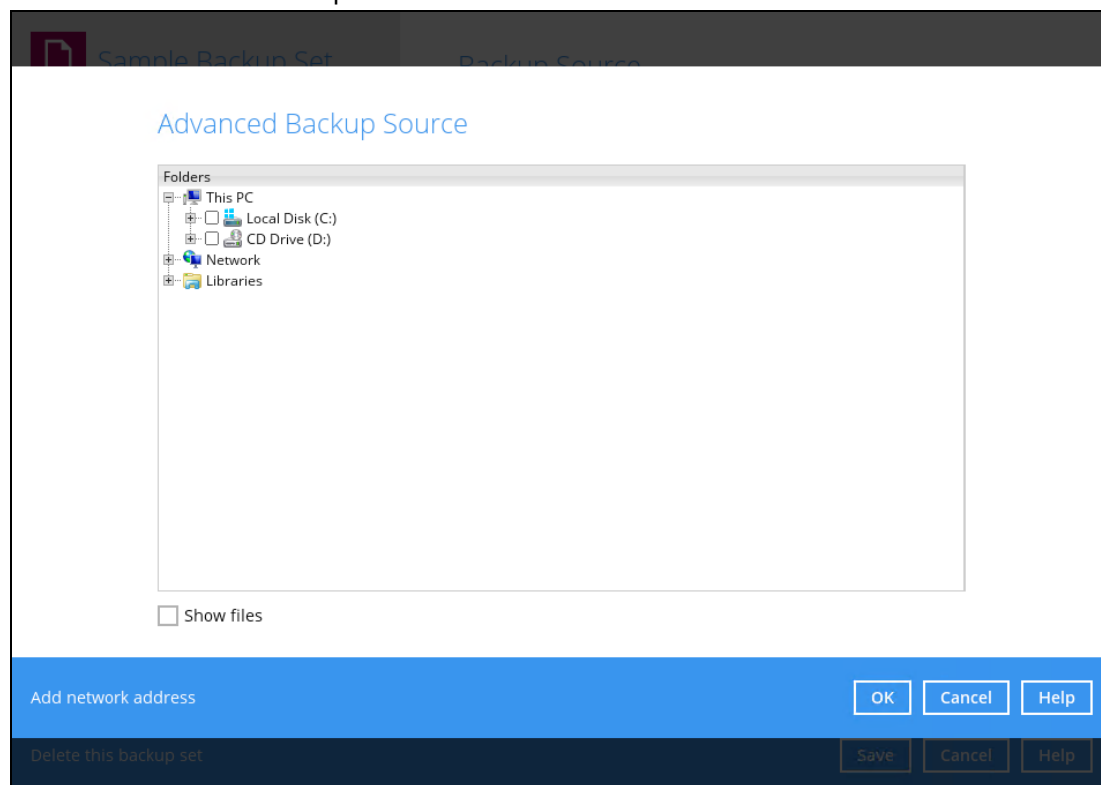
Add

#### NOTE




For more details about backup source file filtering, please refer to **Chapter 4.1 Create a backup set with filter** in the [Ahsay Online Backup Manager v8 Backup Source File Filter Guide](#).

### Option 3: Advanced Backup Source


The Advanced Backup Source is another way to select a backup source which does not require Windows User Authentication login password even if the backup schedule is enabled unless the advanced backup source is located on a network drive.



The following table shows the list of options in the Advanced Backup Source which require and does not require Windows User Authentication login password:

Advanced Backup Source		Description
Local Disk		Does not require Windows User Authentication login password.
Network drive		Requires Windows User Authentication login password. For network drive/s, you will need to enter the login credentials which has permission to access network resources in order to back up selected files and/or folders.
Libraries		<p>Does not require Windows User Authentication login password.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This type of backup source may not be supported on other versions of Windows.</p> <p><b>This feature is not supported on:</b></p> <p>Windows 10</p> <p>Windows 8.1</p>



		<p>Windows 8 and</p> <p>Windows Server 2012 R2</p> <p><b>Supported on:</b></p> <p>Windows 7</p> <p>Windows Server 2016 and</p> <p>Windows Server 2008 R2</p>
<b>Add network address</b>		<p>Requires Windows User Authentication login password. For network drive/s, you will need to enter the login credentials which has permission to access network resources in order to back up selected files and/or folders.</p>

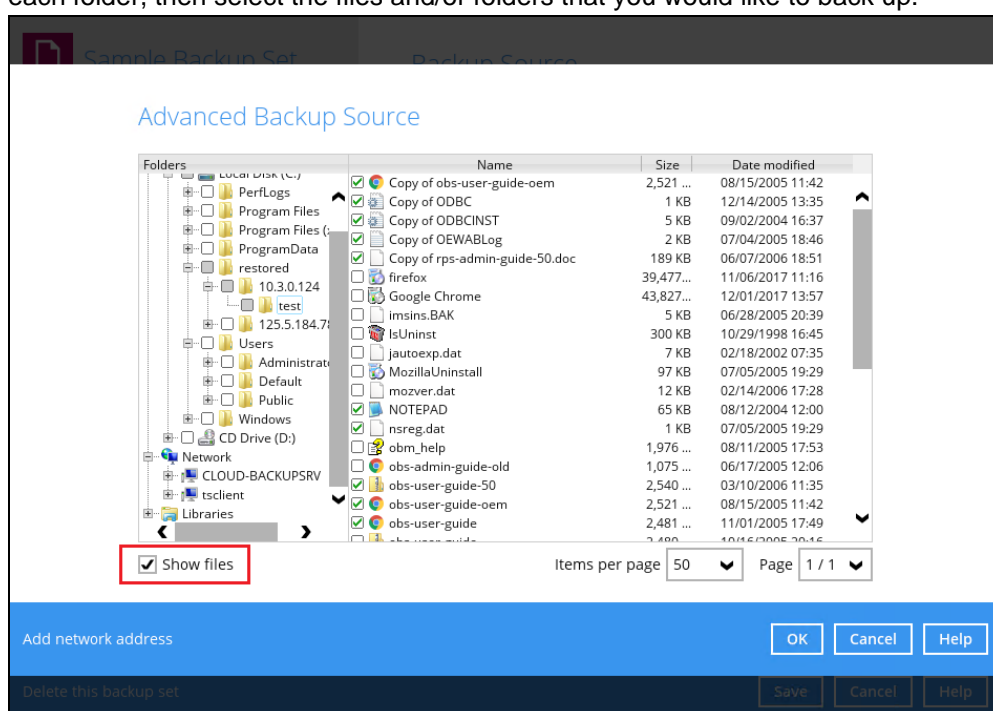
To select files and/or folders using the Advanced Backup Source, follow the steps below:

1. In the Source window, select 'I would like to choose the files to backup'.

I would like to choose the files to backup

2. There are two (2) ways to select files and/or folders, one is when the files and/or folders are located in the local machine and another way is when the files and/or folders are located in the network.

- In the Advanced Backup Source window, select 'Show files' to display the files inside each folder, then select the files and/or folders that you would like to back up.



- ❶ If the files and/or folders are located in a network drive, click the 'Add network address' link. Enter the network address.

### Network Address

Input the details of network address, and click [OK] to proceed.

Network address (e.g. \\servername.domain\path)

  
☐ This share requires access credentials

If access credentials are required to access the network, then check the "This share requires access credentials" checkbox. The checkbox will only be enabled once the network address is entered. Enter the User name and Password of the network drive and click the [OK] button.

☒ This share requires access credentials

User name (e.g. domain\username)

Password

By default all the files inside the folder in the network drive is selected for backup. But there is still an option to deselect files that you do not want to be included in the backup.

### Advanced Backup Source

Folders	Name	Size	Date modified
✓ This PC	✓ AhsayACB_UserGuideforWindows_versi...	15 KB	07/10/2018 17:24
✓ Local Disk (C:)	✓ AhsayCBS_version7_UserGuide	15 KB	07/10/2018 17:24
✓ CD Drive (D:)	✓ AhsayCloudFileBackupSolution_v10.pptx	39 KB	03/18/2019 15:06
✓ Network	✓ AhsayCloudFileBackupSolution_v7.pptx	39 KB	03/18/2019 15:06
✓ Libraries	✓ AhsayCloudFileBackupSolution_v8.pptx	39 KB	03/18/2019 15:06
✓ \\125.5.184.23\Share	✓ AhsayCloudFileBackupSolution_v9.pptx	39 KB	03/18/2019 15:06
✓ \\125.5.184.23\testfiles	✓ AhsayOBM_version7_QuickStartGuide	15 KB	07/10/2018 17:24
	✓ AlertMessageFive	3 KB	02/28/2019 12:10
	✓ AlertMessageFour	3 KB	02/28/2019 12:10
	✓ AlertMessageOne	3 KB	02/28/2019 12:10
	✓ AlertMessageThree	3 KB	02/28/2019 12:10
	✓ AlertMessageTwo	3 KB	02/28/2019 12:10
	✓ BackupSet_2015	15 KB	07/10/2018 17:24
	✓ BackupSet_2016	15 KB	07/10/2018 17:24
	✓ BackupSet_2017	15 KB	07/10/2018 17:24
	✓ BackupSet_2018	15 KB	07/10/2018 17:24
	✓ BackupSet_2019	15 KB	07/10/2018 17:24
	✓ BackupSolution	8 KB	12/17/2018 14:27
	✓ File snapshot testing	8 KB	12/17/2018 14:27
	✓ File snapshot testing1	8 KB	01/15/2019 10:12
	✓ File snapshot testing2	8 KB	01/15/2019 10:12
	✓ File snapshot testing3	8 KB	01/15/2019 10:12

☒ Show files      Items per page 50      Page 1 / 1

Add network address

Delete this backup set

OK Cancel Help

Save Cancel Help

#### NOTE

- There must be a specific folder that is shared in the network drive that will be entered in the network address e.g. \\125.5.184.23\Share
- Temporary folders location are not supported for individual login credentials but can still be setup separately using existing Windows User Authentication login.

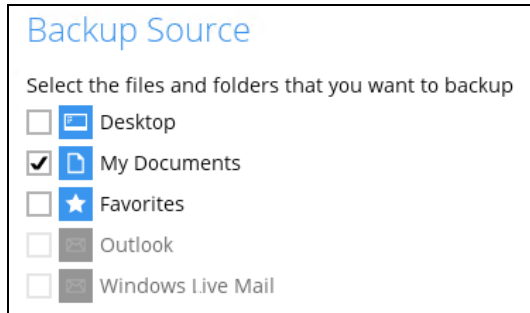
3. Click the [OK] button to save the selection, then click the [Save] button to store settings.

In selecting files and/or folders to back up, the three (3) options can be used simultaneously. For more details, please refer to the example scenarios below:

#### Scenario 1 (Quick or Shortcut + Filter)

You can use the quick or shortcut option and apply filter to the selected backup source at the same time. To use this type of combination, follow the steps below:

1. Choose a backup source.

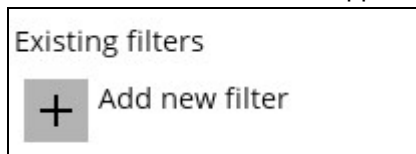


Backup Source

Select the files and folders that you want to backup

- ☐ Desktop
- ☒ My Documents
- ☐ Favorites
- ☐ Outlook
- ☐ Windows Live Mail

2. Create a filter which will be applied to the backup source.



Existing filters

+ Add new filter

New Backup Filter

Name  
Filter-1

For each of the matched files/folders under top directory



☒ Include them  
☐ Exclude them

☐ Exclude all unmatched files/folders

Match file/folder names by

☒ Simple comparison ends with ▼  
☐ Regular expression (UNIX-style)

Existing patterns to match

Add

Apply this filter to all files/folders in

☒ All hard disk drives  
☐ This folder only (Input local / network address or click [Change])

OK Cancel Help

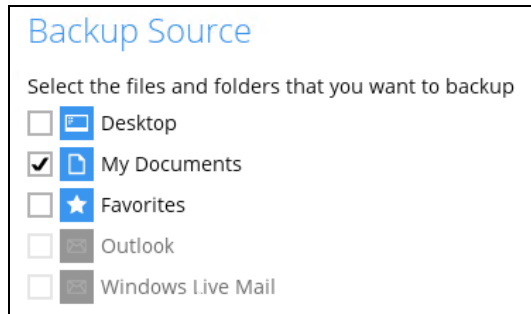
Delete this backup set Save Cancel Help

3. Click the [OK] button to save the created filter, then click the [Save] button to store settings.

## Scenario 2 (Quick or Shortcut + Advanced Backup Source)

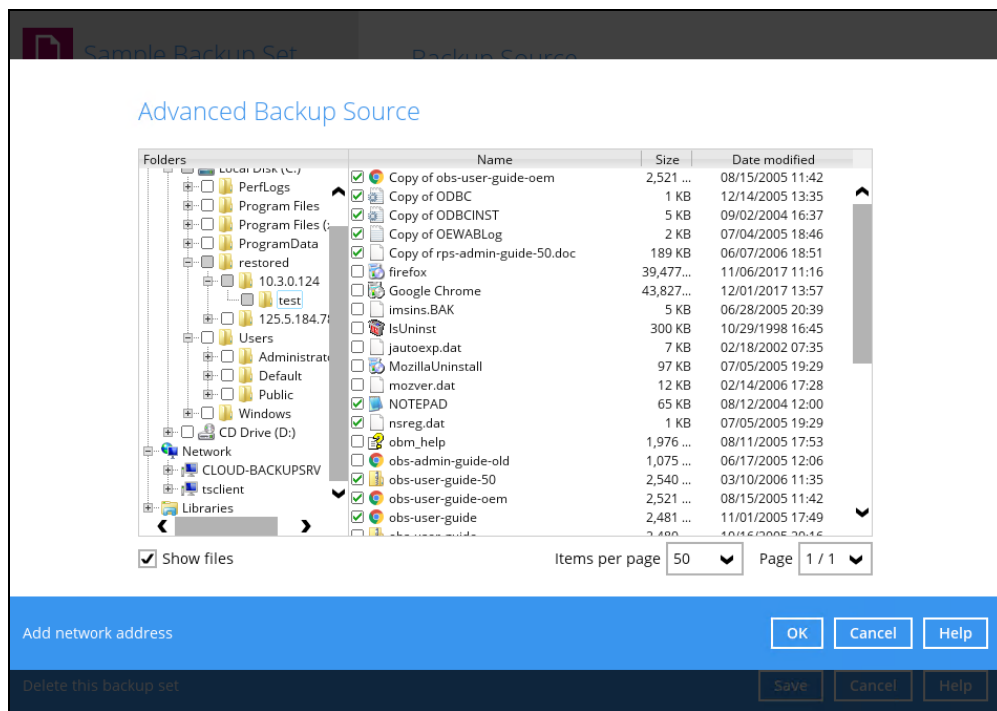
You can use the quick or shortcut option and select files and/or folders in the advanced backup source at the same time. To use this type of combination, follow the steps below:

1. Choose a backup source.



2. In the source window, click 'I would like to choose the files to backup' and select the files and/or folders that you would like to back up. Or click 'Add network address' to backup files and/or folders located in a network drive.

I would like to choose the files to backup

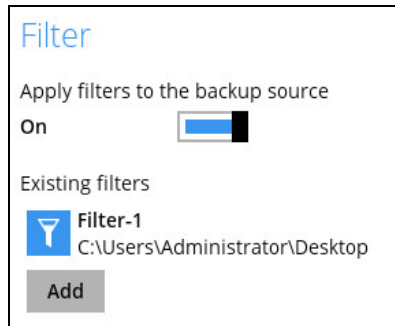


3. Click the [OK] button to save the selection, then click the [Save] button to save settings.

### Scenario 3 (Filter + Advanced Backup Source)

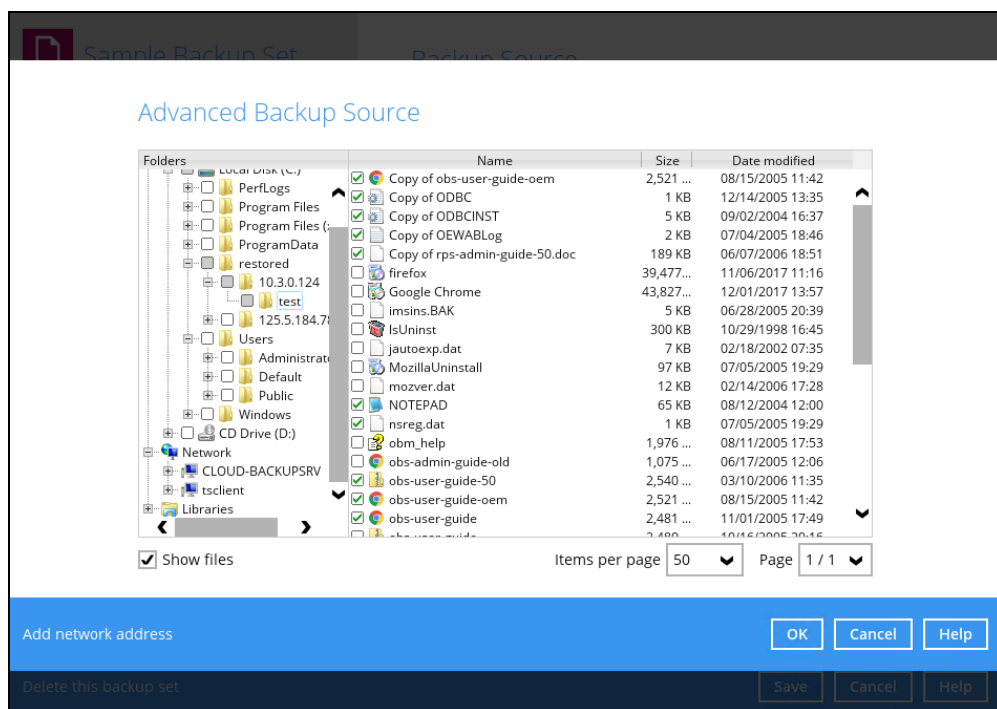
You can use the filter backup source and select files and/or folders in the advanced backup source source at the same time. To use this type of combination, follow the steps below:

1. Create a filter.



2. In the source window, click 'I would like to choose the files to backup' and select the files and/or folders that you would like to back up. Or click 'Add network address' to backup files and/or folders located in a network drive.

I would like to choose the files to backup



3. Click the [OK] button to save the selection, then click the [Save] button to store settings.

## Backup Schedule

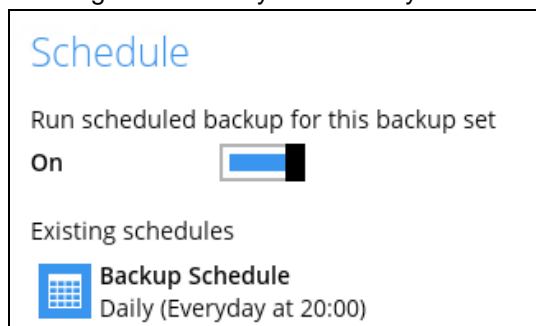
This feature allows the user to assign a backup schedule for the backup job to run automatically.

The screenshot shows the 'Backup Schedule' configuration window for a backup set named 'Daily Backup-1'. On the left, a sidebar contains links for 'General', 'Source', 'Backup Schedule' (which is highlighted), 'Continuous Backup', and 'Destination'. Below 'Destination' is a link for 'Show advanced settings'. The main area is titled 'Schedule' and contains a toggle switch for 'Run scheduled backup for this backup set' which is currently 'On'. Below this, under 'Existing schedules', there is a table with one entry: 'Backup Schedule' with a description 'Päivittäin (Jokapäiväinen varten 20:00)'. An 'Add' button is located below the table. At the bottom of the window, there is a blue bar with the text 'Delete this backup set' on the left and 'Save', 'Cancel', and 'Help' buttons on the right.

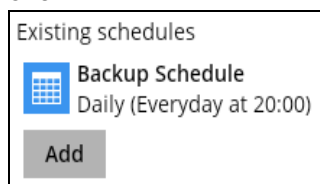
The screenshot shows the 'Backup Schedule' configuration window with detailed settings. The title is 'Backup Schedule'. The 'Name' field contains 'Backup Schedule'. The 'Type' is set to 'Daily'. The 'Start backup' is configured as 'at 20:00'. The 'Stop' condition is set to 'until full backup completed'. There is a checked checkbox for 'Run Retention Policy after backup'. At the bottom, there is a blue bar with 'Delete this backup schedule' on the left and 'OK', 'Cancel', and 'Help' buttons on the right. Below this bar, there is a dark blue bar with 'Delete this backup set' on the left and 'Save', 'Cancel', and 'Help' buttons on the right.

To configure a backup schedule, follow the steps below:

1. Swipe the lever to the right to turn on the backup schedule setting. The backup schedule is configured as “Daily at 20:00” by default.



2. Select an existing backup schedule to modify or click the [Add] button to create a new one.



3. In the New Backup Schedule window, configure the following backup schedule settings.

- **Name** – the name of the backup schedule.
- **Type** – the type of backup schedule. There are four (4) different types of backup schedule: Daily, Weekly, Monthly and Custom.



- **Daily** – the time of the day or interval in minutes/hours when the backup job will run.

**New Backup Schedule**

Name  
Daily-1

Type  
Daily

Start backup  
at 15 : 41

Stop  
until full backup completed

☒ Run Retention Policy after backup

- **Weekly** – the day of the week and the time of the day or interval in minutes/hours when the backup job will run.

**New Backup Schedule**

Name  
Weekly-1

Type  
Weekly

Backup on these days of the week  
☐ Sun ☐ Mon ☐ Tue ☐ Wed ☐ Thu ☐ Fri ☒ Sat

Start backup  
at 23 : 00

Stop  
until full backup completed

☒ Run Retention Policy after backup

- **Monthly** – the day of the month and the time of that day which the backup job will run.

**New Backup Schedule**

Name  
Monthly-1

Type  
Monthly

Backup on the following day every month  
☒ Day Last  
☐ First Sunday

Start backup at  
23 : 59 on the selected days

Stop  
until full backup completed

☒ Run Retention Policy after backup

- **Custom** – a specific date and the time of that date when the backup job will run.

**New Backup Schedule**

Name  
Custom-1

Type  
Custom

Backup on the following day once  
2019 December 31

Start backup at  
23 : 59

Stop  
until full backup completed

☒ Run Retention Policy after backup

- **Start backup** – the start time of the backup job.

- **at** – this option will start a backup job at a specific time.
- **every** – this option will start a backup job in intervals of minutes or hours.

Start backup  
every 1 minute

Stop  
until full backup completed

☐ Run Retention Policy after backup

Start backup  
every 1 minute

Stop  
until full backup completed

☐ Run Retention Policy after backup

Here is an example of a backup set that has a periodic and normal backup schedule.

**New Backup Schedule**

Name  
Weekly-1

Type  
Weekly

Backup on these days of the week  
☐ Sun ☒ Mon ☒ Tue ☒ Wed ☒ Thu ☒ Fri ☐ Sat

Start backup  
every 4 hours

Stop  
until full backup completed

☒ Run Retention Policy after backup

**Figure 1.1**

**New Backup Schedule**

Name  
Weekly-2

Type  
Weekly

Backup on these days of the week  
☒ Sun ☐ Mon ☐ Tue ☐ Wed ☐ Thu ☐ Fri ☒ Sat

Start backup  
at 21 : 00

Stop  
until full backup completed

☒ Run Retention Policy after backup

**Figure 1.2**

**Figure 1.1** – Periodic backup schedule runs every 4 hours from Monday – Friday during business hours

**Figure 1.2** – Normal backup schedule runs at 21:00 or 9:00 PM on Saturday and Sunday on weekend non-business hours

- ❶ **Stop** – the stop time of the backup job. This only applies to schedules with start backup “at” and is not supported for periodic backup schedule (start backup “every”)
  - ⦿ **until full backup completed** – this option will stop a backup job once it is complete. This is the configured stop time of the backup job by default.
  - ⦿ **after (defined no. of hrs.)** – this option will stop a backup job after a certain number of hours regardless of whether the backup job has completed or not. This can range from 1 to 24 hrs.

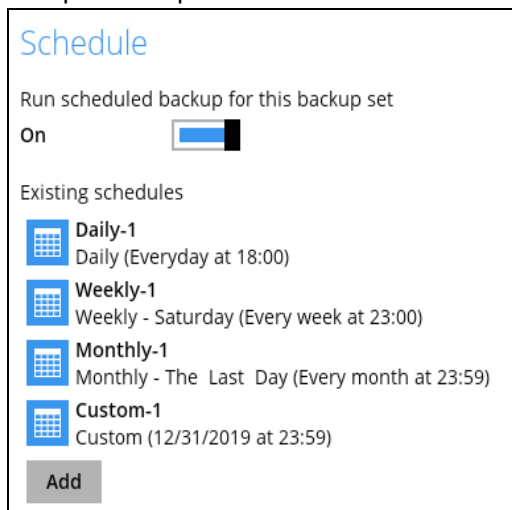
The number of hours must be enough to complete a backup of all files in the backup set. For small files in a backup, if the number of hours is not enough to back up all files, then the outstanding files will be backed up in the next backup job. However, if the backup set contains large files, this may result in partially backed up files.

For example, if a backup has 100GB file size which will take approximately 15 hours to complete on your environment, but you set the “stop” after 10 hours, the file will be partially backed up and cannot be restored. The next backup will upload the files from scratch again.

The partially backed up data will have to be removed by running the [Data Integrity Check](#).

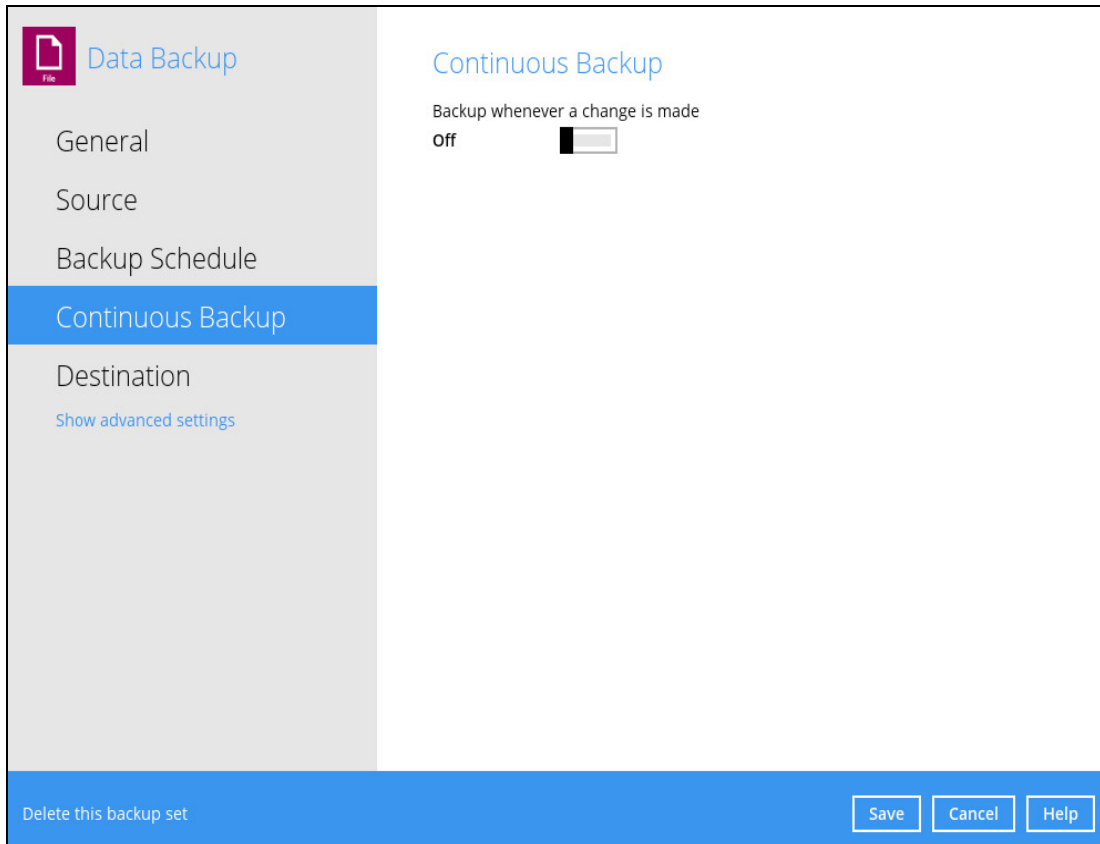
As a general rule, it is recommended to review this setting regularly as the data size on the backup machine may grow over time.

- ❷ **Run Retention Policy after backup** – if enabled, the AhsayOBM will run a retention policy job to remove files from the backup destination(s) which have exceeded the retention policy after performing a backup job.
4. Click the [OK] button to save the configured backup schedule settings.
  5. Click the [Save] button to save settings.
  6. Multiple backup schedules can be created.



## Continuous Backup

This feature provides backup for selective data whenever a change is made. This feature is disabled by default.

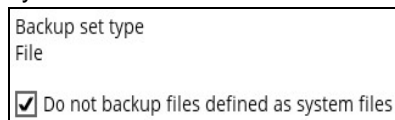


To enable the continuous backup, follow the steps below:

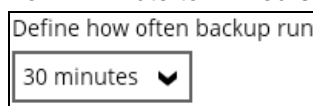
1. Swipe the lever to the right to turn on the continuous backup setting.



2. It is recommended to select this option to avoid backing up files that are marked as system files.



3. Define how often the continuous backup job will run. The backup time interval can be set from 1 minute to 12 hours.



- This applies the continuous backup on small regular update files. The file size can range from 25MB to unlimited MB.

Only apply to files smaller than

MB


**NOTE**

For large file size, the continuous backup may not run with a short time interval. You may need to adjust the continuous backup time interval (in step 3).

- This allows the user to create an exclude filter to exclude files and/or folders from the backup job. Click the [Add] button to create an exclude filter.

Exclude Filter

Existing Exclude Filters

 Add new exclude filter

- If an exclude filter is created, click the [OK] button to save the created exclude filter, then click the [Save] button to save the configured continuous backup settings.

**NOTE**

Only File backup sets on Windows operating system will support Continuous Backup Schedule on v8.3.4.0 (or above)

All v7 and pre-v8.3.4.0 Windows non-File backup sets with Continuous Backup Schedules will be automatically converted to periodic backup schedules after upgrading to v8.3.4.0 (or above)

## Destination

This feature allows the user to select a backup mode and add an additional storage destination.

The screenshot shows the 'Data Backup' application window with the 'Destination' tab selected. On the left is a sidebar with options: General, Source, Backup Schedule, Continuous Backup, and Destination (highlighted). Below the sidebar is a 'Show advanced settings' link. The main area is titled 'Destination' and contains a 'Backup mode' dropdown set to 'Sequential'. Below this is a section for 'Existing storage destinations' showing one entry: 'AhsayCBS' with host '127.0.0.1:443'. There is an 'Add' button and scroll arrows. At the bottom, there is a 'Delete this backup set' link and 'Save', 'Cancel', and 'Help' buttons.

There are two (2) different types of backup mode:

Backup mode	Description
<b>Sequential</b>	This is the configured backup mode by default. This backup mode will run a backup job to each backup destination one by one.
<b>Concurrent</b>	This backup mode will run a backup job to all backup destinations simultaneously.

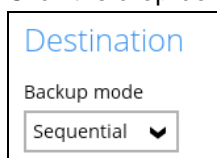
### Comparison between Sequential and Concurrent Backup mode

Backup mode	Pros	Cons
<b>Sequential</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>➤ Takes less resources in the local machine (e.g., memory, CPU, bandwidth, etc.) to complete a backup job.</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>➤ Backup job is slower than in concurrent mode since the backup job will upload the backup data to the selected backup destinations one at a time.</li></ul>

<p><b>Concurrent</b></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Backup job is faster than in Sequential mode.</li> <li>➤ Maximum number of concurrent backup destinations can be configured.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Requires more resources in the local machine (e.g. memory, CPU, bandwidth, etc.) to complete a backup job.</li> </ul>
--------------------------	--	--

To modify the backup mode, follow the steps below:

1. Go to Backup Sets, then choose a backup set.
2. Select the [Destination] tab in the backup set settings.
3. Click the drop-down button to select a backup mode.

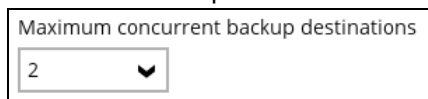


Destination

Backup mode

Sequential ▼

4. If "Concurrent" is selected, click the drop-down button to select the no. of maximum concurrent backup destination.



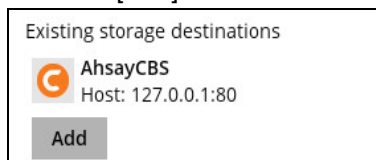
Maximum concurrent backup destinations

2 ▼

5. Click the [Save] button to save the selected backup mode.

To add a new storage destination, follow the steps below:

1. Click the [Add] button.

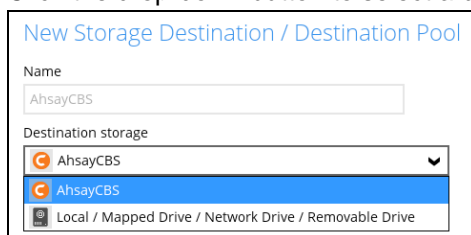


Existing storage destinations

AhsayCBS  
Host: 127.0.0.1:80

Add

2. Click the drop-down button to select a backup destination.



New Storage Destination / Destination Pool

Name  
AhsayCBS

Destination storage

AhsayCBS ▼

AhsayCBS

Local / Mapped Drive / Network Drive / Removable Drive

3. If the Local / Mapped Drive / Network Drive / Removable Drive is selected, click the [Change] button to select a new storage destination or input the local or network address. Check 'This share requires access credentials' if required then click the [Test] button to validate access to it.

Destination storage

Local / Mapped Drive / Network Drive / Removable Drive ▼

Path (Input local / network address or click [Change])

\\10.3.0.124\test Change

☒ This share requires access credentials

User name (e.g. domain\username)

admin

Password

••••••••

Test

4. If there is an added storage destination, click the [OK] button to save the added one. Then click the [Save] button to save the updated backup mode and the added storage destination.


**NOTE**

The error below will appear if 'This share requires access credentials' is not checked and access credentials are setup in the storage destination.

X [Exception] Access is denied due to invalid credentials

OK

Select **Show advanced settings** to modify the In-File Delta, Retention Policy, Command Line Tool, Reminder, Bandwidth Control, and other configurable items.

 **Data Backup**

General

Source

Backup Schedule

Continuous Backup

**Destination**


[Show advanced settings](#)

Destination

Backup mode

Sequential ▼

Existing storage destinations



**AhsayCBS**

Host: 127.0.0.1:443

Add

⌵ ⌶

Delete this backup set
Save Cancel Help



## In-File Delta

In-file delta technology is an advanced data block matching algorithm which is capable to pick up the changes (delta) of file content between two files.

**Backup Set Sample**

- General
- Source
- Backup Schedule
- Continuous Backup
- Destination
- In-File Delta**
- Retention Policy
- Command Line Tool
- Reminder
- Bandwidth Control
- Others

### In-File Delta

Enable In-File Delta incremental / differential backup  
**On**

Default type  
Incremental

[Show advanced settings](#)

Delete this backup set

Save Cancel Help

There are two (2) default types of In-File Delta:

In-File Delta Type	Description
<b>Differential</b>	The delta is generated by comparing with the last uploaded full file only. Delta generated with this method will grow daily and uses more bandwidth.
<b>Incremental</b>	This is the configured In-file delta by default. The delta is generated by comparing with the last uploaded full of delta file. Delta generated with this method is smaller and uses the least bandwidth.

### Comparison between Incremental and Differential In-File Delta

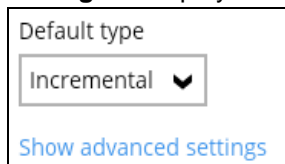
In-File Delta Type	Pros	Cons
<b>Differential</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Backup speed is faster than Full backup.</li> <li>➤ Restoration is faster than data backup with Incremental In-File Delta.</li> </ul> <p>Less storage space is need than a Full backup.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Backup process is slower than Incremental In-File Delta backup.</li> <li>➤ Restoration is slower than data backup with Full backup.</li> </ul>
<b>Incremental</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Backup process is fastest among all three (3) types; Full, Differential, and Incremental</li> <li>➤ Least storage space is required.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Restoration is slowest among all three (3) types; Full, Differential, and Incremental.</li> <li>➤ For restoration, the full file and all deltas that does not chain up to the required point-in-time may result to broken delta chain.</li> </ul>

To configure the In-File Delta settings, follow the steps below:

1. Swipe the lever to the right to enable the In-File Delta.



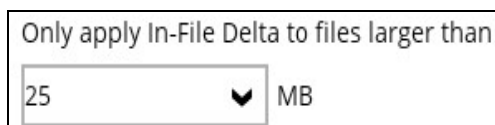
2. Click the drop-down button to choose an In-File Delta type, then click **Show advanced settings** to display all configurable items.



3. Click the drop-down button to specify the In-File Delta block size. This is configured as "Auto" by default.



4. Click the drop-down button to select how much of the file size (MB) the In-File Delta logic will apply to. By default, the In-File Delta logic is configured to apply to files larger than 25 MB.



5. A full file will be uploaded when either of these conditions is met. This setting can also be configured.

Upload full file when either of these conditions is met

☒ Number of deltas is over 100

☒ Delta ratio (delta file size / full file size) is over 50

☒ Failed to generate delta file

- This allows the user to configure a different In-File Delta setting to override the default In-File Delta.

- **Weekly variations** – for example, you set Sunday to perform a full backup, for the rest of the week, a backup based on the default In-File Delta will be run.

Weekly variations for overriding default type

☐ Sunday Full

☐ Thursday Full

☐ Monday Full

☐ Friday Full

☐ Tuesday Full

☐ Saturday Full

☐ Wednesday Full

- **Yearly variations** – for example, you set a particular day in January to perform a full backup, for the rest of the year, a backup based on the default In-File Delta will be run.

Yearly variations for overriding default type and weekly variations

☐ January Full

☐ July Full

☐ February Full

☐ August Full

☐ March Full

☐ September Full

☐ April Full

☐ October Full

☐ May Full

☐ November Full

☐ June Full

☐ December Full

This allows the user to specify which day of the selected months in yearly variations the backup job will be run. (e.g., First of January, March, May...)

Day of the selected months in yearly variations

☒ Day 1

☐ First

☐ Friday

6. Click the [Save] button to save the modified In-File Delta settings.

## Retention Policy

When the AhsayOBM identifies files and/or folders that are deleted, updated, or with updated permission/attributes during a backup job, these files and/or folders will then be moved from the data area to the Retention area.

**Retention area** is a place used as a temporary destination to store these files (deleted, updated, or with updated permission/attributes during a backup job). Files and/or folders in the retention area can still be restored.

The **Retention Policy** is used to control how long these files remain in the retention area when they are removed which can be specified in the number of days, weeks, months, or backup jobs. Retained data within all backup destinations (e.g., AhsayCBS, local drive, SFTP/FTP, and cloud storage) are cleared by the retention policy job.

The default Retention Policy setting for a File Backup Set is 7 days, but the appropriate Retention Policy setting depends on individual, contractual, or regulatory requirements.

The screenshot shows the 'Retention Policy' configuration window for a 'Backup Set Sample'. On the left is a sidebar menu with options: General, Source, Backup Schedule, Continuous Backup, Destination, In-File Delta, Retention Policy (highlighted), Command Line Tool, Reminder, Bandwidth Control, and Others. The main area is titled 'Retention Policy' and contains the text 'How to retain the files in the backup set, which have been deleted in the backup source'. Below this are two radio buttons: 'Simple' (selected) and 'Advanced'. Further down is the text 'Keep the deleted files for' followed by a text input field containing '7' and a dropdown menu set to 'Day(s)'. At the bottom of the window is a blue bar with the text 'Delete this backup set' on the left and three buttons: 'Save', 'Cancel', and 'Help' on the right.

### NOTE

There is a trade-off between the retention policy and backup destination storage usage. The higher the retention policy setting, the more storage is used, which translates into higher storage costs.

There are two (2) different types of Retention Policy:

Type	Description
<b>Simple</b>	A simple retention policy is a basic policy where the retained files (in the retention area) are removed automatically after the user specifies the number of days or backup jobs.
<b>Advanced</b>	An advanced retention policy defines a more advanced and flexible policy where the retained files (in the retention area) are removed automatically after a combination of user defined policy.

#### Comparison between Simple and Advanced Retention Policy

Control	Simple	Advanced
<b>Backup Jobs</b>	Can keep the deleted files within 1 to 365 backup job(s)	Not applicable
<b>Days</b>	Can keep the deleted files within 1 to 365 day(s)	Can keep the deleted files within 1 to 365 day(s)
<b>Type</b>	Not applicable	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Daily</li> <li>➤ Weekly</li> <li>➤ Monthly</li> <li>➤ Quarterly</li> <li>➤ Yearly</li> <li>➤ Custom</li> </ul>
<b>User-defined name</b>	Not applicable	Applicable

#### WARNING

When files and/or folders in the retention area exceed the Retention Policy setting, they are permanently removed from the backup set and cannot be restored

To configure a **Simple Retention Policy**, follow the steps below:

1. Go to Backup Sets, then select a backup set.
2. Click the [Retention Policy] tab in the Backup Set Settings.
3. Select [Simple] from the options, then click the drop-down button to define the number of day(s) or job(s) which the deleted files will be retained. This is configured as seven (7) days by default.

**Retention Policy**

How to retain the files in the backup set, which have been deleted in the backup source

☒ Simple  
☐ Advanced

Keep the deleted files for

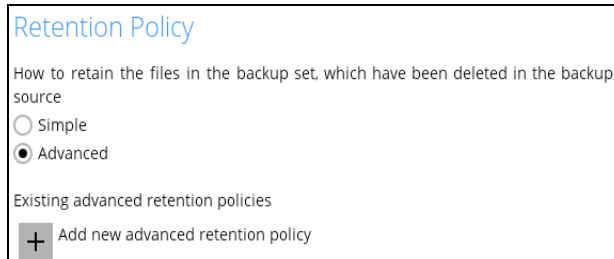
▼

Day(s) ▼

4. Click the [Save] button to save the configured retention policy settings.

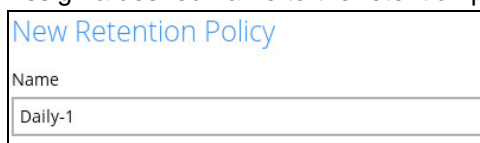
To configure an **Advanced Retention Policy**, follow the steps below:

1. Go to Backup Sets, then select a backup set.
2. Click the [Retention Policy] tab in the Backup Set Settings.
3. Select [Advanced] from the options, then click the [Add] button to create.



The screenshot shows a window titled "Retention Policy". Below the title is a subtitle: "How to retain the files in the backup set, which have been deleted in the backup source". There are two radio buttons: "Simple" and "Advanced". The "Advanced" radio button is selected. Below the radio buttons is the text "Existing advanced retention policies". At the bottom left is a button with a plus sign and the text "Add new advanced retention policy".

4. Assign a desired name to the retention policy.



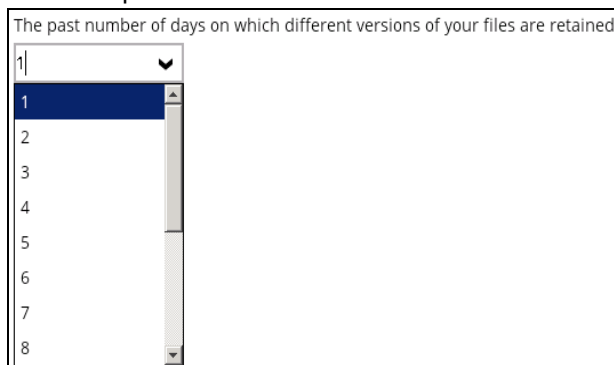
The screenshot shows a window titled "New Retention Policy". Below the title is a label "Name" and a text input field containing the text "Daily-1".

5. Click the drop-down button to display the retention type, then select one.



The screenshot shows a dropdown menu with the title "Type". The menu is open, showing a list of options: "Daily", "Weekly", "Monthly", "Quarterly", "Yearly", and "Custom". The "Daily" option is highlighted.

6. Click the drop-down button to specify the period on which the deleted files will be kept in the backup set.



The screenshot shows a dropdown menu with the title "The past number of days on which different versions of your files are retained". The menu is open, showing a list of numbers: "1", "2", "3", "4", "5", "6", "7", and "8". The "1" option is highlighted.

7. Click the [OK] button to save the configured advanced retention policy, then click [Save] to save the settings.

For further details about how to configure an advanced retention policy for each type (Daily, Weekly, Monthly, Quarterly, Yearly), refer to the examples below:

- **Example no. 1:** To keep the retention files for the last seven (7) days:

Name

Daily-1

Type

Daily

The past number of days on which different versions of your files are retained

7

- **Example no. 2:** To keep the retention files for the last four (4) Saturdays:

Name

Weekly-1

Type

Weekly

The days within a week on which different versions of your files are retained

☐ Sun ☐ Mon ☐ Tue ☐ Wed ☐ Thu ☐ Fri ☒ Sat

The number of weeks to repeat the above selection

4

- **Example no. 3:** To keep the retention files for the 1<sup>st</sup> day of each month for the last three (3) months:

Name

Monthly-1

Type

Monthly

The day within a month on which different versions of your files are retained

☒ Day 1 ☐ First ☐ Sunday

The number of months to repeat the above selection

3

- **Example no. 4:** To keep the retention files for the 1<sup>st</sup> day of each quarter for the last four (4) quarters:

Name

Quarterly-1

Type

Quarterly

The day within a quarter on which different versions of your files are retained

☒ Day 1 ☐ First ☐ Sunday

Months of quarter

January, April, July, October

The number of quarters to repeat the above selection

4

- **Example no. 5:** To keep the retention files for the 1<sup>st</sup> day of each year for the last seven (7) years:

Name
<input type="text" value="Yearly-1"/>
Type
<input checked="" type="radio"/> Yearly <input type="button" value="v"/>
The day within a year on which different versions of your files are retained
<input checked="" type="radio"/> January <input type="button" value="v"/>
<input checked="" type="radio"/> Day <input type="text" value="1"/> <input type="button" value="v"/>
<input type="radio"/> First <input type="button" value="v"/> Sunday <input type="button" value="v"/>
<input type="radio"/> Sunday <input type="button" value="v"/> of Week 1 <input type="button" value="v"/>
The number of years to repeat the above selection
<input type="text" value="7"/> <input type="button" value="v"/>

**NOTE**

Multiple advanced retention policy can be created.



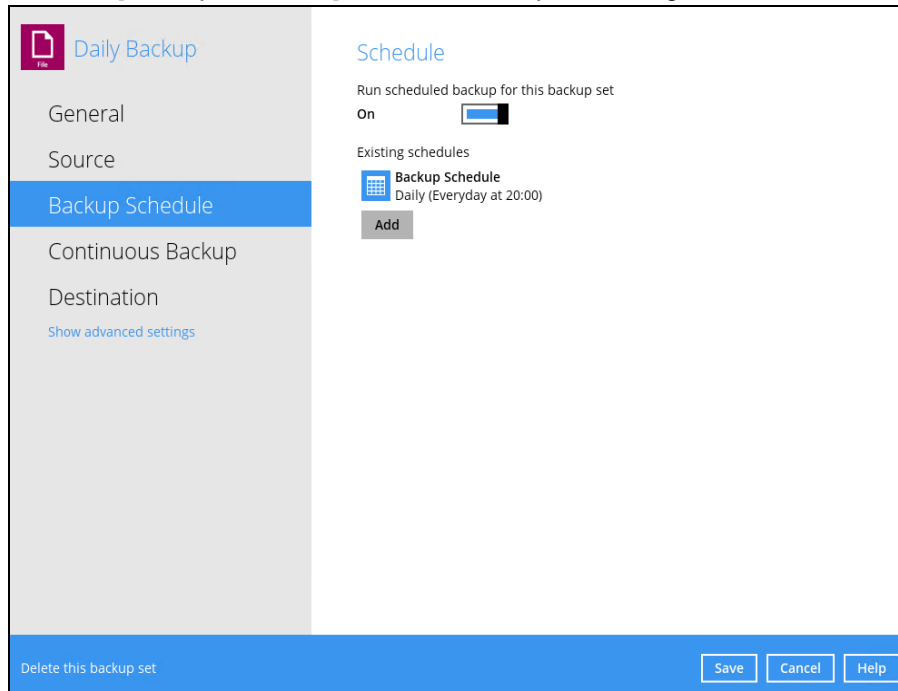
There are three (3) ways to run the Retention Policy:

- Backup Scheduler
- Manual Backup
- Space Freeing Up

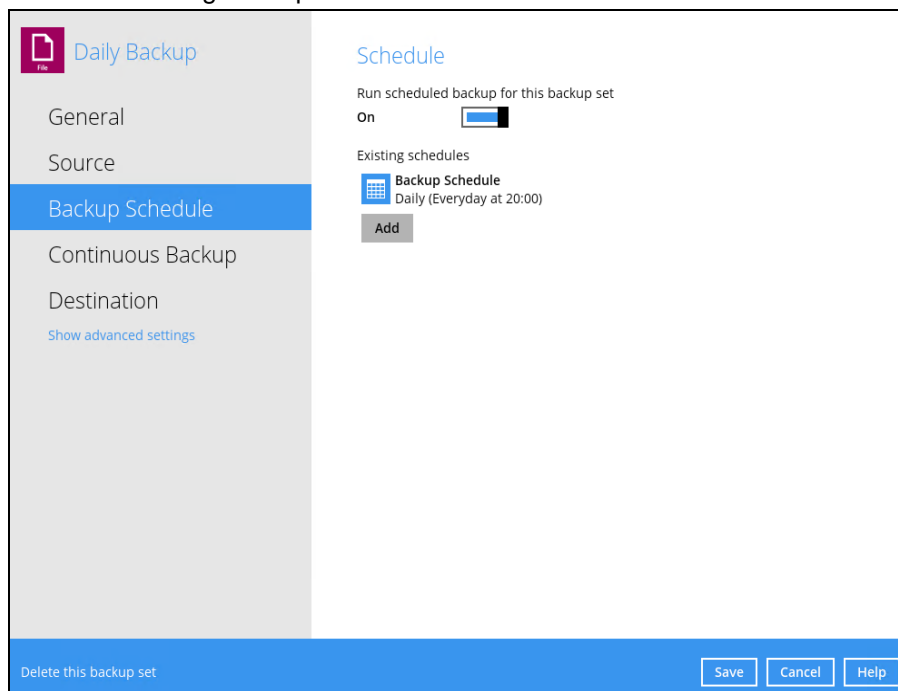
### Backup Scheduler (Recommended)

To run a retention policy job after a scheduled backup job, follow the steps below:

1. Click the [Backup Schedule] tab in the backup set settings.



2. Select an existing backup schedule or add a new one.



3. In the Backup Schedule window, select 'Run Retention Policy after backup' to run a retention policy job after a scheduled backup job.

The screenshot shows a 'Backup Schedule' window with a dark header bar containing 'Daily Backup' and 'Schedule' tabs. The main area is titled 'Backup Schedule' and contains the following fields:

- Name:** A text box containing 'Backup Schedule'.
- Type:** A dropdown menu with 'Daily' selected.
- Start backup at:** Time selection fields showing '20' for hours and '00' for minutes.
- Stop:** A dropdown menu with 'until full backup completed' selected.
- Run Retention Policy after backup:** A checked checkbox.

At the bottom, there are two action bars. The top bar is blue and contains the text 'Delete this backup schedule' and buttons for 'OK', 'Cancel', and 'Help'. The bottom bar is dark blue and contains the text 'Delete this backup set' and buttons for 'Save', 'Cancel', and 'Help'.

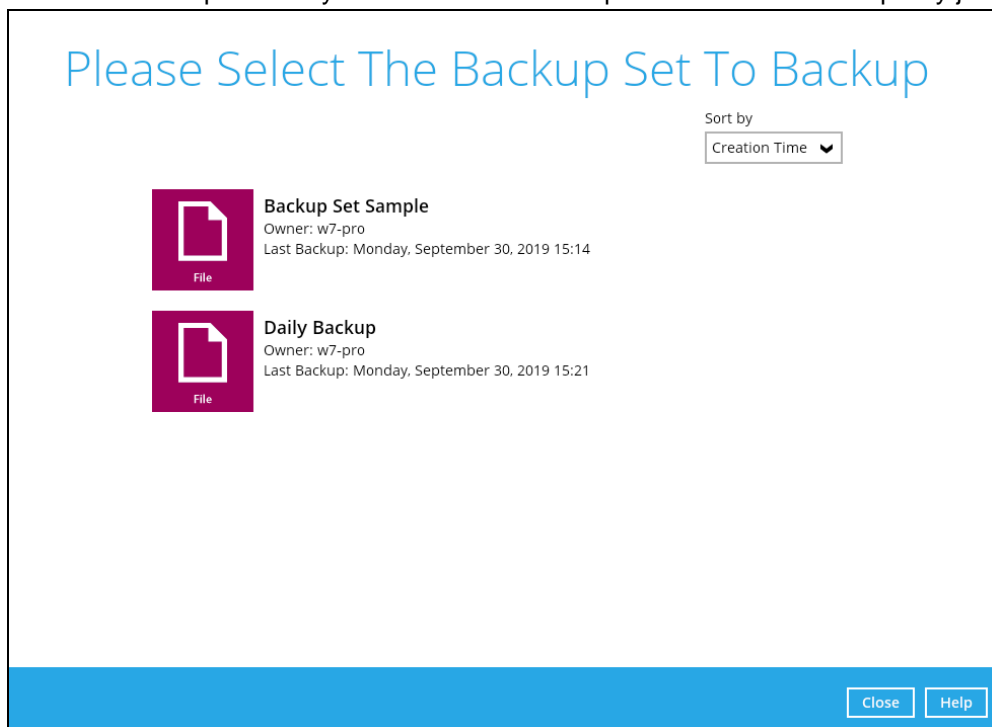
## Manual Backup

To run a retention policy job after a manual backup, follow the steps below:

1. Click the **Backup** icon in the AhsayOBM main interface.




2. Select the backup set that you would like to back up and run the retention policy job on.



3. Click **Show advanced option** to display other settings.

## Choose Your Backup Options

 Backup Set Sample

Backup set type  
File

[Show advanced option](#)

Previous


Backup

Cancel

Help

4. Select 'Run Retention Policy after backup' to run a retention policy job after a backup job.

## Choose Your Backup Options

 Backup Set Sample

Backup set type  
File


In-File Delta type

☐ Full

☐ Differential

☒ Incremental

Destinations

☒  AhsayCBS (Host: 10.90.30.22:80)

Retention Policy

☒ Run Retention Policy after backup

[Hide advanced option](#)

Previous

Backup

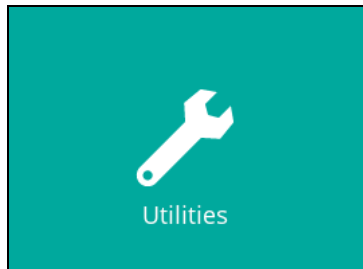
Cancel

Help

## Space Freeing Up

To run a retention policy job manually via backup client interface, follow the steps below:

1. Click the **Utilities** icon in the AhsayOBM interface.



2. Select the [Space Freeing Up] tab in the Utilities settings.

### Utilities

- Data Integrity Check
- Space Freeing Up**
- Delete Backup Data
- Decrypt Backup Data

#### Free Up Storage Space

To remove obsolete files from your backup destination according to your retention policy setting to free up your storage space, select backup set(s), destination(s) and then press Start.

Select a backup set

Backup Set Sample ▼

Select a destination

All ▼

Start

Close

Help

3. Select the corresponding backup set and destination (e.g. AhsayCBS, local drive, cloud storage) where you want the retention policy job to run on.

**Utilities**

- Data Integrity Check
- Space Freeing Up**
- Delete Backup Data
- Decrypt Backup Data

### Free Up Storage Space

To remove obsolete files from your backup destination according to your retention policy setting to free up your storage space, select backup set(s), destination(s) and then press Start.

Select a backup set

Daily Backup

Select a destination

All

AhsayCBS

Local-1 (C:\Users\Administrator\Documents\New folder)

GoogleDrive-1

Close Help

4. Click the [Start] button to run the retention policy job.

**Utilities**

- Data Integrity Check
- Space Freeing Up**
- Delete Backup Data
- Decrypt Backup Data

### Free Up Storage Space

To remove obsolete files from your backup destination according to your retention policy setting to free up your storage space, select backup set(s), destination(s) and then press Start.

Select a backup set

Daily Backup

Select a destination

AhsayCBS

Start

Close Help

#### NOTE

For more details about Space Freeing Up, please refer to [Space Freeing Up](#) in **Chapter 7 AhsayOBM Overview**.

## Command Line Tool

This feature allows the user to configure a pre-backup or post backup command which can be: an operating system level command, a script or batch file, or third-party utilities to run before and/or after a backup job.

e.g., Connecting to a network drive and disconnecting a network drive, stopping a third-party database (not officially supported by Ahsay) to perform a cold backup, and restarting a third-party database after a backup.

The screenshot shows the 'Backup Set Sample' configuration window in AhsayOBM. The left sidebar contains a list of settings: General, Source, Backup Schedule, Continuous Backup, Destination, In-File Delta, Retention Policy, **Command Line Tool** (highlighted), Reminder, Bandwidth Control, and Others. Below 'Others' is a link for 'Hide advanced settings'. The main area is divided into two sections: 'Pre-Backup Command Line Tool' and 'Post-Backup Command Line Tool'. Each section has a label 'Existing custom commands to run before/after backup' and a '+ Add new pre/post-backup command line tool' button. At the bottom, there is a 'Delete this backup set' link and 'Save', 'Cancel', and 'Help' buttons.

## Requirements and Best Practices

### Error and Exception Handling

Each pre-backup command or batch file should have an error and exception handling. If a pre-backup command contains an error, although an unhandled error may not hinder the backup job process, and the backup job is successful, it will result to a status indicating completed backup with warning(s). For more details about backup report status, please refer to [Backup Reports](#) in **Chapter 7 AhsayOBM Overview**.

### Command or Batch File Compatibility

Make sure that each command (pre-backup and post-backup) are tested thoroughly before including them to the backup job.

### Scheduled Backup

If the scheduled backup job is set to stop after x no. of hours, make sure that the duration of the running backup job will not be affected. You may need to adjust the number of hours in the backup schedule configuration. Please refer to [Backup Schedule](#) for more details.

## Pre-backup Command Limitation

A Windows reboot or shutdown must not be used in the pre-backup command. Otherwise, the machine will shut down immediately that will result to a status indicating “Backup not yet finished”, which can be viewed in the AhsayCBS User Web Console. Please refer to [AhsayCBS Backup Reports](#) for more details.

User Profile

Backup Set

Settings

Report

Statistics

Effective Policy





Backup

Restore

Backup Report for This User

View

Today

Backup Set	Destination	Start Time	End Time	Status
 Sample-2(1567584589206)	 AhsayCBS	04-Sep-2019 16:20	--	Backup not yet finished
 Daily Backup(1567576033951)	 AhsayCBS	04-Sep-2019 14:43	--	Backup not yet finished

## Post-backup Command Recommendation

It is recommended to include a timeout for a post-backup command to shut down the machine. The timeout must be adjusted until when the AhsayOBM sends the backup job status to the AhsayCBS.

In this example, the configured post-backup command is to shut down the machine that has a timeout set to ninety (90) seconds. The machine will shut down automatically after the specified time.

**Post-Backup Command Line Tool**

Name

Post-Backup-1

Working Directory

C:\

Change

Command

shutdown /s /t 90

This is to ensure that the AhsayOBM has enough time to complete the backup process in order to send the backup job status to the AhsayCBS before the machine shuts down. See screenshot below:

Show All		
Type	Log	Time
i	[New File]... 53% of "C:\Users\Administrator\Desktop\New folder\photo-1493246507139-91e8fad9978e.jpg"	09/05/2019 12:05:54
i	[New File]... 65% of "C:\Users\Administrator\Desktop\New folder\photo-1493246507139-91e8fad9978e.jpg"	09/05/2019 12:05:54
i	[New File]... 76% of "C:\Users\Administrator\Desktop\New folder\photo-1493246507139-91e8fad9978e.jpg"	09/05/2019 12:05:54
i	[New File]... 88% of "C:\Users\Administrator\Desktop\New folder\photo-1493246507139-91e8fad9978e.jpg"	09/05/2019 12:05:54
i	[New File]... 100% of "C:\Users\Administrator\Desktop\New folder\photo-1493246507139-91e8fad9978e.jpg"	09/05/2019 12:05:54
i	Total New Files = 35	09/05/2019 12:05:55
i	Total New Directories = 5	09/05/2019 12:05:55
i	Total New Links = 0	09/05/2019 12:05:55
i	Total Updated Files = 0	09/05/2019 12:05:55
i	Total Attributes Changed Files = 0	09/05/2019 12:05:55
i	Total Deleted Files = 0	09/05/2019 12:05:55
i	Total Deleted Directories = 0	09/05/2019 12:05:55
i	Total Deleted Links = 0	09/05/2019 12:05:55
i	Total Moved Files = 0	09/05/2019 12:05:55
i	Deleting Shadow Copy snapshot for volume "I:\Volume{d8b4117e-f9e7-11e6-9e11-806e6f6e6963}\"	09/05/2019 12:05:56
i	Deleting Shadow Copy snapshot for volume "C:\"	09/05/2019 12:05:56
i	Saving encrypted backup file index to 1567656180789/blocks at destination AhsayCBS...	09/05/2019 12:05:57
i	Saving encrypted backup file index to 1567656180789/blocks/2019-09-05-12-05-38 at destination AhsayCBS...	09/05/2019 12:05:57
i	Start running post-commands	09/05/2019 12:05:58
i	[Post-Backup-1] shutdown /s /t 90	09/05/2019 12:05:58
i	Finished running post-commands	09/05/2019 12:05:59
i	Deleting temporary file C:\Users\Administrator\temp\1567656180789\OBS@1567656260848	09/05/2019 12:05:59
i	Backup Completed Successfully	09/05/2019 12:05:59
Logs per page 50		
Page 2 / 2		
Close		



**NOTE**

For more details about detailed backup report, please refer to [Backup Reports](#) in **Chapter 7 AhsayOBM Overview**.

There are three (3) fields in the command line tool:

Field	Description
<b>Name</b>	The user-defined name of the pre-backup or post-backup command.
<b>Working Directory</b>	The location in the local machine which the pre-backup or post-backup command will run at, or the location of the command or created batch file.
<b>Command</b>	The <b>pre-backup</b> or <b>post-backup</b> command which can be defined as a native command or command to execute a batch file, command, or a VBScript (exclusively for Windows).

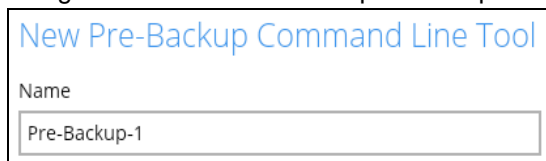
## Pre-backup Command

A pre-backup command is used to execute an action or process before the start of a backup job. To create a pre-backup command, follow the steps below:

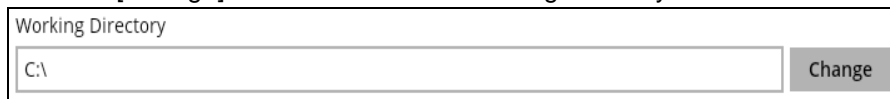
1. Click the [Add] button.



2. Assign a desired name to the pre-backup command.




3. Click the [Change] button to locate the working directory of the command.

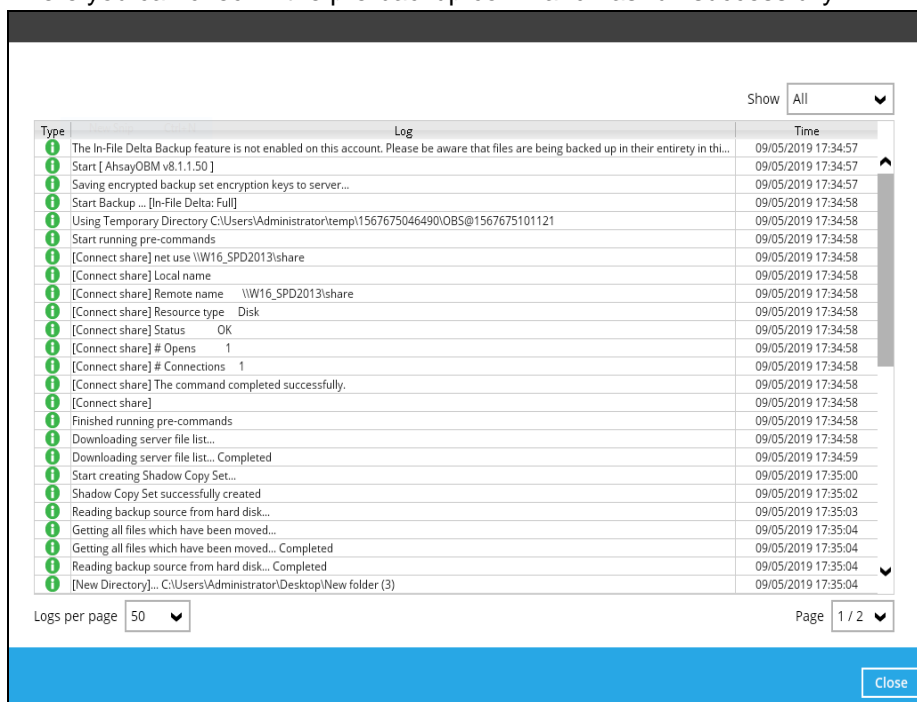


4. Input a command to be run before a backup job. In this example, the pre-backup command will connect to a network drive before the backup process.



5. Click the [OK] button to save the created pre-backup command, then click the [Save] button to save settings.

6. Once the backup job is complete, click the  button to display the backup report log where you can check if the pre-backup command has run successfully.



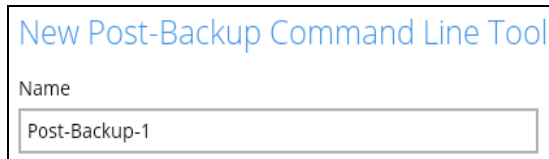
## Post-backup Command

A post-backup command is used to execute an action or process after a backup job. To create a post-backup command, follow the steps below:

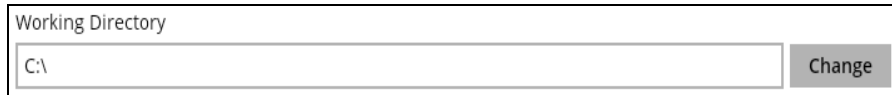
1. Click the [Add] button.



2. Assign a desired name to the post-backup command.




3. Click the [Change] button to locate the working directory of the command.




























4. Input a command to be run after a backup job. In this example, the post-backup command will disconnect a network drive after the backup process.



5. Click the [OK] button to save the created post-backup command, then click the [Save] button to save the settings.

6. Once the backup job is complete, click the  button to display the backup report log where you can check if the post-backup command has run successfully.

Type	Log	Time
	Total New Files = 20	09/05/2019 17:44:13
	Total New Directories = 5	09/05/2019 17:44:13
	Total New Links = 0	09/05/2019 17:44:13
	Total Updated Files = 0	09/05/2019 17:44:13
	Total Attributes Changed Files = 0	09/05/2019 17:44:13
	Total Deleted Files = 0	09/05/2019 17:44:13
	Total Deleted Directories = 0	09/05/2019 17:44:13
	Total Deleted Links = 0	09/05/2019 17:44:13
	Total Moved Files = 0	09/05/2019 17:44:13
	Deleting Shadow Copy snapshot for volume "I:\?Volume{d8b4117e-f9e7-11e6-9e11-806e6f6e6963}\"	09/05/2019 17:44:13
	Deleting Shadow Copy snapshot for volume "C:\"	09/05/2019 17:44:13
	Saving encrypted backup file index to 1567676544679/blocks at destination AhsayCBS...	09/05/2019 17:44:14
	Saving encrypted backup file index to 1567676544679/blocks/2019-09-05-17-43-58 at destination AhsayCBS...	09/05/2019 17:44:14
	Start running post-commands	09/05/2019 17:44:15
	[Post-Backup-1] net use * /delete /yes	09/05/2019 17:44:15
	[Post-Backup-1] You have these remote connections:	09/05/2019 17:44:15
	[Post-Backup-1]	09/05/2019 17:44:15
	[Post-Backup-1] \\W16_SPD2013\share	09/05/2019 17:44:15
	[Post-Backup-1] Continuing will cancel the connections.	09/05/2019 17:44:15
	[Post-Backup-1]	09/05/2019 17:44:15
	[Post-Backup-1] The command completed successfully.	09/05/2019 17:44:15
	[Post-Backup-1]	09/05/2019 17:44:15
	Finished running post-commands	09/05/2019 17:44:15
	Deleting temporary file C:\Users\Administrator\temp\1567676544679\OBS@1567676569092	09/05/2019 17:44:15
	Backup Completed Successfully	09/05/2019 17:44:15

Logs per page 50 Page 3 / 3

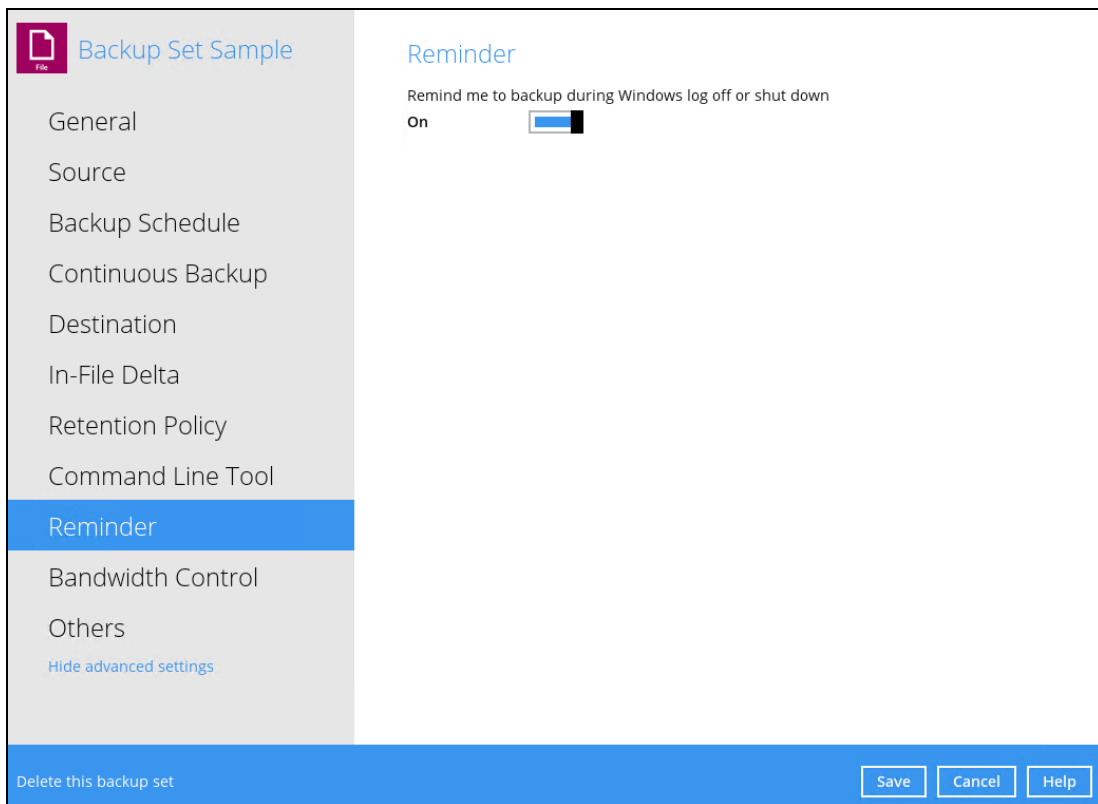
Close

#### NOTE

Multiple commands (pre-backup and post-backup) can be created in the Command Line Tool

## Reminder

This feature is enabled by default. When enabled, a backup confirmation dialog box will prompt the user to run a backup job during Windows log off, restart or shut down.



To enable the Reminder setting, follow the steps below:

1. Go to Backup Sets, then select a backup set.
2. Choose the [Reminder] tab in the backup set settings.
3. Swipe the lever to the right to turn on the reminder.
4. Click the [Save] button to save settings.

### NOTES

1. This feature is not supported on Windows 10, Windows Server 2016, and Windows Server 2019.
2. The dialog box will only appear if there is a backup set with enabled Reminder setting.
3. The dialog box will only be displayed for four (4) seconds.
4. If there are multiple backup sets displayed, you cannot select one (1) backup set to back up. It is recommended to only enable the Reminder setting for the backup sets you regularly back up.

For more detailed examples of the reminder feature, please refer to [Appendix D: Example Scenarios for the Reminder](#).

## Bandwidth Control

This option allows the user to limit the amount of bandwidth used by backup traffic between specified times. This feature is configured as disabled by default.

The screenshot shows the Ahsay Backup software interface. On the left is a sidebar with a list of settings: General, Source, Backup Schedule, Continuous Backup, Destination, In-File Delta, Retention Policy, Command Line Tool, Reminder, Bandwidth Control (highlighted in blue), and Others. Below 'Others' is a link that says 'Hide advanced settings'. The main area on the right is titled 'Bandwidth Control' and contains the text 'Limit the transfer rate when performing backup and restore tasks'. Below this text is a toggle switch labeled 'Off'. At the bottom of the window is a blue bar with the text 'Delete this backup set' on the left and three buttons labeled 'Save', 'Cancel', and 'Help' on the right.

There are two (2) different modes in assigning a bandwidth control:

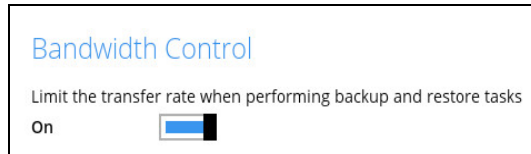
Bandwidth Control Type	Description
<b>Independent</b>	Each backup and restore has its assigned bandwidth.
<b>Share</b>	All backup and restore operations are sharing the same assigned bandwidth.

### NOTE

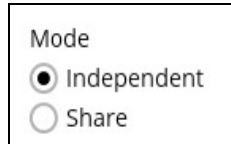
Share mode does not support performing backup job on multiple destinations concurrently.

To enable the bandwidth control setting, follow the steps below:

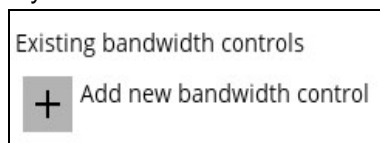
1. Swipe the lever to the right to turn on the bandwidth control.



2. Select a bandwidth control mode.



3. If you want to add a modified bandwidth control, click the [Add] button.



4. Complete the following fields:

- Name
- Type
- Maximum transfer rate

Field	Description
<b>Name</b>	The name of the bandwidth control set.
<b>Type</b>	The type of enforced bandwidth control period.
<b>Maximum Transfer rate</b>	The maximum bandwidth used.

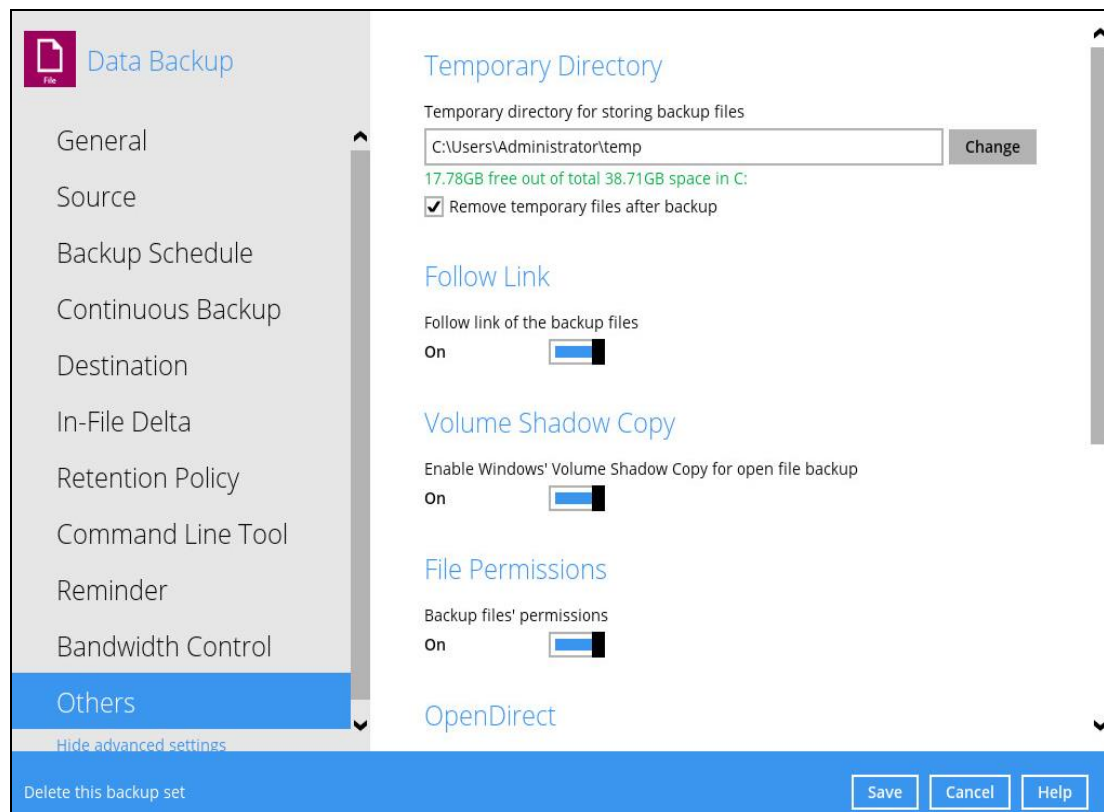
A screenshot of the 'New Bandwidth Control' dialog box. The title 'New Bandwidth Control' is in blue. It contains three input fields: 'Name' with the value 'Bandwidth Control-1', 'Type' with 'Always' selected (radio button), and 'Maximum transfer rate' with '100' and 'Kibit/s' selected from dropdown menus. At the bottom, there are three buttons: 'OK', 'Cancel', and 'Help'. Below the dialog box, there is a footer bar with a 'Delete this backup set' link and 'Save', 'Cancel', and 'Help' buttons.

5. Click the [OK] button to save the created bandwidth control set, then click the [Save] button to save settings.

## Others

Below is the list of other configurable options under the advanced backup set settings:

- [Temporary Directory](#)
- [Follow Link](#)
- [Volume Shadow Copy](#)
- [File Permissions](#)
- [OpenDirect](#)
- [Compressions](#)
- [Encryption](#)





## Temporary Directory

The AhsayOBM uses the temporary directory for both backup and restore operations.

For a **backup job**, it is used to temporarily store:



- Backup set index files. An updated set of index files is generated after each backup. The index files are synchronized to each individual backup destination at the end of each backup job.
- Incremental/Differential delta files generated during backups.

For a **restore job**, it is used to temporarily store:

- Full and Incremental/Differential delta files retrieved from the backup destination.
- Merging of the Full and Incremental/Differential delta files as part of the restore process.

NOTES	
1.	For best practice, the temporary directory should be located on a local drive for optimal backup and restore performance.
2.	It should not be located on: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>○ Windows System C:\ drive, as the C:\ drive is used by Windows and other applications. There will be frequent disk I/O activity which may affect both backup and restore performance.</li><li>○ A network drive, as it could affect both backup and restore performance.</li></ul>
3.	It is recommended to select the 'Remove temporary files after backup' option on the backup set to keep the temporary drive clear.

To change the temporary directory, follow the steps below:

1. Click the [Change] button to select a directory path for storing temporary data.



2. Click the [Save] button to save settings.

## Follow Link

This feature allows the user to enable or disable the follow link which defines the NTFS junction or symbolic link during a backup job. This option is enabled by default.

### Follow Link

Follow link of the backup files

On ☒

### NOTE

Applicable for File Backup Sets only.

## Volume Shadow Copy

This feature allows the AhsayOBM to use the Windows Volume Shadow Copy service to create a snapshot of the selected files and/or folders on the local drive(s) of the machine, so that the AhsayOBM can continue to back up files even if they are opened and/or have been updated by the user. This feature is enabled by default.

### Volume Shadow Copy

Enable Windows' Volume Shadow Copy for open file backup

On ☒

### WARNING

1. To use the Volume Shadow Copy, the license module must first be enabled on your backup user account. Otherwise, just enabling this setting on the AhsayOBM will not activate this feature and can result in possible backup errors if the backup job encounters an open file. Please contact your backup service provider for more details.
2. Volume Shadow Copy does not support open file backups on network drives.

## File Permissions

This option defines whether to back up operating system file permission of the data selected as backup source. This option is enabled by default.

### File Permissions

Backup files' permissions

On ☒

### NOTE

Applicable for File Backup Sets only.

## OpenDirect

This feature is used to add additional restore options in restoring files from a File Backup Set. This feature can only be enabled during the creation of backup set. For more details about OpenDirect Restore, please refer to [Chapter 4 OpenDirect Restore](#).

### OpenDirect

Support of opening backup data directly without restoration

Off ☐

### WARNING

1. To use this feature, the OpenDirect license module must first be enabled with the correct number of modules on your user account. If you enable this setting on the AhsayOBM without an OpenDirect license, or your account does not have enough OpenDirect licenses, then your backup job will not run. Please contact your backup service provider for more details.
2. When OpenDirect is enabled, to optimize restore performance, both compression and encryption will be disabled for this backup set. Therefore, it is not recommended to assign your backup destination on a cloud or on an offsite location.
3. Once the OpenDirect is enabled and the setting is saved, it cannot be disabled without re-creating the backup set.

## Compressions

This feature is used to enable the compression of data during a backup job. When the compression is enabled, the AhsayOBM will compress all files before it is backed up to the backup destination(s). Newly created backup sets are configured to use Fast with optimization for local by default.

### Compressions

Select compression type

Fast with optimization for local

There are four (4) different data compression types:

- No Compression
- Normal
- Fast (Compressed size larger than normal)
- Fast with optimization for local

### NOTE

The compression type can be changed anytime even after a backup job. The modified compression type will be applied on the next run of a backup.

## Encryption

This feature allows the user to view the current encryption settings. The encryption settings can only be enabled or disabled during the creation of backup set.

### Encryption

Encryption key	•••••
<a href="#">Unmask encryption key</a>	
Algorithm	AES
Method	CBC
Key length	256 bits

To view the encryption key of the backup set, follow the steps below:

1. Go to Backup Sets, then select a backup set.
2. Click the [Others] tab in the backup set settings.
3. In the Encryption, select 'Unmask encryption key' to display the encryption key of the backup set.

### Encryption

Encryption key	•••••
<a href="#">Unmask encryption key</a>	
Algorithm	AES
Method	CBC
Key length	256 bits

### Encryption

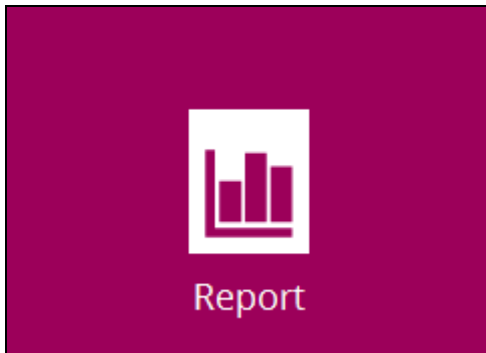
Encryption key	AbcDefGhi1234
<a href="#">Mask encryption key</a>	
Algorithm	AES
Method	CBC
Key length	256 bits

### NOTE

For more details about encryption settings, please refer to step no. 13 in [Chapter 8 Create a Backup Set](#).

## 8.6 Report

This feature allows the user to view the backup and restore reports.



There are three (3) functions available for this feature:

- Backup
- Restore
- Usage

### 8.6.1 Backup

This shows the backup reports. There are four (4) filters that can be applied on this feature:

- Date
- Backup Set
- Destination
- Status

## Report

- Backup
- Restore
- Usage

### Backup Report

From  
16 Jul 2019

To  
23 Jul 2019

Go

Backup set	Destination	Completion	Status
default-backu...	AhsayCBS	Today 13:17	Interrupted
default-backu...	AhsayCBS	Today 13:17	Completed
default-backu...	AhsayCBS	Today 13:16	Completed

No. of records per page 50

Page 1 / 1

Close Help

You can filter and view the backup report using the Date filter.

# Report

Backup

Restore

Usage

## Backup Report

From

16

Jul

2019

To

23

Jul

2019

Go

Backup set	Destination	Completion	Status
default-backu...	AhsayCBS	Today 13:17	Interrupted
default-backu...	AhsayCBS	Today 13:17	Completed
default-backu...	AhsayCBS	Today 13:16	Completed

No. of records per page

50

Page

1 / 1

Close

Help

You can filter and view the backup report using the Backup set filter.

# Report

Backup

Restore

Usage

## Backup Report

From

16

Jul

2019

To

23

Jul

2019

Go

Backup set	Destination	Completion	Status
Backup set	AhsayCBS	Today 13:17	Interrupted
default-backup-set-	AhsayCBS	Today 13:17	Completed
default-backup-set-	AhsayCBS	Today 13:16	Completed

No. of records per page

50

Page

1 / 1

Close

Help

You can filter and view the backup report to your selected storage location using the Destination filter.

# Report

Backup

Restore

Usage

## Backup Report

From

16

Jul

2019

To

23

Jul

2019

Go

Backup set	Destination	Completion	Status
default-backu...	Destination	Today 13:17	Interrupted
default-backu...	AhsayCBS	Today 13:17	Completed
default-backu...	AhsayCBS	Today 13:16	Completed

No. of records per page

50

Page

1 / 1

Close

Help

You can filter and view the backup report with the same status using the Status filter.

# Report

Backup

Restore

Usage

## Backup Report

From

16

Jul

2019

To

23

Jul

2019

Go

Backup set	Destination	Completion	Status
default-backu...	AhsayCBS	Today 13:17	Status
default-backu...	AhsayCBS	Today 13:17	Completed
default-backu...	AhsayCBS	Today 13:16	Interrupted

No. of records per page

50

Page

1 / 1

Close

Help

To view the backup log, follow the instructions below:

1. Select and click the backup report, then click the [View log] button.

**Report**

**Backup Report**

From: 16 Jul 2019 To: 23 Jul 2019 **Go**

Backup set	Destination	Completion	Status
default-backup...	AhsayCBS	Today 13:17	Interrupted
default-backup...	AhsayCBS	Today 13:17	Completed

**Backup set** default-backup-set-name-1

**Destination** AhsayCBS

**Job** 07/23/2019 13:16

**Time** Today 13:16 - 13:16 (CST)

**Status** ✓ Completed successfully

**New files \*** 35 [305.3k/439.4k (30%)]

**Updated files \*** 0

**Attributes Changed Files \*** 0

**Moved files \*** 0

**Deleted files \*** 0

\* Unit = No of files [Total zipped size / Total unzipped size (compression ratio)]

**View log**

No. of records per page: 50 Page: 1 / 1

**Close Help**

2. Backup set, Destination, Log Date and Time, and Status can also be filtered as well as the number of logs per page.

**Report**

**Backup Report**

Backup set: default-backup-set-name-1 Destination: AhsayCBS

Log: 07/23/2019 13:16 Show: All

Type	Log	Time
Start [ Windows Server 2008 R2 (w2k8r2-std), AhsayOBM v7.17.0.50 ]		07/23/2019 13:16:08
Saving encrypted backup set encryption keys to server...		07/23/2019 13:16:08
Start Backup ... [In-File Delta: Full]		07/23/2019 13:16:10
Using Temporary Directory C:\Users\Administrator\temp\156385893762\OBS@1563858951806		07/23/2019 13:16:10
Start running pre-commands		07/23/2019 13:16:10
Finished running pre-commands		07/23/2019 13:16:10
Downloading server file list...		07/23/2019 13:16:10
Downloading server file list... Completed		07/23/2019 13:16:10
Start creating Shadow Copy Set...		07/23/2019 13:16:11
Shadow Copy Set successfully created		07/23/2019 13:16:14
Reading backup source from hard disk...		07/23/2019 13:16:14
[New Directory]... C:\		07/23/2019 13:16:16
[New Directory]... C:\Users		07/23/2019 13:16:16
[New Directory]... C:\Users\Administrator		07/23/2019 13:16:16
[New Directory]... C:\Users\Administrator\Documents		07/23/2019 13:16:16
[New Directory]... C:\Users\Administrator\Music		07/23/2019 13:16:16
Reading backup source from hard disk... Completed		07/23/2019 13:16:16
[New File]... 100% of "C:\Users\Administrator\Documents\AhsayACB_UserGuideforWindows_version7.docx"		07/23/2019 13:16:16
[New Directory]... C:\Users\Administrator\Pictures		07/23/2019 13:16:16
[New Directory]... C:\Users\Administrator\Videos		07/23/2019 13:16:16
[New File]... 100% of "C:\Users\Administrator\Documents\AhsayCBS_version7_UserGuide.docx"		07/23/2019 13:16:16

Logs per page: 50 Page: 1 / 2

**Close**

**Close Help**



## 8.6.2 Restore

This shows the restore reports. There are four (4) filters that can be applied on this feature:

- Date
- Backup Set
- Destination
- Status

**Report**

Backup

**Restore**

Usage

### Restore Report

From: 16 Jul 2019 To: 23 Jul 2019

Backup set: Destination: Job: Status:

default-backu...	AhsayCBS	Today 13:52	Completed
default-backu...	AhsayCBS	Today 13:52	Completed

No. of records per page: 50 Page: 1 / 1

You can filter and view the restore report using the Date filter.

Report

Backup

Restore

Usage

Restore Report

From

16

Jul

2019

To

23

Jul

2019

Go

Backup set	Destination	Job	Status
default-backu...	AhsayCBS	Today 13:52	Completed
default-backu...	AhsayCBS	Today 13:52	Completed

No. of records per page 50

Page 1 / 1

CloseHelp

You can filter and view the restore report using the Backup set filter.

Report

Backup

Restore

Usage

Restore Report

From

16

Jul

2019

To

23

Jul

2019

Go

Backup set	Destination	Job	Status
Backup set	AhsayCBS	Today 13:52	Completed
default-backup-set-	AhsayCBS	Today 13:52	Completed
default-backup-set-			

No. of records per page 50

Page 1 / 1

CloseHelp

You can filter and view the restore report to your selected storage location using the Destination filter.

# Report

- Backup
- Restore**
- Usage

## Restore Report

From

16

Jul

2019

To

23

Jul

2019

Go

Backup set	Destination	Job	Status
default-backu...	Destination	Today 13:52	Completed
default-backu...	AhsayCBS	Today 13:52	Completed
	AhsayCBS		

No. of records per page

50

Page

1 / 1

Close

Help

You can filter and view the restore report with the same status using the Status filter.

# Report

- Backup
- Restore**
- Usage

## Restore Report

From

16

Jul

2019

To

23

Jul

2019

Go

Backup set	Destination	Job	Status
default-backu...	AhsayCBS	Today 13:58	Status
default-backu...	AhsayCBS	Today 13:52	Completed
default-backu...	AhsayCBS	Today 13:52	Completed

No. of records per page

50

Page

1 / 1

Close

Help

To view the restore log, follow the instructions below:

1. Select and click the restore report, then click the [View log] button.

**Report**

Backup

**Restore**

Usage

### Restore Report

From: 16 Jul 2019 To: 23 Jul 2019

Backup set	Destination	Job	Status
default-backup-set-name-1	AhsayCBS	07/23/2019 13:58	Completed successfully
default-backup-set-name-1	AhsayCBS	Today 13:58 - 13:58 (CST)	Completed successfully
default-backup-set-name-1	AhsayCBS	Today 13:52	Completed
default-backup-set-name-1	AhsayCBS	Today 13:52	Completed

Downloaded files\* 0

\* Unit = No of files (Download size)

No. of records per page: 50 Page: 1 / 1

2. Backup set, Log Date and Time, and Status can also be filtered as well as the number of logs per page.

**Report**

Backup set: default-backup-set-name-1

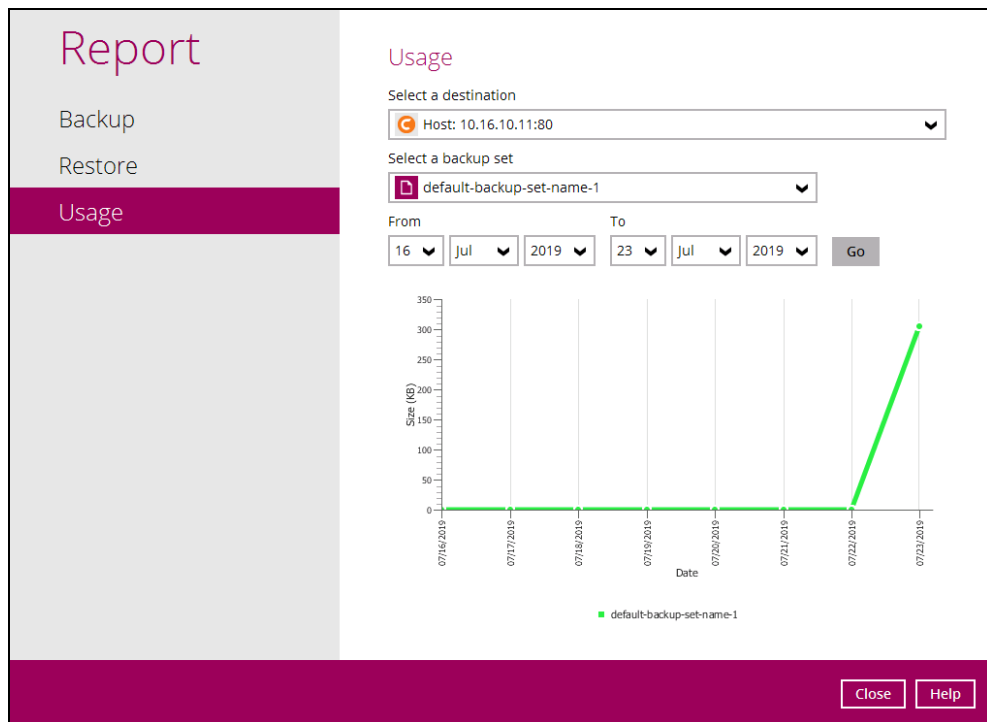
Log: 07/23/2019 13:58 Show: All

Type	Log	Time
Start [ Windows Server 2008 R2 (w2k8r2-std), AhsayOBM v7.17.0.50 ]		07/23/2019 13:58:28
Initializing decrypt action...		07/23/2019 13:58:28
Initializing decrypt action... Completed		07/23/2019 13:58:29
Same file "C:\Users\Administrator\Documents\My Music" exists already.		07/23/2019 13:58:29
Same file "C:\Users\Administrator\Documents\My Pictures" exists already.		07/23/2019 13:58:29
Same file "C:\Users\Administrator\Documents\My Videos" exists already.		07/23/2019 13:58:29
Restore Completed Successfully		07/23/2019 13:58:30

Logs per page: 50 Page: 1 / 1

### 8.6.3 Usage

This allows the user to view the storage and usage information in a graphical view for each backup set and backup destination by date.



- Storage statistics

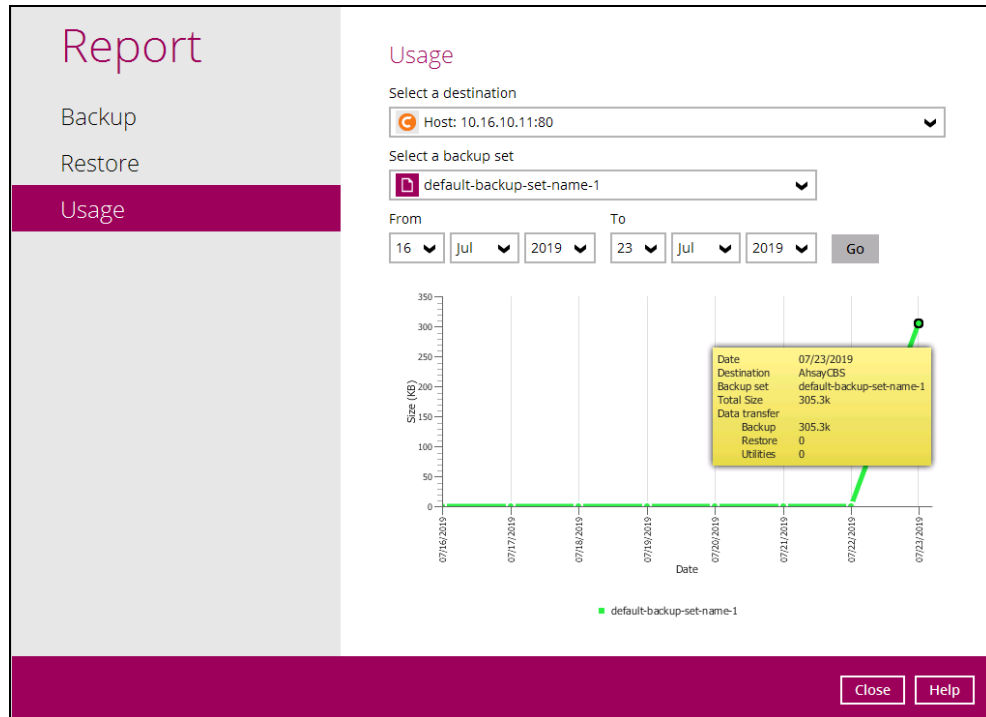
**Total Size:** displays the total amount of backed up data on the backup destination

The storage statistics of a backup set is updated every time the following functions are run:

1. Backup job
2. [Periodic Data Integrity Check \(PDIC\)](#)
3. [Data Integrity Check \(DIC\)](#)
4. [Space Freeing Up](#)
5. [Delete Backup Data](#)

### Example:

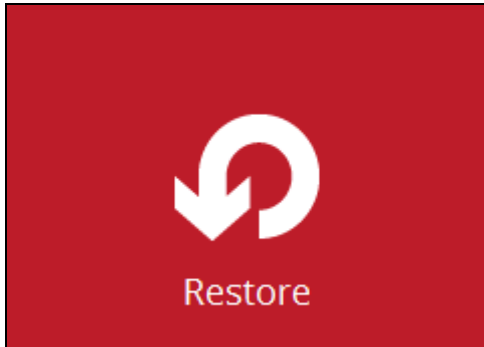
The data transfer statistics will pop up when mouse pointer moves over a specific date.



- Data Transfer statistics:
  - **Backup:** displays the amount of data transferred to the backup destination for backups
  - **Restore:** displays the amount of data transferred from the backup destination for restores
  - **Utilities:** displays the amount of data transferred from the backup destination, when a Data Integrity Check (DIC) is run with the "Run Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC) during data integrity check" option selected

## 8.7 Restore

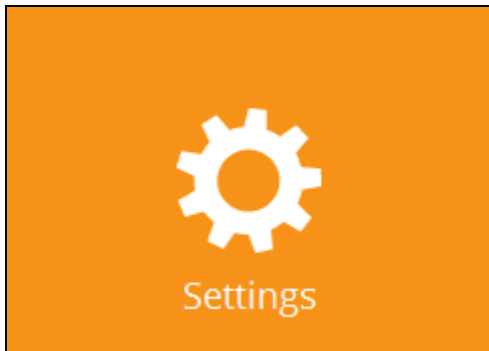
This feature is used to restore backed up files to its original or alternate location.



To restore backed up files, follow the instructions on [Chapter 11 Restore Data](#).

## 8.8 Settings

This feature allows the user to enable the **Proxy Settings** and **Windows Event Log**.



There are two (2) functions available for this feature:

- ☐ Proxy
- ☐ Windows Event Log

### 8.8.1 Proxy

When this feature is on, AhsayOBM will use a proxy to gain access to the internet.

To enable the Proxy Settings, follow the instructions below:

1. Slide the lever to the right to turn it on.

Settings

Proxy

Windows Event Log

Proxy (HTTP)

Use proxy to access the Internet

off

Save Cancel Help

2. Complete the following fields:

- IP address
- Port
- Login ID
- Password

Settings

Proxy

Windows Event Log

Proxy (HTTP)

Use proxy to access the Internet

On

IP address Port

Login ID

Password

\*\*\*\*\*

Test connection

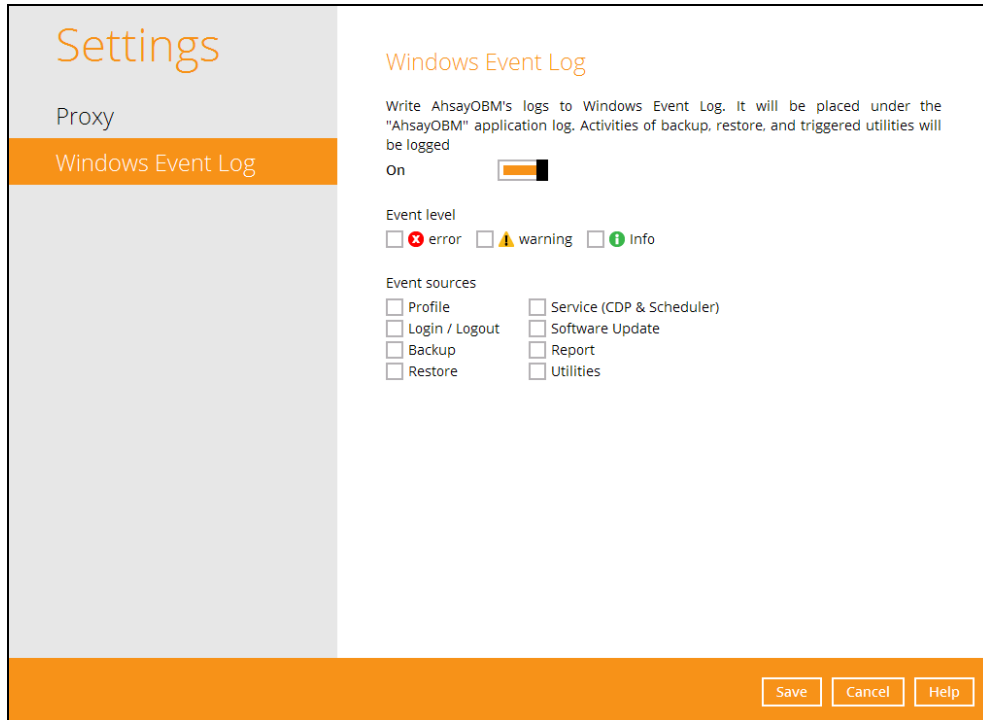
Save Cancel Help

3. Click the [Test Connection] button to validate the connection.
4. Click the [Save] button to store the settings.



## 8.8.2 Windows Event Log

When this feature is on, all AhsayOBM system log information will be written under **Applications and Services Logs**. User may access them through **Windows event viewer** in the local machine.

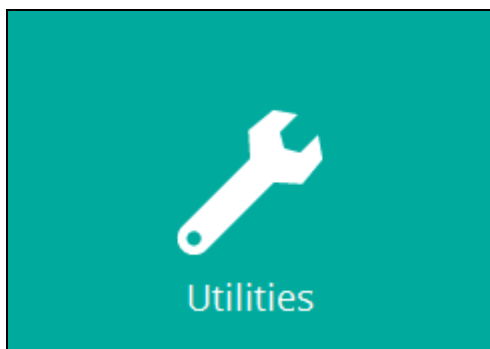


The screenshot shows the 'Settings' window with the 'Windows Event Log' tab selected. The 'On' toggle is checked. The 'Event level' section has three checkboxes: 'error' (unchecked), 'warning' (unchecked), and 'Info' (checked). The 'Event sources' section has two columns of checkboxes: Profile, Login / Logout, Backup, Restore, Service (CDP & Scheduler), Software Update, Report, and Utilities. All checkboxes are currently unchecked. At the bottom right, there are 'Save', 'Cancel', and 'Help' buttons.

**Note:** This feature is only applicable for Windows OS.

## 8.9 Utilities

This allows the user to perform quality check on the backed up data, free up storage from obsolete files, delete, and decrypt backed up data.



There are four (4) options available for this feature:

- Data Integrity Check
- Space Freeing Up
- Delete Backup Data
- Decrypt Backup Data

## 8.9.1 Data Integrity Check

The Data Integrity Check (DIC) is used to identify the data in the backup set that has index-related issues, remove any corrupted file(s) from the backup destination(s) to ensure the integrity of the backup data and its restorability, and update the storage statistics.

For an efficient management of overall storage size of the backup destination(s), the data integrity check job will perform check for the backup destination(s) to remove old index files that are more than ninety (90) days old in the backup job folder(s).

There are four (4) options in performing the Data Integrity Check:

<b>Option 1</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Run Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC) during data integrity check <input type="checkbox"/> Rebuild index <input type="button" value="Start"/>	For checking of index and data.
<b>Option 2</b> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Run Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC) during data integrity check <input type="checkbox"/> Rebuild index <input type="button" value="Start"/>	For checking of index and integrity of files against the checksum file generated at the time of the backup job.
<b>Option 3</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Run Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC) during data integrity check <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Rebuild index <input type="button" value="Start"/>	For checking and rebuilding of index.
<b>Option 4</b> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Run Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC) during data integrity check <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Rebuild index <input type="button" value="Start"/>	For checking of index, integrity of files against the checksum file generated at the time of the backup job, and rebuilding of index.

The following diagrams show the detailed process of the Data Integrity Check (DIC) in four (4) modes:

- **Option 1**  
**Disabled** Run Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC) and Rebuild index - **(Default mode)**
- **Option 2**  
**Enabled** Run Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC) and **Disabled** Rebuild index
- **Option 3**  
**Disabled** Run Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC) and **Enabled** Rebuild index
- **Option 4**  
**Enabled** Run Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC) and Rebuild index

**Start Data Integrity Check**

**Checking data blocks in the backup destination(s)**

**Checking index files which are more than 90 days old in the backup destination(s)**

**Checking outdated entries in the index files if they physically exist in the backup destination(s)**

**No index-related issues found**

**Removing data blocks that do not exist in the index**

**Removing index files from the backup destination(s) which are more than 90 days old**

**Removing outdated entries in the index files which do not physically exist in backup destination(s)**

**Storage Statistics recalculated**

**Data Integrity Check completed**

**Uploading index files with no issues to the current backup destination(s)**

**Data Integrity Check (TEST MODE) user prompt**

**(TEST MODE) confirmation screen will prompt user to proceed with the corrective actions (recommended).**

**By default, (TEST MODE) confirmation screen will only prompt if either of the criteria below matches the backup data:**

- deleted number of backup files is over 1,000
- deleted number of backup files size is over 512 MB (in total)
- deleted number of backup files is over 10% of the total backup files

**a** Check the data blocks (.bak files) located in the backup destination(s) if they exist in the index.  
→ If **YES**, proceed to **b**  
→ If **NO**, proceed to **x**

**b** Check the index files in the backup destination(s) to determine if they were more than 90 days old.  
→ If **YES**, proceed to **k**  
→ If **NO**, proceed to **c**

**c** Check the outdated entries in the index files for files and/or folders if they physically exist in the backup destination(s).  
→ If **YES**, proceed to **d**  
→ If **NO**, proceed to **y**

**d** Storage Statistics for Data area and Retention area usage will be recalculated.

**e** Data integrity check is completed.

**f** Index files with no issues will be uploaded to the current backup destination(s).

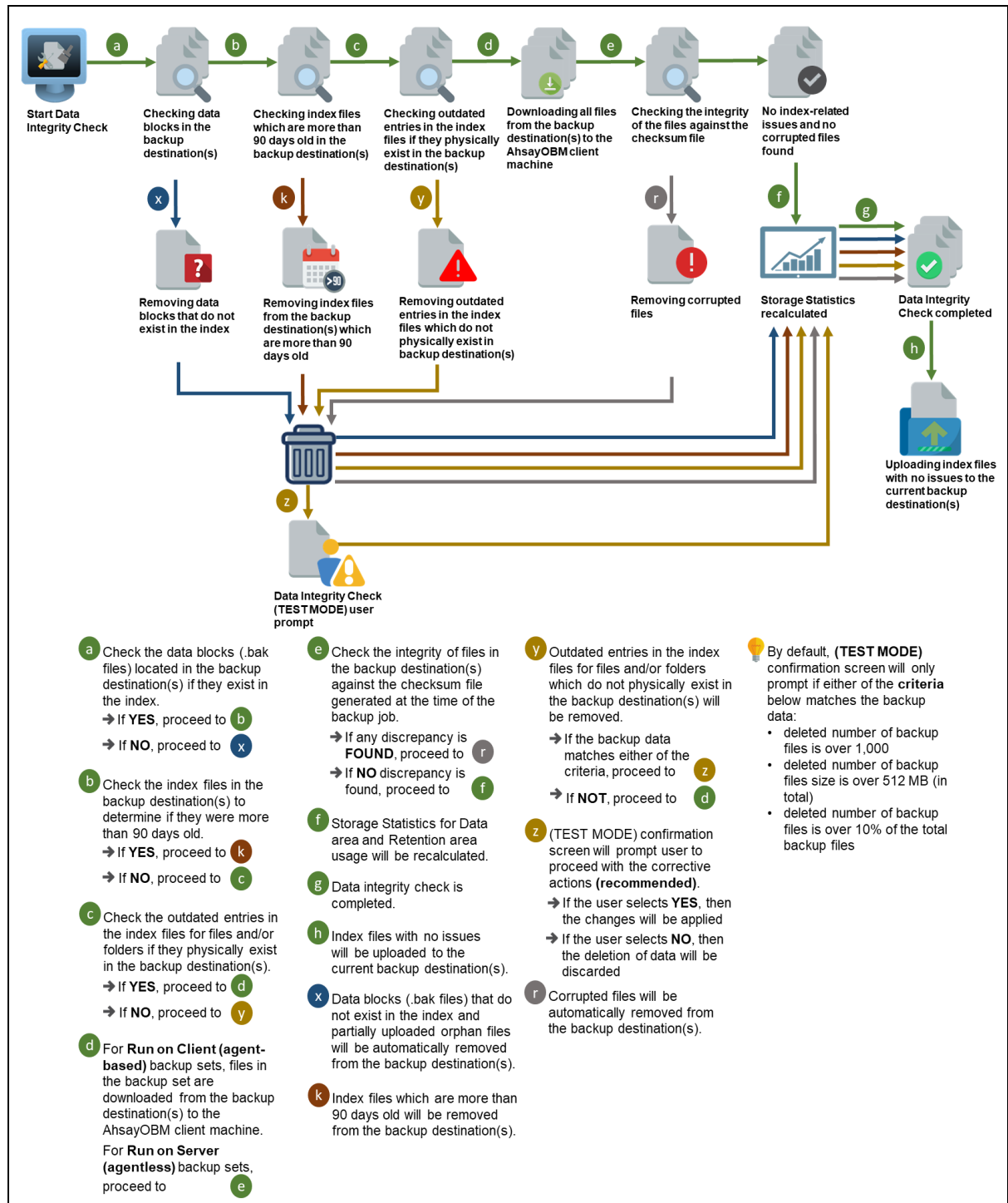
**x** Data blocks (.bak files) that do not exist in the index and partially uploaded orphan files will be automatically removed from the backup destination(s).

**k** Index files which are more than 90 days old will be removed from the backup destination(s).

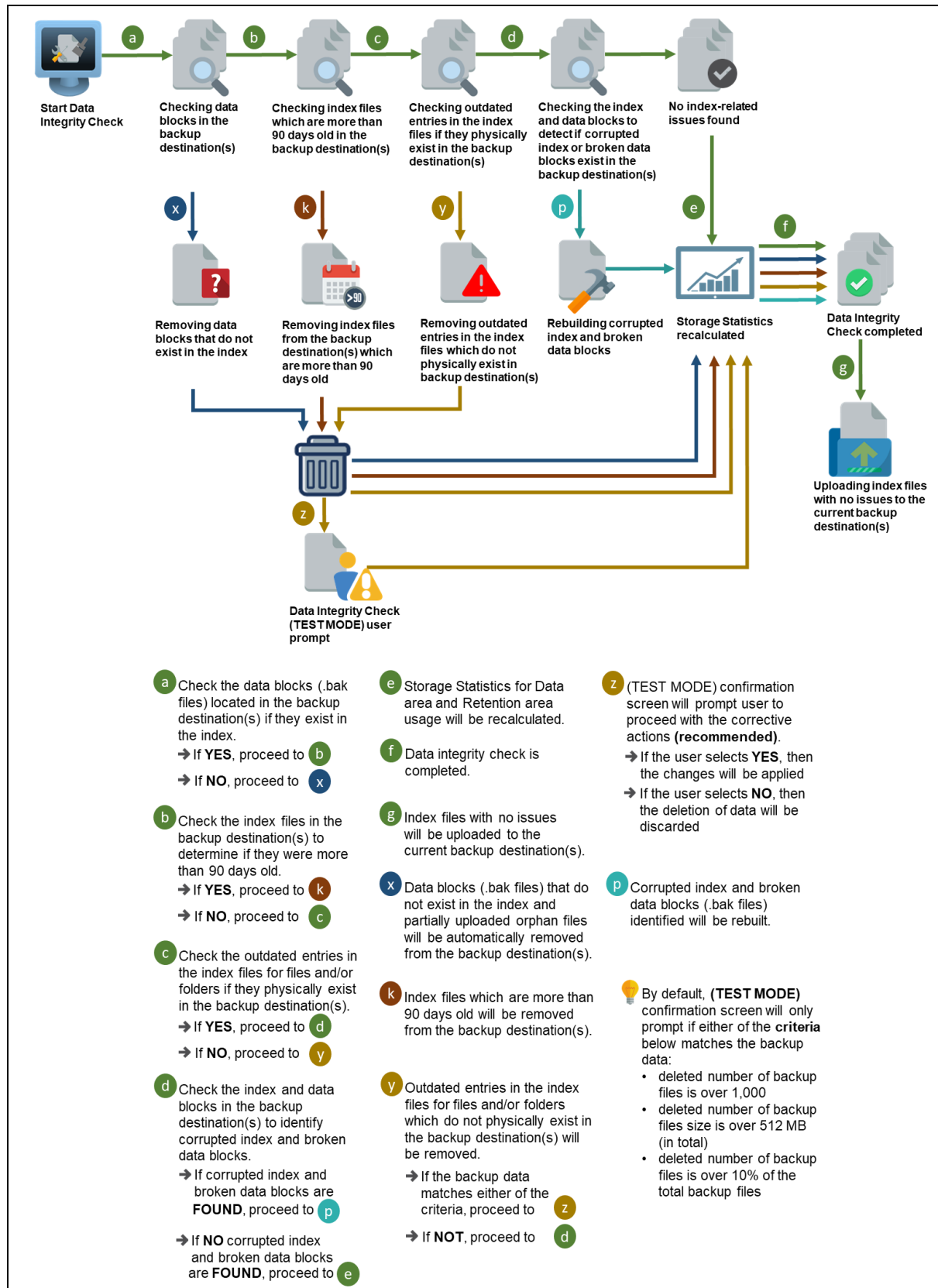
**y** Outdated entries in the index files for files and/or folders which do not physically exist in the backup destination(s) will be removed.  
→ If the backup data matches either of the criteria, proceed to **z**  
→ If **NOT**, proceed to **d**

**z** (TEST MODE) confirmation screen will prompt user to proceed with the corrective actions (recommended).  
→ If the user selects **YES**, then the changes will be applied  
→ If the user selects **NO**, then the deletion of data will be discarded

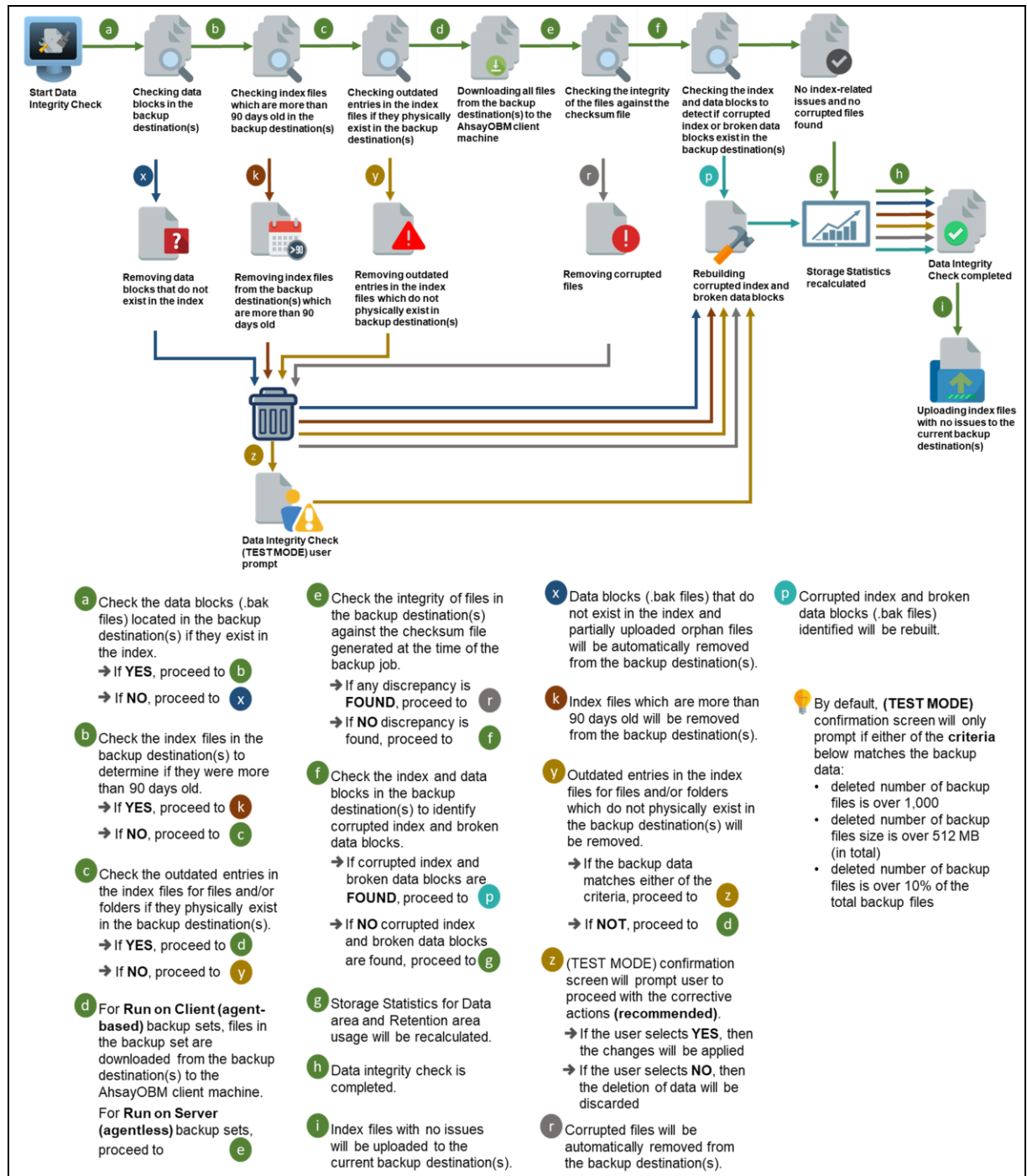
## Option 2 - Data Integrity Check (DIC) Process with Run Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC) **ENABLED** and Rebuild index **DISABLED**



### Option 3 - Data Integrity Check (DIC) Process with Run Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC) DISABLED and Rebuild index ENABLED



## Option 4 - Data Integrity Check (DIC) Process with Run Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC) and Rebuild index **ENABLED**





## Utilities

### Data Integrity Check

Space Freeing Up

Delete Backup Data

Decrypt Backup Data

### Data Integrity Check

Perform health check for your backed up data to ensure the data integrity and restorability

Select a backup set

All

☐ Run Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC) during data integrity check

☐ Rebuild index

Start

Close

Help

### NOTES

1. Data Integrity Check CANNOT fix or repair files that are already corrupted.
2. Data Integrity Check can only be started if there is NO active backup or restore job(s) running on the backup set selected for the DIC job. As the **backup, restore** and **data integrity check** are using the same index for read and write operations. Otherwise, an error message will be displayed in the post-DIC to indicate that the data integrity check is completed with error(s) and had skipped a backup set with an active backup job.

The following screenshot is an example of a Data Integrity Check completed with error(s). A Data Integrity Check is run on a backup set with an active backup job running which resulted the Data Integrity Check to stop with error(s). Clicking the **View log** button will display the details of the Data Integrity Check job error(s).

## Utilities

- Data Integrity Check
- Space Freeing Up
- Delete Backup Data
- Decrypt Backup Data

### Data Integrity Check

Perform health check for your backed up data to ensure the data integrity and restorability

Select a backup set

All

☐ Run Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC) during data integrity check  
☐ Rebuild index  
✗ Data Integrity Check is completed with error(s)

[View log](#)

[Close](#)
[Help](#)

## Utilities

### Data Integrity Check

Log 14/04/2021 10:59 Show All

Type	Log	Time
<span style="color: green;">i</span>	Start [ AhsayOBM v8.5.0.126 ]	14/04/2021 10:59:35
<span style="color: green;">i</span>	Start data integrity check on all backup sets, crc disabled, rebuild index disabled	14/04/2021 10:59:35
<span style="color: red;">✗</span>	Skipped Backup Set = "default-backup-set-name-1". Reason = "Backup job "default-backup-set-name-1" is still running."	14/04/2021 10:59:35
<span style="color: green;">i</span>	Start processing data integrity check on backup set= "default-backup-set-name-2" destination= "AhsayCBS"	14/04/2021 10:59:35
<span style="color: green;">i</span>	Download valid index files from backup job "Current" to "C:\Users\Administrator\temp\1618369079628\OBS@1618369104630...	14/04/2021 10:59:37
<span style="color: green;">i</span>	INT_CHECK_VACUUM_INDEX	14/04/2021 10:59:37
<span style="color: green;">i</span>	INT_CHECK_VACUUM_INDEX... Completed	14/04/2021 10:59:37
<span style="color: green;">i</span>	Existing statistics of backup set= "default-backup-set-name-2" destination= "AhsayCBS": Data area compressed size: 13.57MB...	14/04/2021 10:59:38
<span style="color: green;">i</span>	Recalculated statistics of backup set= "default-backup-set-name-2" destination= "AhsayCBS": Data area compressed size: 13.5...	14/04/2021 10:59:38
<span style="color: green;">i</span>	The statistics of backup set= "default-backup-set-name-2" destination= "AhsayCBS" is correct.	14/04/2021 10:59:38
<span style="color: green;">i</span>	Saving the integrity check result.	14/04/2021 10:59:38
<span style="color: green;">i</span>	Saving encrypted backup file index to 1618369079628\blocks at destination AhsayCBS...	14/04/2021 10:59:39
<span style="color: green;">i</span>	Data integrity check on backup set= "default-backup-set-name-2" destination= "AhsayCBS" is completed	14/04/2021 10:59:40
<span style="color: red;">✗</span>	Skipped Backup Set = "default-backup-set-name-1". Reason = "Backup job "default-backup-set-name-1" is still running."	14/04/2021 10:59:41
<span style="color: red;">✗</span>	Finished data integrity check with error on all backup sets, crc disabled, rebuild index disabled	14/04/2021 10:59:41
<span style="color: green;">i</span>	Completed data integrity check on all backup sets, crc disabled, rebuild index disabled	14/04/2021 10:59:41

Logs per page 50 Page 1 / 1

[Close](#)
[Close](#)
[Help](#)



To perform a Data Integrity Check, follow the instructions below:

1. Go to the Data Integrity Check tab in the Utilities menu.

The screenshot shows the 'Utilities' menu on the left with 'Data Integrity Check' selected. The main panel is titled 'Data Integrity Check' and contains the following elements:

- A description: 'Perform health check for your backed up data to ensure the data integrity and restorability'.
- A label 'Select a backup set' above a dropdown menu currently showing 'All'.
- Two checkboxes: ☐ 'Run Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC) during data integrity check' and ☐ 'Rebuild index'.
- A 'Start' button.
- At the bottom right, 'Close' and 'Help' buttons.

2. Click the drop-down button to select a backup set.

This screenshot is identical to the previous one, but the dropdown menu for 'Select a backup set' is open, showing the following options:

- All (highlighted)
- Backup\_1
- Backup\_2

The 'Start' button and the bottom 'Close'/'Help' buttons remain visible.

3. Click the drop-down button to select a backup destination.

Utilities

Data Integrity Check

Space Freeing Up

Delete Backup Data

Decrypt Backup Data

Data Integrity Check

Perform health check for your backed up data to ensure the data integrity and restorability

Select a backup set

Backup\_2

Select a destination

All

All

AhsayCBS

☐ Run cyclic redundancy check (CRC) during data integrity check

☐ Rebuild index

Start

Close Help

4. Unchecked Run Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC) and Rebuild index options is the default setting of data integrity check.

Utilities

Data Integrity Check

Space Freeing Up

Delete Backup Data

Decrypt Backup Data

Data Integrity Check

Perform health check for your backed up data to ensure the data integrity and restorability

Select a backup set

Backup\_2

Select a destination

AhsayCBS

☐ Run Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC) during data integrity check

☐ Rebuild index

Start

Close Help

### Run Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC)

When this option is enabled, the DIC will perform check on the integrity of the files on the backup destination(s) against the checksum file generated at the time of the backup job.

If there is a discrepancy, this indicates that the files on the backup destination(s) are corrupted and will be removed from the backup destination(s). If these files still exist on the client machine on the next backup job, the AhsayOBM will upload the latest copy of the files.

However, if the corrupted files are in the retention area, they will not be backed up again as the source file has already been deleted from the client machine.

The time required to complete a data integrity check depends on the number of factors such as:

- number of files and/or folders in the backup set(s)
- bandwidth available on the client computer
- hardware specifications of the client computer such as, the disk I/O and CPU performance

#### NOTES

1. For user(s) with metered internet connection, additional data charges may be incurred if the Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC) is enabled. As CRC data involves downloading the data from the backup destination(s) to the client machine in order to perform this check.
2. To find out how much data is downloaded from the backup destination(s) for the CRC check, please refer the value for **Utilities** in the [Data Transfer statistics](#) on chapter 8.6.3.

### Rebuild index

When this option is enabled, the data integrity check will start rebuilding corrupted index and/or broken data blocks if there are any.

5. Click the [Start] button to begin the Data Integrity Check.
6. Data Integrity Check will start running on the selected backup set(s) and backup destination(s).

Utilities

Data Integrity Check

Space Freeing Up

Delete Backup Data

Decrypt Backup Data

Data Integrity Check

Perform health check for your backed up data to ensure the data integrity and restorability

Select a backup set

Backup\_2

Select a destination

AhsayCBS

☐ Run Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC) during data integrity check

☐ Rebuild index

Processing Job "Current", ""

Stop

Close Help

- Once the DIC is completed, click the **View log** button to check the detailed process of the data integrity check.

Utilities

Data Integrity Check

Space Freeing Up

Delete Backup Data

Decrypt Backup Data

Data Integrity Check

Perform health check for your backed up data to ensure the data integrity and restorability

Select a backup set

Backup\_2

Select a destination

AhsayCBS

☐ Run Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC) during data integrity check

☐ Rebuild index

Data Integrity Check is completed successfully

View log

Close Help

- The detailed log of data integrity check process will be displayed.

Utilities
Data Integrity Check

Log
14/04/2021 11:33
Show
All

Type	Log	Time
i	Start [ AhsayOBM v8.5.0.126 ]	14/04/2021 11:33:17
i	Start data integrity check on backup set "Backup_2(1618369079628)", "AhsayCBS(1618369104630)", crc disabled, rebuild inde...	14/04/2021 11:33:17
i	Start processing data integrity check on backup set= "Backup_2" destination= "AhsayCBS"	14/04/2021 11:33:17
i	Download valid index files from backup job "Current" to "C:\Users\Administrator\temp\1618369079628\OBS@1618369104630...	14/04/2021 11:33:18
i	INT_CHECK_VACUUM_INDEX	14/04/2021 11:33:18
i	INT_CHECK_VACUUM_INDEX... Completed	14/04/2021 11:33:18
i	Existing statistics of backup set= "Backup_2" destination= "AhsayCBS": Data area compressed size: 13.57MB, Data area unco...	14/04/2021 11:33:19
i	Recalculated statistics of backup set= "Backup_2" destination= "AhsayCBS": Data area compressed size: 13.57MB, Data area u...	14/04/2021 11:33:19
i	The statistics of backup set= "Backup_2" destination= "AhsayCBS" is correct.	14/04/2021 11:33:19
i	Saving the integrity check result.	14/04/2021 11:33:19
i	Saving encrypted backup file index to 1618369079628/blocks at destination AhsayCBS...	14/04/2021 11:33:20
i	Data integrity check on backup set= "Backup_2" destination= "AhsayCBS" is completed	14/04/2021 11:33:21
i	Finished data integrity check on backup set "Backup_2(1618369079628)", "AhsayCBS(1618369104630)", crc disabled, rebuild i...	14/04/2021 11:33:21
i	Completed data integrity check on backup set "Backup_2(1618369079628)", "AhsayCBS(1618369104630)", crc disabled, rebuild...	14/04/2021 11:33:21

Logs per page
50
Page
1 / 1

Close
Close
Help

The following options can be used for further viewing of the detailed DIC log:

- Log filter
- Show filter
- Logs per page
- Page

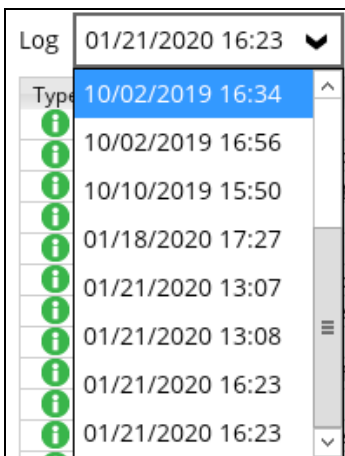
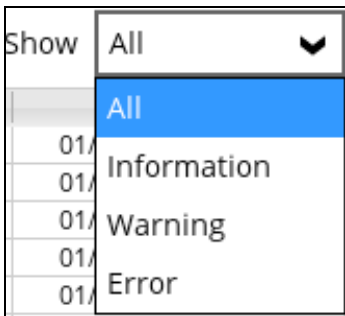
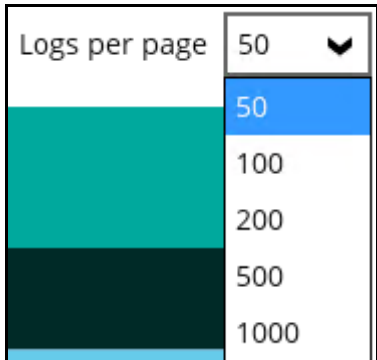
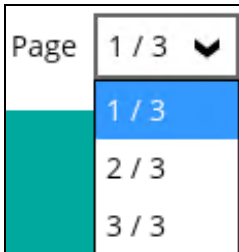
Utilities
Data Integrity Check

Log
14/04/2021 11:33
Show
All

Type	Log	Time
i	Start [ AhsayOBM v8.5.0.126 ]	14/04/2021 11:33:17
i	Start data integrity check on backup set "Backup_2(1618369079628)", "AhsayCBS(1618369104630)", crc disabled, rebuild inde...	14/04/2021 11:33:17
i	Start processing data integrity check on backup set= "Backup_2" destination= "AhsayCBS"	14/04/2021 11:33:17
i	Download valid index files from backup job "Current" to "C:\Users\Administrator\temp\1618369079628\OBS@1618369104630...	14/04/2021 11:33:18
i	INT_CHECK_VACUUM_INDEX	14/04/2021 11:33:18
i	INT_CHECK_VACUUM_INDEX... Completed	14/04/2021 11:33:18
i	Existing statistics of backup set= "Backup_2" destination= "AhsayCBS": Data area compressed size: 13.57MB, Data area unco...	14/04/2021 11:33:19
i	Recalculated statistics of backup set= "Backup_2" destination= "AhsayCBS": Data area compressed size: 13.57MB, Data area u...	14/04/2021 11:33:19
i	The statistics of backup set= "Backup_2" destination= "AhsayCBS" is correct.	14/04/2021 11:33:19
i	Saving the integrity check result.	14/04/2021 11:33:19
i	Saving encrypted backup file index to 1618369079628/blocks at destination AhsayCBS...	14/04/2021 11:33:20
i	Data integrity check on backup set= "Backup_2" destination= "AhsayCBS" is completed	14/04/2021 11:33:21
i	Finished data integrity check on backup set "Backup_2(1618369079628)", "AhsayCBS(1618369104630)", crc disabled, rebuild i...	14/04/2021 11:33:21
i	Completed data integrity check on backup set "Backup_2(1618369079628)", "AhsayCBS(1618369104630)", crc disabled, rebuild...	14/04/2021 11:33:21

Logs per page
50
Page
1 / 1

Close
Close
Help

Control	Screenshot	Description
Log filter		This option is used to display the logs of the previous data integrity check jobs.
Show filter		<p>This option is used to sort the data integrity check log by its status (i.e., All, Information, Warning, and Error).</p> <p>With this filter, it will be easier to sort the DIC logs by its status especially for longer data integrity check logs.</p>
Logs per page		This option allows user to control the displayed number of logs per page.
Page		This option allows user to navigate the logs to the next page(s).

### Data Integrity Check Result

There are two possible outcomes after the completion of a data integrity check:

- Data Integrity Check is completed successfully with no data corruption or index-related issues detected;

- Corrupted data (e.g. index files, checksum files and/or broken data blocks) has been detected

The screenshot below shows an example of a data integrity check log with NO data corruption or index-related issues detected.

The screenshot shows the 'Data Integrity Check' utility window. The log displays a series of status messages indicating a successful check. The log is filtered by date '14/04/2021 11:33' and shows all entries. The log entries include:

- Start [ AhsayOBM v8.5.0.126 ]
- Start data integrity check on backup set "Backup\_2(1618369079628)", "AhsayCBS(1618369104630)", crc disabled, rebuild inde...
- Start processing data integrity check on backup set= "Backup\_2" destination= "AhsayCBS"
- Download valid index files from backup job "Current" to "C:\Users\Administrator\temp\1618369079628\OBS@1618369104630...
- INT\_CHECK\_VACUUM\_INDEX
- INT\_CHECK\_VACUUM\_INDEX... Completed
- Existing statistics of backup set= "Backup\_2" destination= "AhsayCBS": Data area compressed size: 13.57MB, Data area unco...
- Recalculated statistics of backup set= "Backup\_2" destination= "AhsayCBS": Data area compressed size: 13.57MB, Data area u...
- The statistics of backup set= "Backup\_2" destination= "AhsayCBS" is correct.
- Saving the integrity check result.
- Saving encrypted backup file index to 1618369079628/blocks at destination AhsayCBS...
- Data integrity check on backup set= "Backup\_2" destination= "AhsayCBS" is completed
- Finished data integrity check on backup set "Backup\_2(1618369079628)", "AhsayCBS(1618369104630)", crc disabled, rebuild i...
- Completed data integrity check on backup set "Backup\_2(1618369079628)", "AhsayCBS(1618369104630)", crc disabled, rebuil...

The log shows a 'Page 1 / 1' and 'Logs per page 50'.

If any index-related error(s) or data corrupted item(s) is found, the (TEST MODE) confirmation screen will be displayed.

The screenshot shows the 'Data Integrity Check' utility window in 'TEST MODE'. A warning message states: "The result of data integrity check (TEST MODE) is as follow. No actions are performed yet. Data corrupted items, checksum incorrect items and index broken data blocks will be deleted. Are you sure you want to continue?". Below the message, the backup set is 'Backup\_1'. A table shows the results of the check:

Destination	Items found in index	Data corrupted items	Index broken data blocks	Statistics
AhsayCBS	11 (45.7MB)	6 (45.7MB)	2 (26.6KB)	Incorrect

\* File count (File size)

The screen has buttons for 'Yes', 'No', and 'View log'.

This is to inform the user of the following details:

- Backup set that contains an error
- Backup Destination
- Items found in index

- Data corrupted items
- Index broken data blocks
- Statistics (i.e. Correct or Incorrect)




### Test Mode confirmation

The (TEST MODE) confirmation screen will ONLY appear if either of the **criteria** below matches the backup data during the data integrity check process:

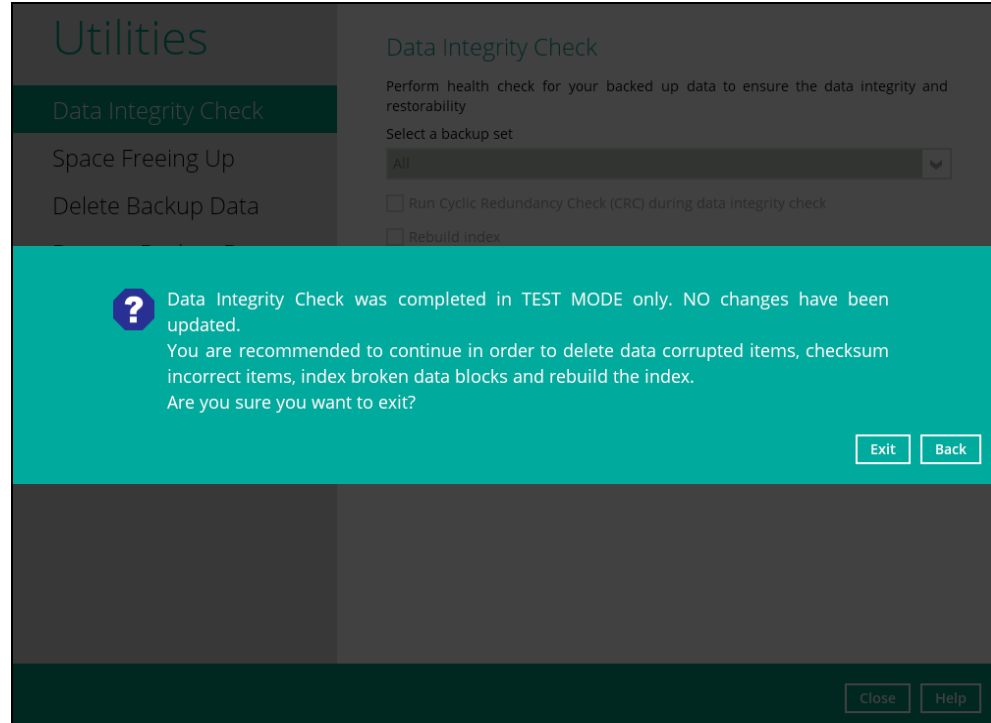
- deleted number of backup files is over 1,000
- deleted number of backup file size is over 512 MB (in total)
- deleted number of backup files is over 10% of the total backup files

Otherwise, the Data Integrity Check job will **automatically** take corrective actions.

There are three (3) options on the (TEST MODE) confirmation screen:

Control	Screenshot	Description
<b>Yes</b>		Corrupted data (e.g. index files, checksum files and/or broken data blocks) will be deleted and storage statistics will be updated.
<b>No</b>		No action(s) will be taken and a message will prompt.
<b>View log</b>		The detailed log of the data integrity check process will be displayed.

Clicking **No** will display the following screen:



If the **[Exit]** button is clicked, the data integrity check result will be discarded.

If the **[Back]** button is clicked, it will go back to the (TEST MODE) confirmation screen.

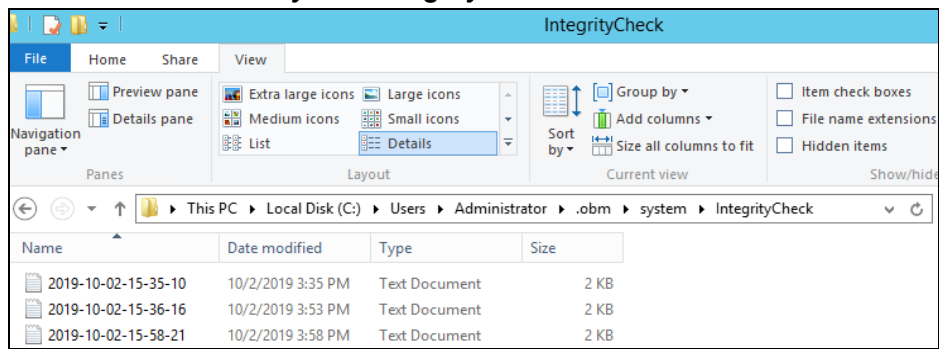


## NOTES

1. It is strongly recommended to apply corrective actions when the (TEST MODE) confirmation screen pops up (clicking the **Yes** button). This is to ensure that the remaining corrupted file(s) will be removed from the backup destination(s), therefore on the next backup job, these files are backed up again if they are still present on the client machine. However, if the corrupted files are in retention area, then they will not be backed up again as the source file has already been deleted from the client machine.
2. If the DIC detects data blocks (.bak files) in the backup destination(s) that do not have related index entries, then these physical data blocks will be **automatically** removed from the backup destination(s) without the (TEST MODE) prompt.

Aside from viewing the Data Integrity Check logs directly on AhsayOBM client, they can also be viewed on the file system of the AhsayOBM client machine. For AhsayOBM on Windows, the DIC logs are located in the following directory:

***%UserProfile%\obm\system\IntegrityCheck***



## 8.9.2 Space Freeing Up

This feature is used to remove obsolete file(s) from your backup set and destination (manually start retention policy). After the Space Freeing Up job is completed, the storage statistics of the backup set(s) are updated.

To perform Space Freeing Up, follow the instructions below:

1. Select a backup set from the drop-down list.

**Utilities**

- Data Integrity Check
- Space Freeing Up**
- Delete Backup Data
- Decrypt Backup Data

### Free Up Storage Space

To remove obsolete files from your backup destination according to your retention policy setting to free up your storage space, select backup set(s), destination(s) and then press Start.

Select a backup set

- All
- All**
- default-backup-set-name-1
- default-backup-set-name-2
- default-backup-set-name-3

[Close](#) [Help](#)

If you select a specific backup set, then you will also have to select a specific destination or all destinations.

**Utilities**

- Data Integrity Check
- Space Freeing Up**
- Delete Backup Data
- Decrypt Backup Data

### Free Up Storage Space

To remove obsolete files from your backup destination according to your retention policy setting to free up your storage space, select backup set(s), destination(s) and then press Start.

Select a backup set

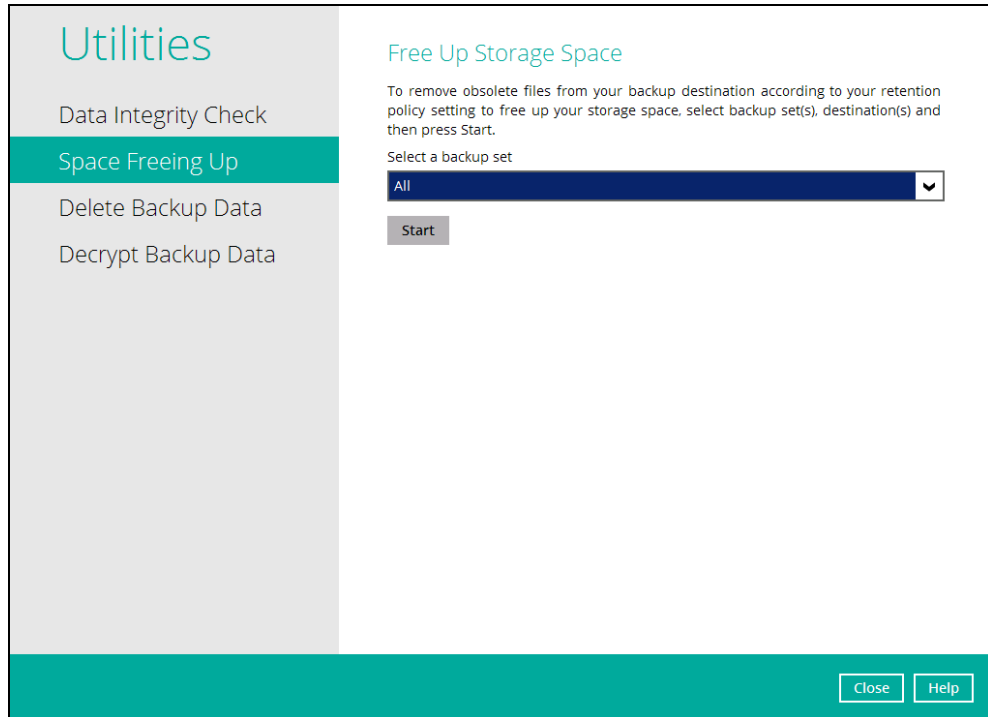
- default-backup-set-name-1

Select a destination

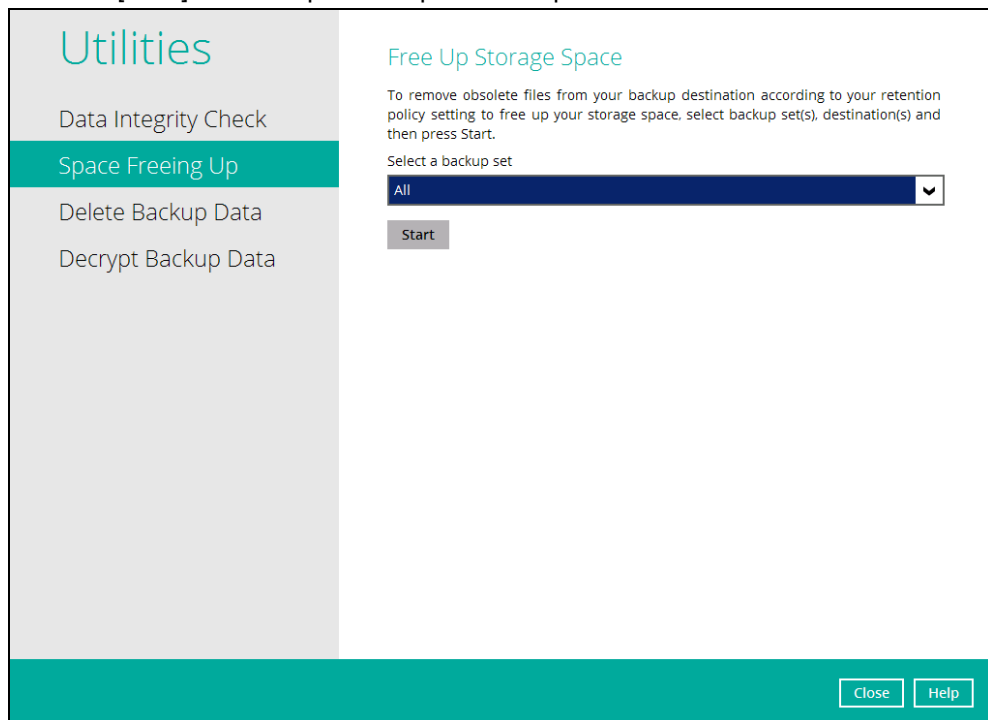
- All
- All**
- AhsayCBS

[Close](#) [Help](#)

If you select All backup sets, then there is no need to select a destination.



2. Click the [Start] button to perform space free up.



3. Space freeing job will start running on the selected backup set(s) and backup destination(s).

## Utilities

- Data Integrity Check
- Space Freeing Up**
- Delete Backup Data
- Decrypt Backup Data

### Free Up Storage Space

To remove obsolete files from your backup destination according to your retention policy setting to free up your storage space, select backup set(s), destination(s) and then press Start.

Select a backup set

default-backup-set-name-1

Select a destination

All

Start processing space freeing up on backup set= "default-backup-set-name-1 (1...

Stop

Close

Help

- The status will be shown once completed. Click the [View log] button to see the detailed report of the space freeing up job.

## Utilities

- Data Integrity Check
- Space Freeing Up**
- Delete Backup Data
- Decrypt Backup Data

### Free Up Storage Space

To remove obsolete files from your backup destination according to your retention policy setting to free up your storage space, select backup set(s), destination(s) and then press Start.

Select a backup set

default-backup-set-name-1

Select a destination

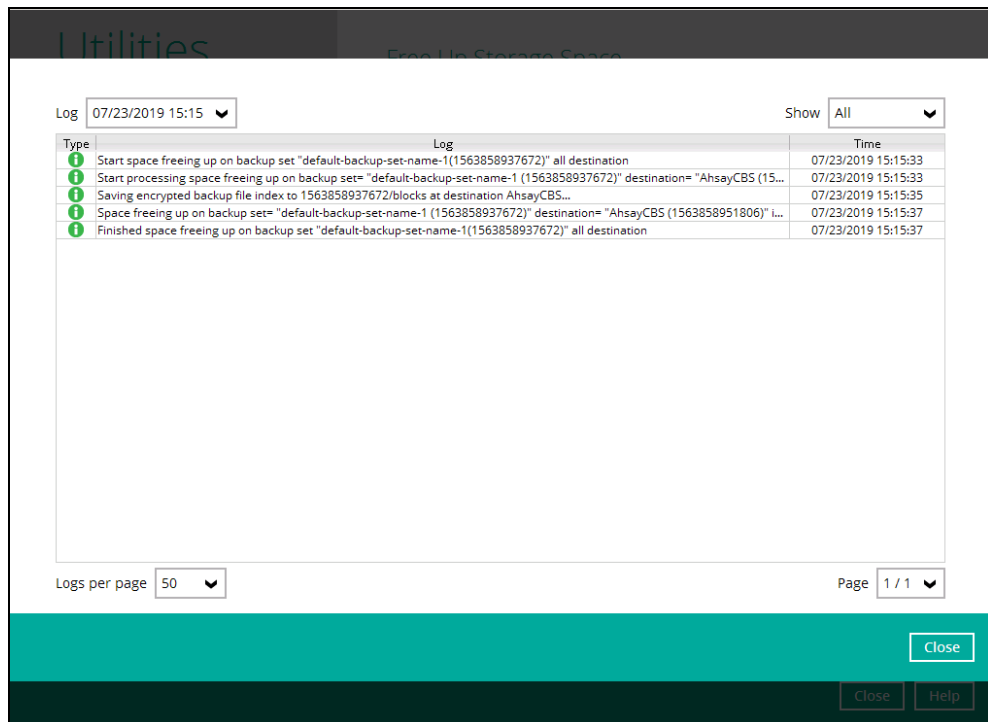
All

Space freeing up is completed successfully

View log

Close

Help

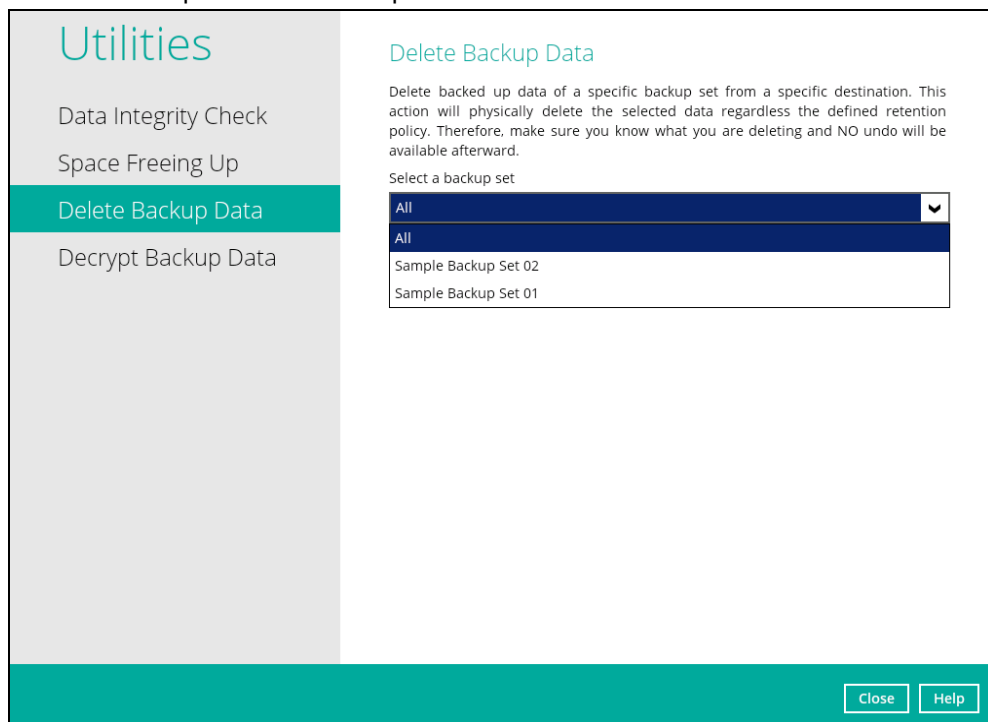


### 8.9.3 Delete Backup Data

This feature is used to permanently delete backed up data from a backup set(s), destination(s), backup job, or delete all backed up data. After the data is deleted, the storage statistics of the backup set(s) are updated.

To perform deletion of backup data, follow the instructions below:

1. Select a backup set from the drop-down list.



**NOTE:** This will only delete the backed up files in a backup set(s) and destination(s), but the backup set and destination will remain.

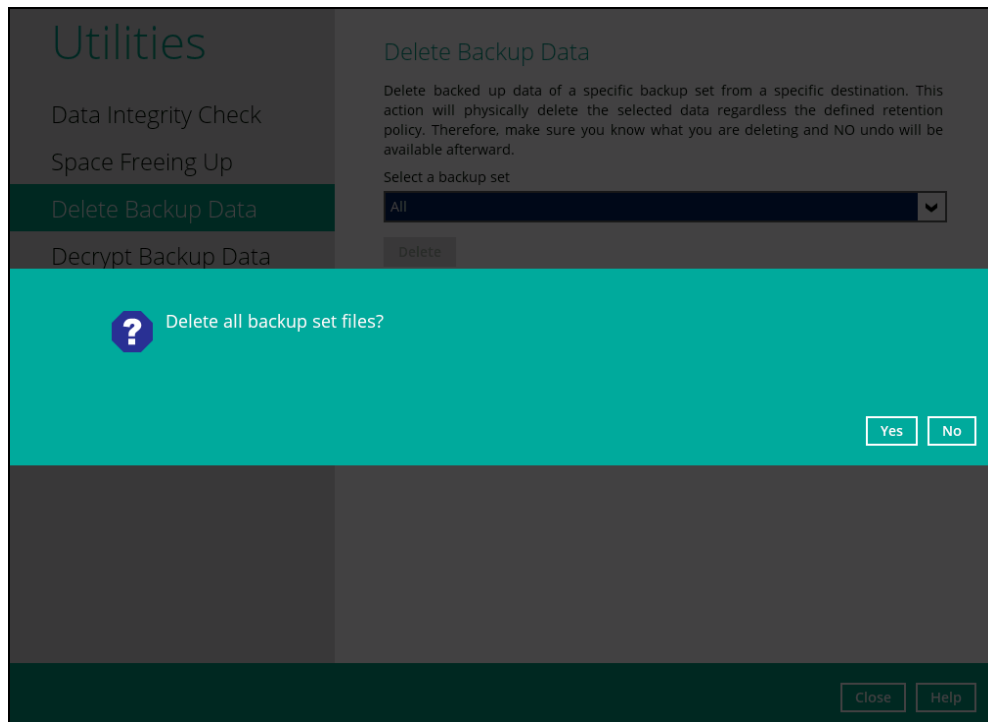
If you select a specific backup set, then you will also have to select a specific destination or all destinations.

The screenshot shows the 'Utilities' sidebar on the left with 'Delete Backup Data' highlighted. The main panel is titled 'Delete Backup Data' and contains the following text: 'Delete backed up data of a specific backup set from a specific destination. This action will physically delete the selected data regardless the defined retention policy. Therefore, make sure you know what you are deleting and NO undo will be available afterward.' Below this, there are two dropdown menus. The first is labeled 'Select a backup set' and has 'Sample Backup Set 01' selected. The second is labeled 'Select a destination' and has 'All' selected, with a dropdown menu open showing 'All' and 'AhsayCBS'. At the bottom right, there are 'Close' and 'Help' buttons.

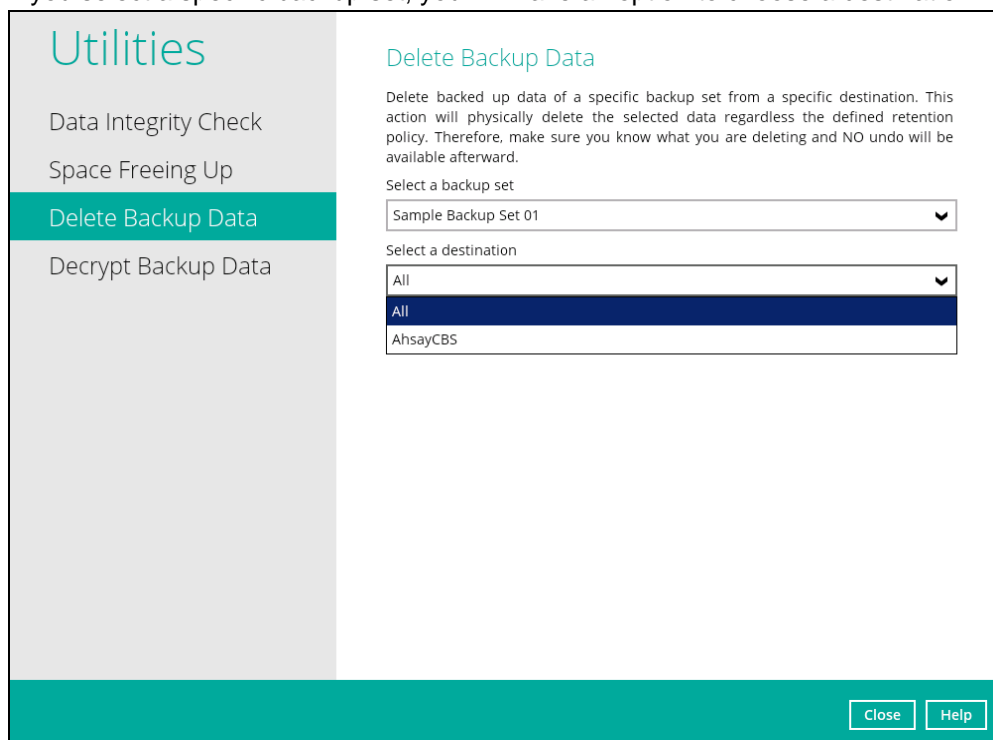
If you select **All** backup sets, then there is no need to select a destination.

The screenshot shows the 'Utilities' sidebar on the left with 'Delete Backup Data' highlighted. The main panel is titled 'Delete Backup Data' and contains the same explanatory text as the previous screenshot. Below the text, the 'Select a backup set' dropdown menu has 'All' selected. A 'Delete' button is visible below the dropdown. At the bottom right, there are 'Close' and 'Help' buttons.

2. If you choose to delete **All** backup set(s), the following message will be displayed. By clicking **Yes**, all backed up files from the selected backup set(s) and destination(s) will be deleted.



If you select a specific backup set, you will have an option to choose a destination.



If you select a specific destination, there are two (2) available options for the type of files you wish to delete.

- Delete all backed up data
- Choose from ALL files

Utilities

Data Integrity Check

Space Freeing Up

Delete Backup Data

Decrypt Backup Data

Delete Backup Data

Delete backed up data of a specific backup set from a specific destination. This action will physically delete the selected data regardless the defined retention policy. Therefore, make sure you know what you are deleting and NO undo will be available afterward.

Select a backup set

Sample Backup Set 01

Select a destination

AhsayCBS

Select what to delete

Delete all backed up data

Delete all backed up data

Choose from ALL files

Close

Help

### Delete all backed up data

If you choose this option, the following message will be displayed. By clicking **Yes**, all backed up data from the selected backup set(s) and destination(s) will be deleted.

Utilities

Data Integrity Check

Space Freeing Up

Delete Backup Data

Decrypt Backup Data

Delete Backup Data

Delete backed up data of a specific backup set from a specific destination. This action will physically delete the selected data regardless the defined retention policy. Therefore, make sure you know what you are deleting and NO undo will be available afterward.

Select a backup set

Sample Backup Set 01

Select a destination

AhsayCBS

?

Delete all files (Sample Backup Set 01 - AhsayCBS)?

Yes

No

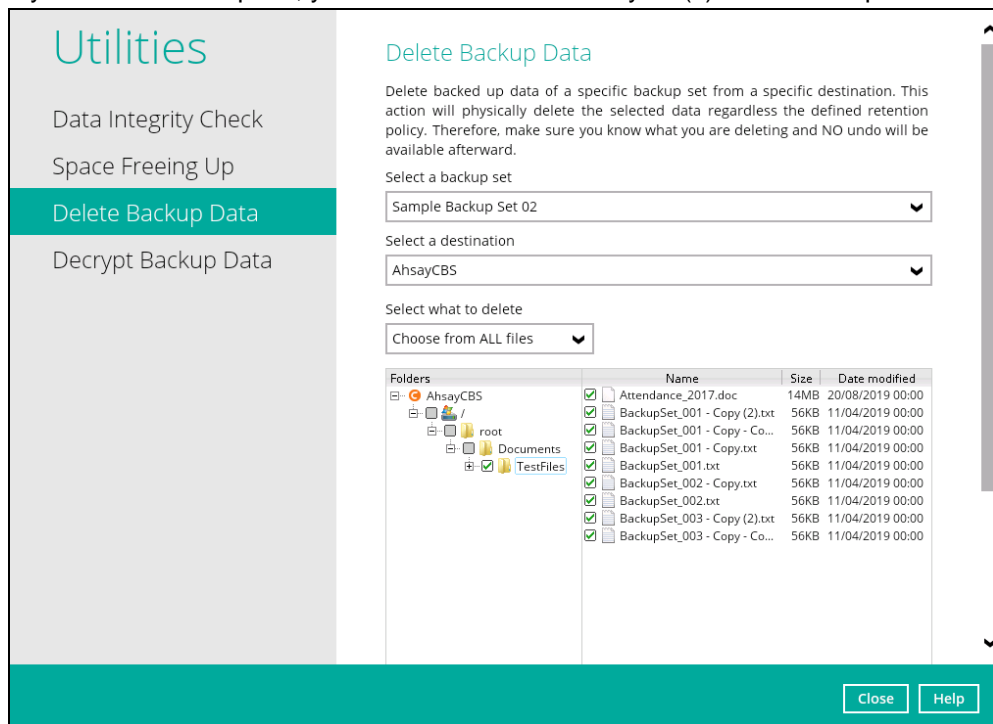
Close

Help

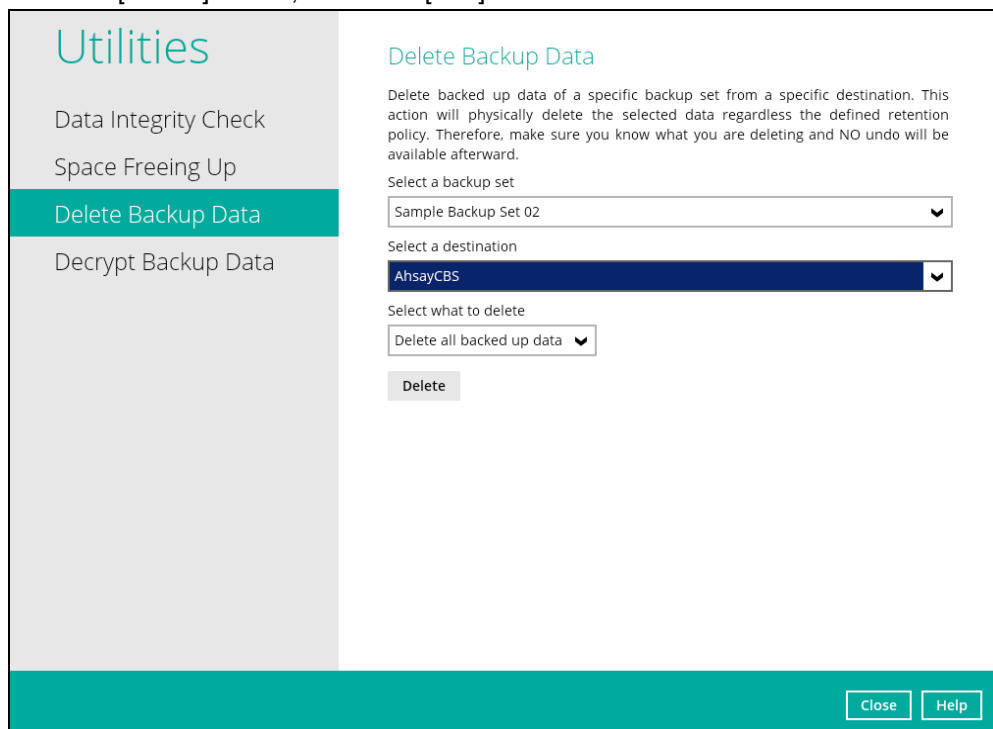


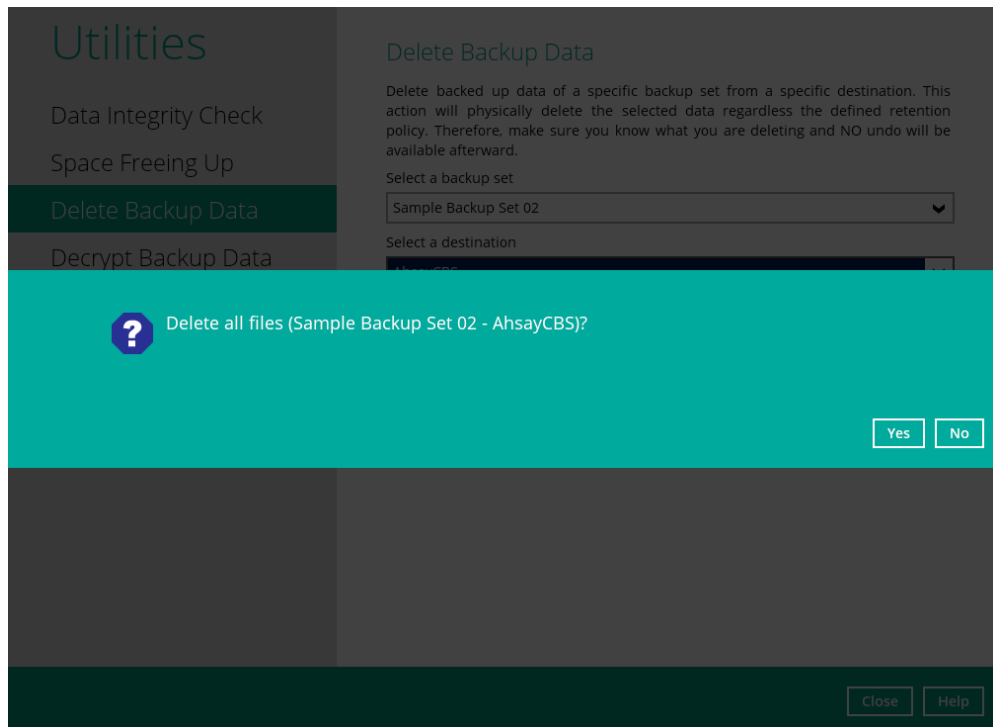
### Choose from ALL files

If you choose this option, you can select to delete any file(s) in the backup set.

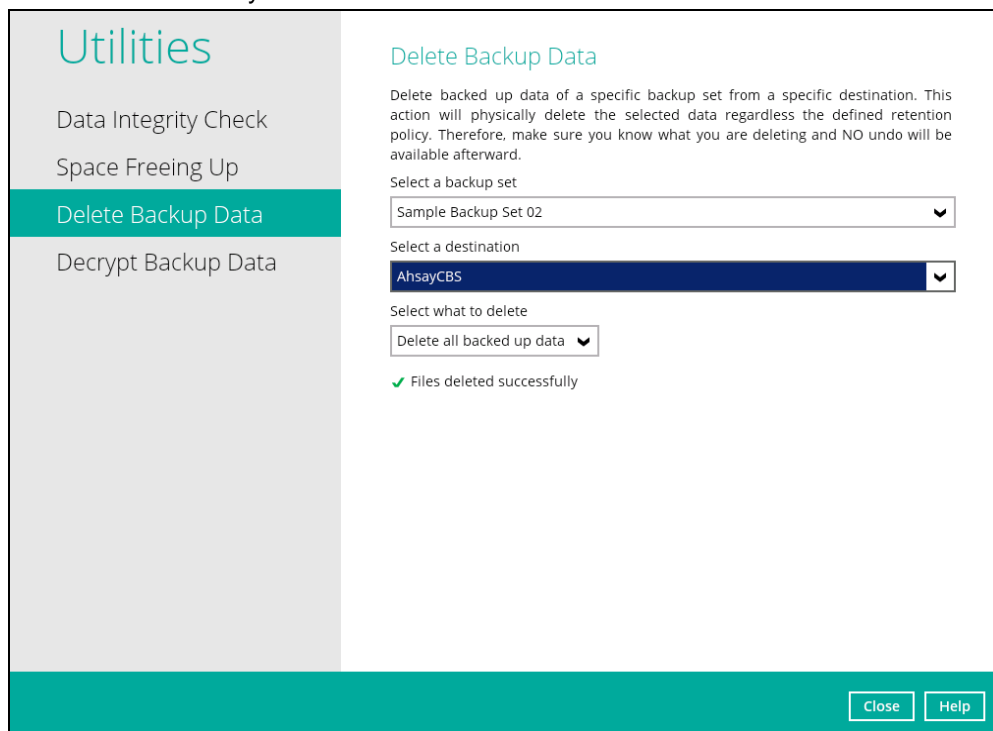


- Click the [Delete] button, then click [Yes] to start the deletion of files.





4. Files are successfully deleted.



### 8.9.4 Decrypt Backup Data

This feature is used to restore raw data by using the data encryption key that was set for the backup set.

To perform decryption of backup data, follow the instructions below:

1. Click the [Browse] button to locate the path of the backup set ID / blocks folder.

**Utilities**

- Data Integrity Check
- Space Freeing Up
- Delete Backup Data
- Decrypt Backup Data**

**Decrypt Backup Data**

Please enter the path to the [<backup set ID>/blocks] folder which contains the backup files that you want to decrypt.

**Browse**

Temporary directory for storing restore files

**Browse**

**Decrypt**

**Close** **Help**

2. Click the [Browse] button to re-select the temporary folder for the decrypt process. Then click the [Decrypt] button to begin.

**Utilities**

- Data Integrity Check
- Space Freeing Up
- Delete Backup Data
- Decrypt Backup Data**

**Decrypt Backup Data**

Please enter the path to the [<backup set ID>/blocks] folder which contains the backup files that you want to decrypt.

**Browse**

Temporary directory for storing restore files

**Browse**

**Decrypt**

**Close** **Help**

3. Select files to be decrypted.

## Select Your Files To Be Restored

Select what to restore

Choose from files as of job ▼

07/25/2019 ▼

Latest ▼

[Show filter](#)

Folders	Name	Size	Date modified
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> decrypt_destination	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Links		
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> C:\	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Bing.url	1 KB	02/09/2018 11:22
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Users	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> desktop.ini	1 KB	02/09/2018 11:22
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Administrator			
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Favorites			

Search

Items per page 50 ▼ Page 1 / 1 ▼

Next

Cancel

Help

4. Choose the location where the decrypted files will be restored to.

## Choose Where The Files To Be Restored

Restore files to

☒ Original location

☐ Alternate location

Browse

[Show advanced option](#)

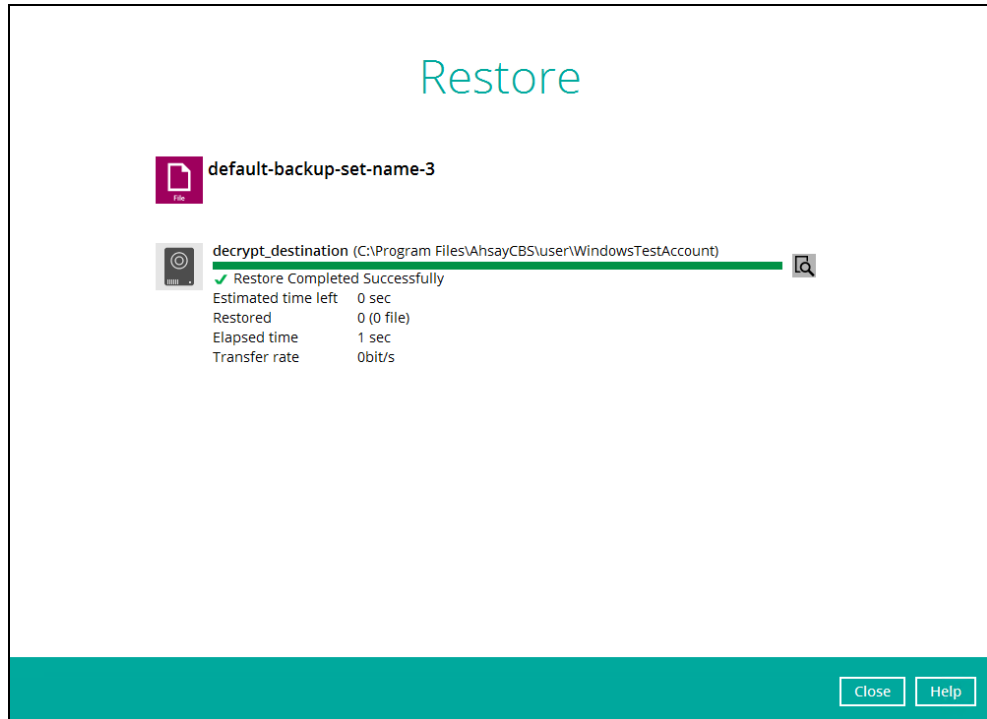
Previous

Restore

Cancel

Help

5. The status will be shown once completed.



## 8.10 Online Help

This allows the user to view the summary of information and instructions of each available features in AhsayOBM.

The screenshot shows the 'Profile' page with the 'Password' section selected in the left sidebar. The main content area is titled 'Password' and contains a 'Change Password' button and a checkbox labeled 'Save password'. At the bottom right, there are three buttons: 'Save', 'Cancel', and 'Help', with the 'Help' button highlighted by a red rectangle.

The screenshot shows the 'Online Help' page for the 'Password' section. It includes a 'Profile' header, a brief introduction, a 'Key:' section with a table of fields and descriptions, a 'Modify the login password.' section with instructions, and a list of steps. At the bottom right, there are three buttons: 'Print', 'Close', and 'Help', with the 'Help' button highlighted by a red rectangle.

Field	Description
Please confirm current password.	The box for your current password entry. You need to type in the correct password before you can change a new password.
New Password	The text box for your new password.
Reenter Password	The text box for you to reenter new password, this is to verify the 'New Password' entry. If both 'New Password' and 'Reenter Password' do not match, you will be prompted to enter the password again.
Save password	By pass the password entry when you open the AhsayOBM interface.

**Modify the login password.**

To modify the login password settings:

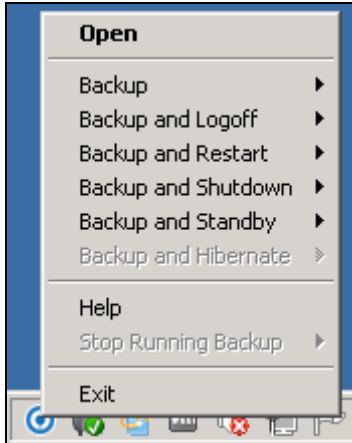
1. Click on the 'Change Password'.
2. Enter your current password, click [Next] to continue.
3. Enter your new password.
4. Reenter your new password for verification, click [OK] to continue.

## 8.11 System Tray

If AhsayOBM is installed in the computer, you will see an AhsayOBM icon in the taskbar at the lower right corner of the screen.



When you right-click the AhsayOBM icon, a control menu will pop-up.

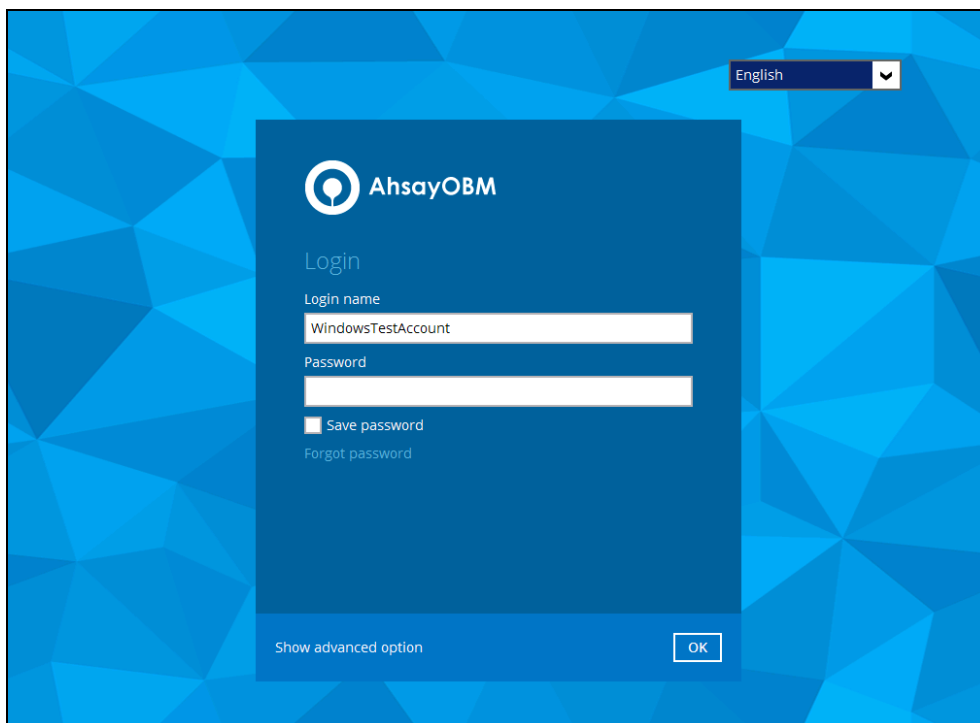
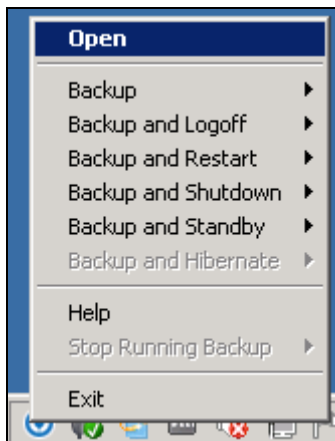


Ahsay OBM system tray has ten (10) controls:

- Open
- Backup
- Backup and Logoff
- Backup and Restart
- Backup and Shutdown
- Backup and Standby
- Backup and Hibernate
- Help
- Stop Running Backup
- Exit

## Open

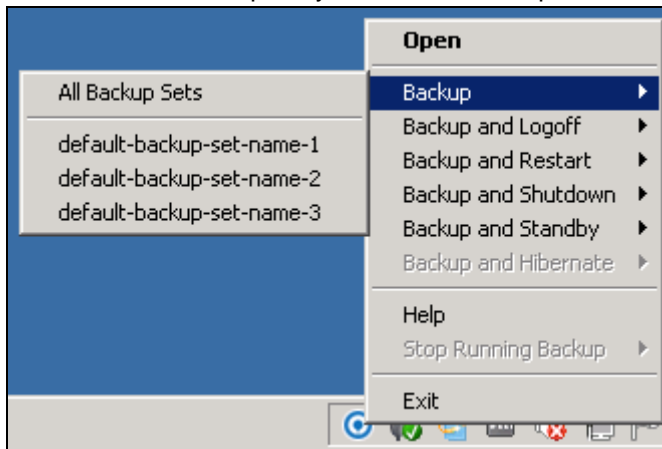
Select this option to open the AhsayOBM login screen.





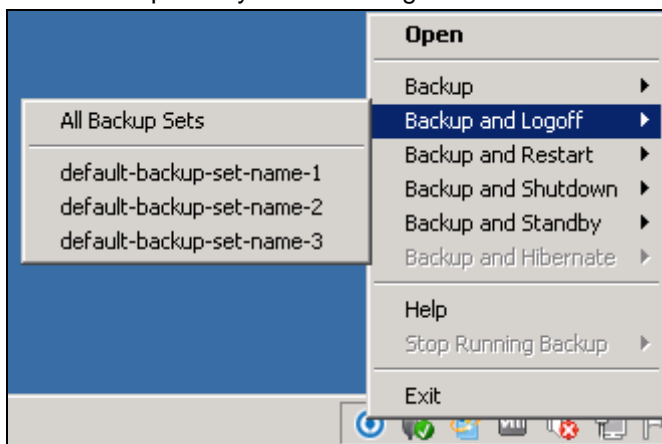
## Backup

If you want to perform a backup without going to the interface, hover the mouse to this option and select the backup set you want to back up.



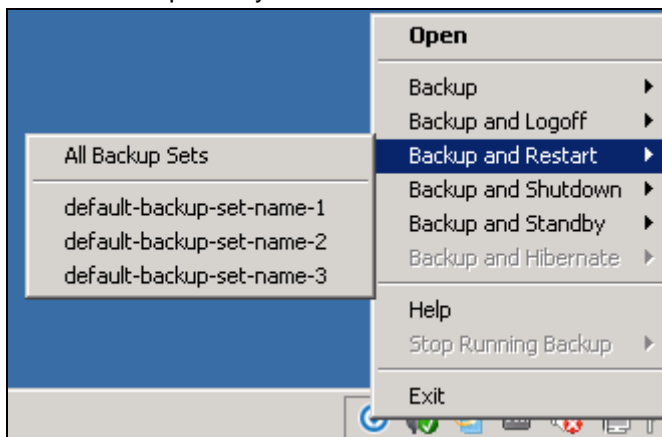
## Backup and Logoff

Select this option if you want to logoff Windows after a manual backup job is done.



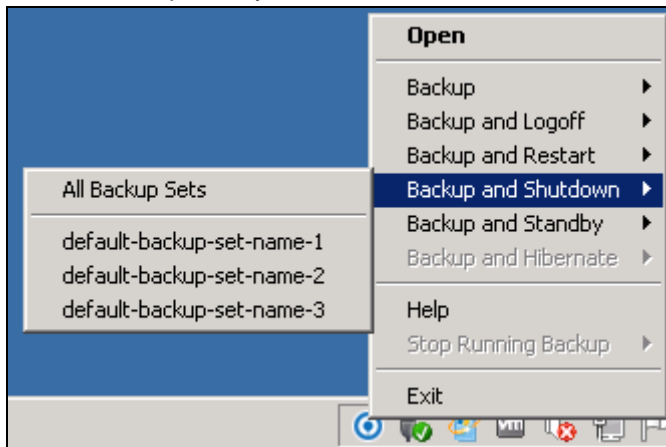
## Backup and Restart

Choose this option if you want the machine to restart after a manual backup job is done.



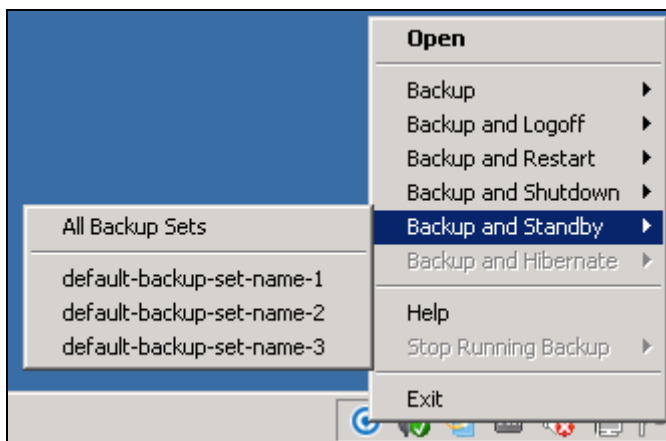
## Backup and Shutdown

Choose this option if you want the machine to shut down after a manual backup job is done.



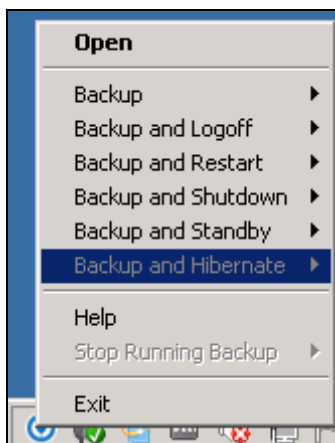
## Backup and Standby

Choose this option if you want the machine to go on standby after a manual backup job is done.



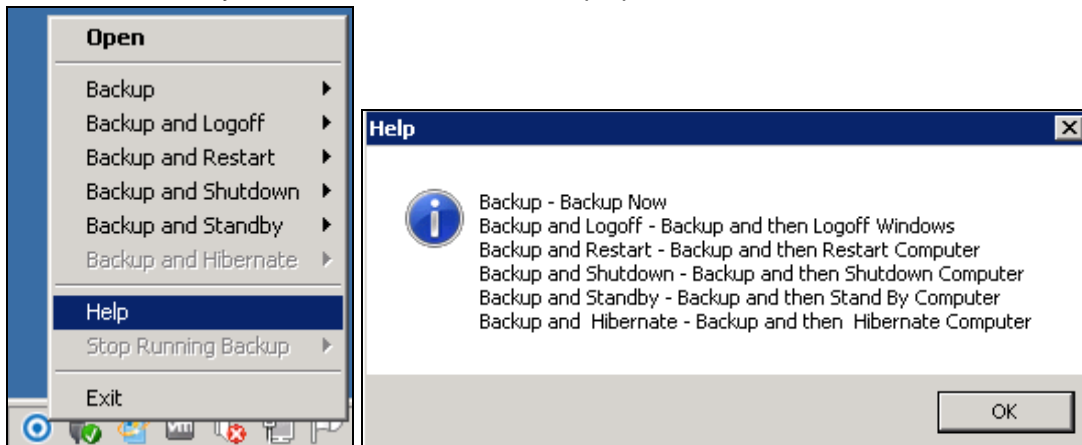
## Backup and Hibernate

Choose this option if you want the machine to hibernate after a manual backup job is done. This will be disabled if hibernate mode is not available on the Windows version you are using.



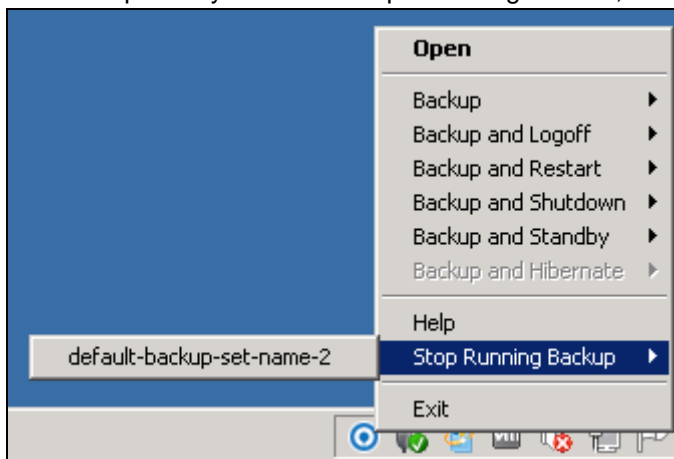
## Help

This tab will show you the function of each backup option.

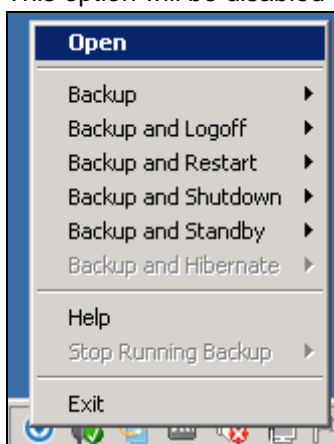


## Stop Running Backup

Use this option if you wish to stop a running manual, continuous or scheduled backup.

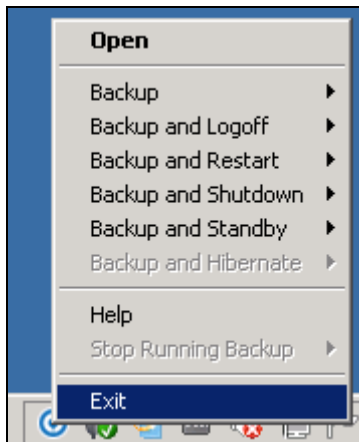


This option will be disabled if there is no backup job running.



## Exit

Select this option if you want to close the application including the AhsayOBM icon at the taskbar.

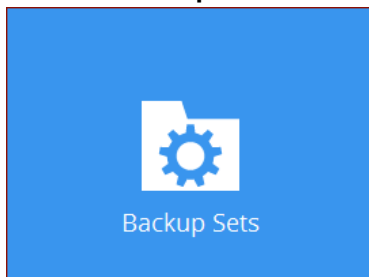


## 9 Create a Backup Set

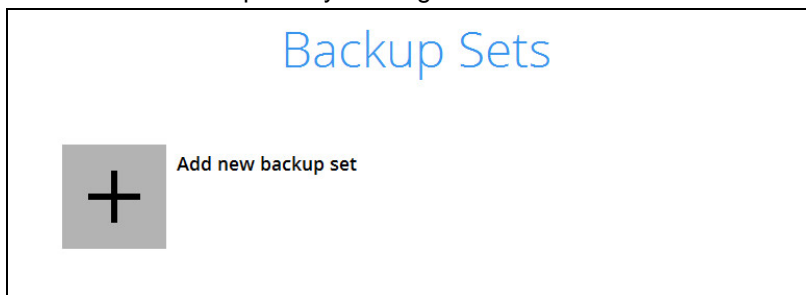
Starting with v8.3.4.0 and onwards, network drive support has been enhanced which will allow users to access different network drives not limited to Windows-based backup source. This enhancement will support:

- Network drives with different login credentials instead of limited to Windows User Authentication login or network drives without login credential.
- Network drives without the need for them to be setup first on Windows.
- Network drives as Backup Source (including filter), Backup Destination and Restore Location (Original or Alternate).

1. Click the **Backup Sets** icon on the AhsayOBM main interface.



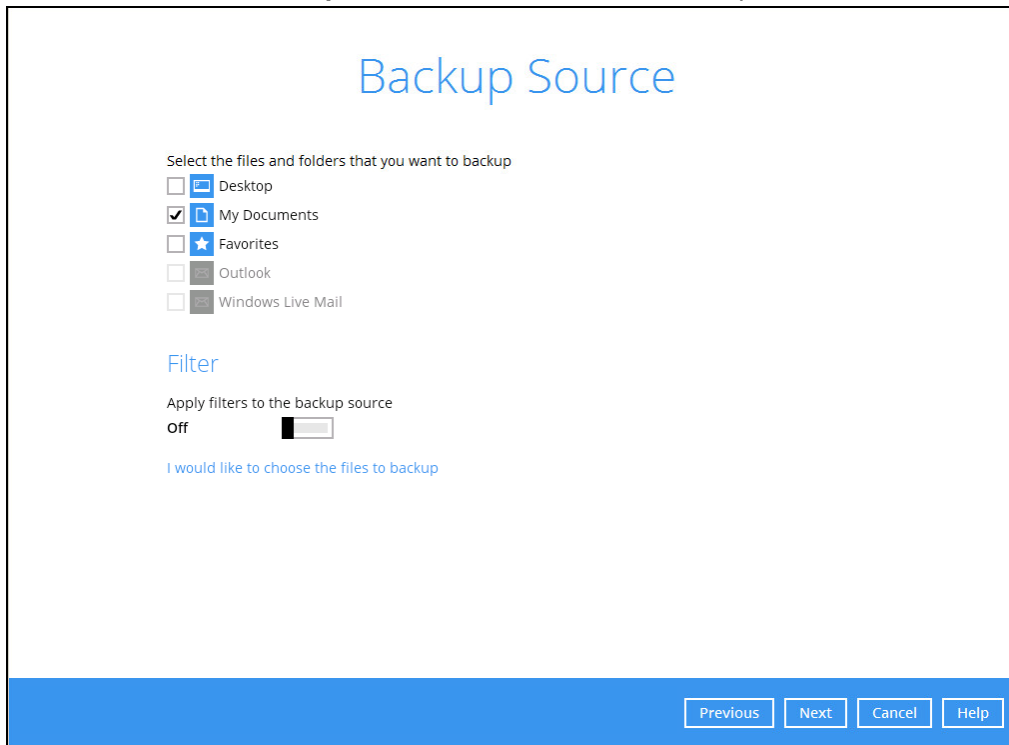
2. Create a new backup set by clicking the "+" icon next to **Add new backup set**.



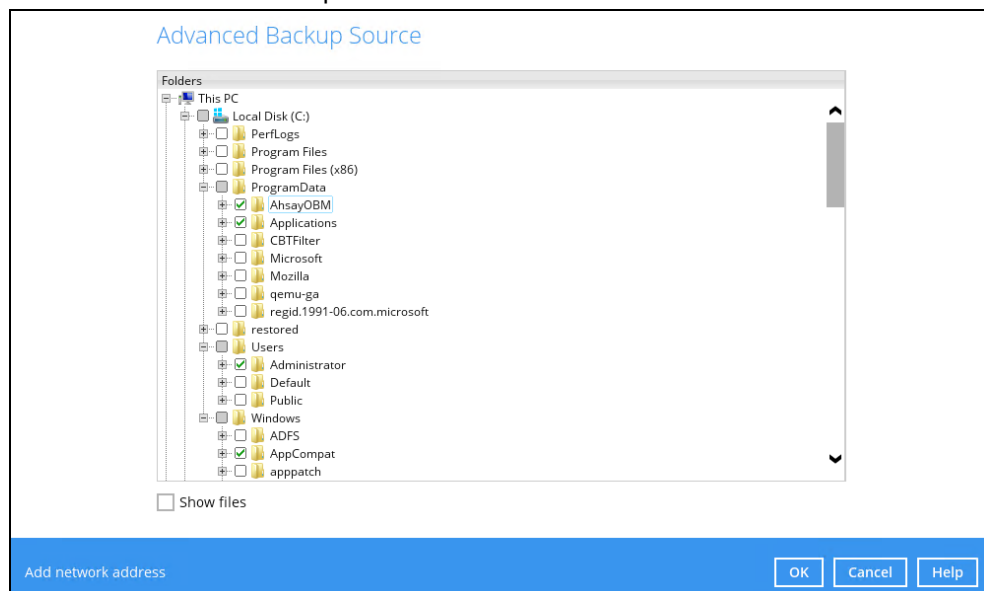
3. When the Create Backup Set window appears, name your new backup set, and select the **Backup set type**. Then, click **Next** to proceed.

The "Create Backup Set" window has the title "Create Backup Set" in blue. It contains a "Name" label above a text input field with "File Backup" entered. Below this is a "Backup set type" label above a dropdown menu. The dropdown menu is open, showing "File Backup" with a small downward arrow to its right.

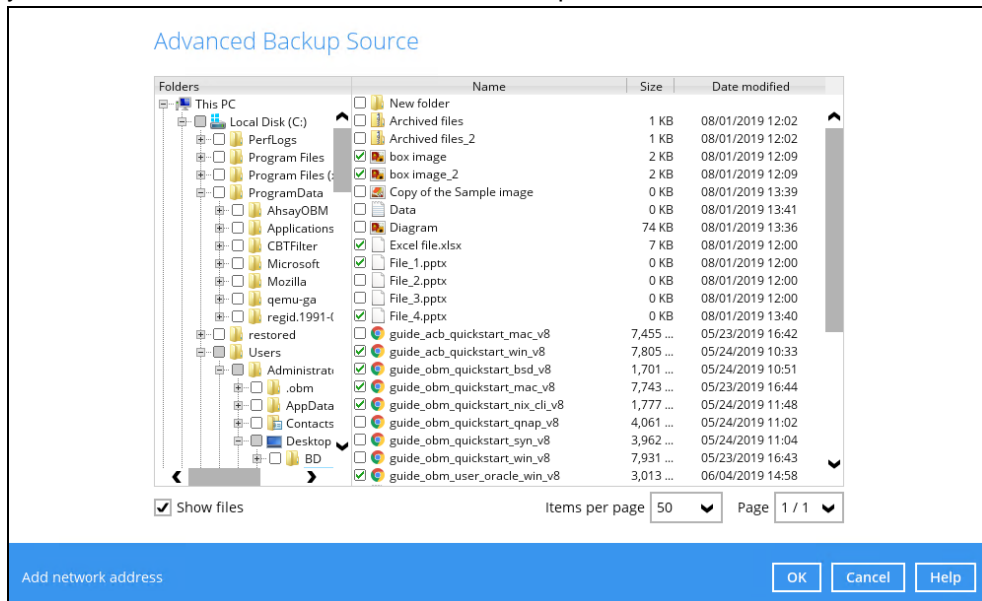
4. In the Backup Source window, select the files and folders for backup. Click **I would like to choose the files to backup** to select individual files for backup.



5. In the Advanced Backup Source window there are three (3) ways to select file(s) and folder(s) for back up:
- i. Select folder(s) to back up all files in the folder(s). Click **OK** to save the selection and close the Advanced Backup Source window.



- ii. Back up only individual file(s) instead of all files in the selected folder(s). Check the **Show files** checkbox at the bottom of the screen. A list of files will appear on the right-hand side. Select the checkbox(es) next to the file(s) to back up. Then, click **OK** to save your selections and close the Advanced Backup Source window.



- iii. Back up file(s) and/or folder(s) located in a network drive. Click the **Add network address** link at the bottom of the screen. In the Network Address window, enter the network address.

**Network Address**

Input the details of network address, and click [OK] to proceed.

Network address (e.g. \\servername.domain\path)

☐ This share requires access credentials

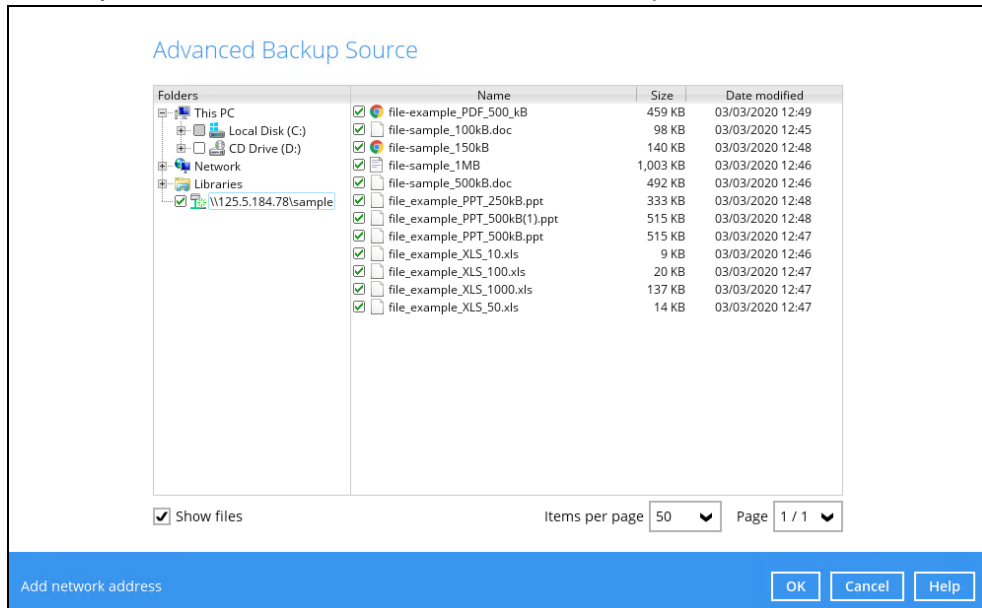
Once a network address is entered, **This share requires access credentials** will be enabled. Check the box beside it if access credentials are required to backup and enter the User name and Password. Otherwise leave it unchecked and click **OK**.

☒ This share requires access credentials

User name (e.g. domain\username)

Password

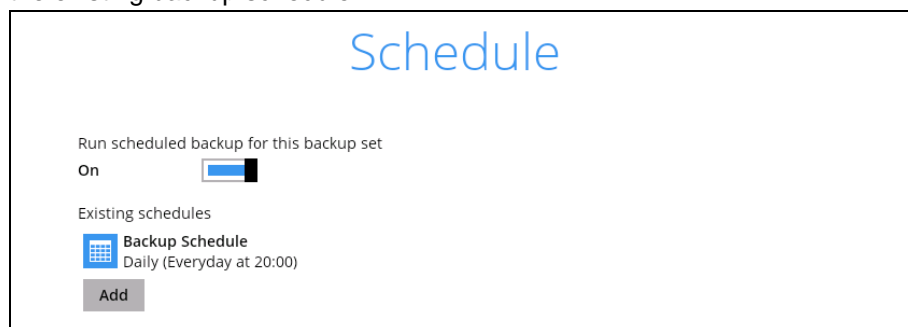
The network drive will now be added and automatically selected. There is still an option to select only specific file(s) to back up by checking the **Show files** checkbox. Click **OK** to save your selections and close the Advanced Backup Source window.



#### NOTE

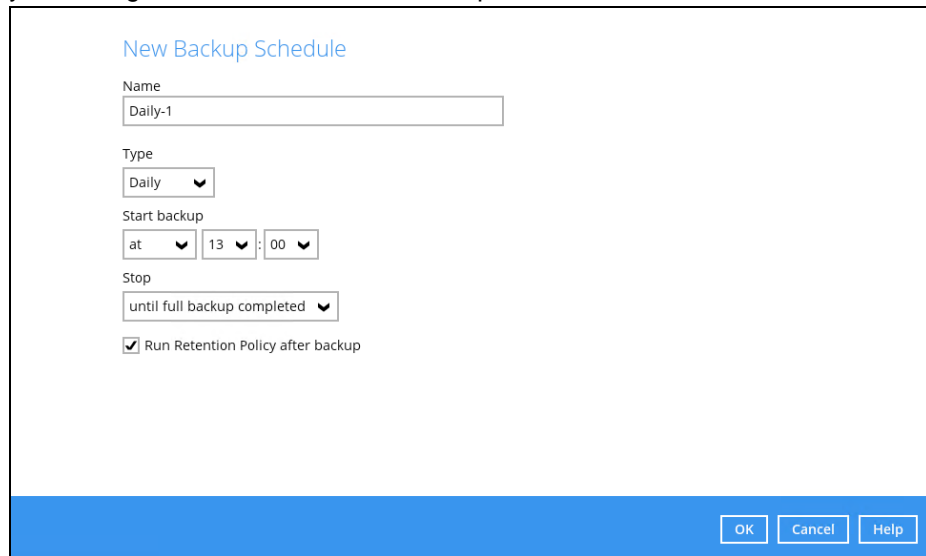
Once a network drive is added, its network credentials may still be edited. For instructions on how to do this please refer to [Appendix F: How to Manage non-Windows based Network Drives](#).

6. In the Backup Source window, click **Next** to proceed.
7. When the **Schedule** window appears, you can configure a backup schedule to automatically run a backup job at your specified time interval. In the Schedule window, the Run scheduled backup for this backup set is **On** by default.
  - In the default backup schedule, there will be a scheduled backup that will be performed daily at 8pm. You can leave it as is or you can modify it by clicking on the existing backup schedule.



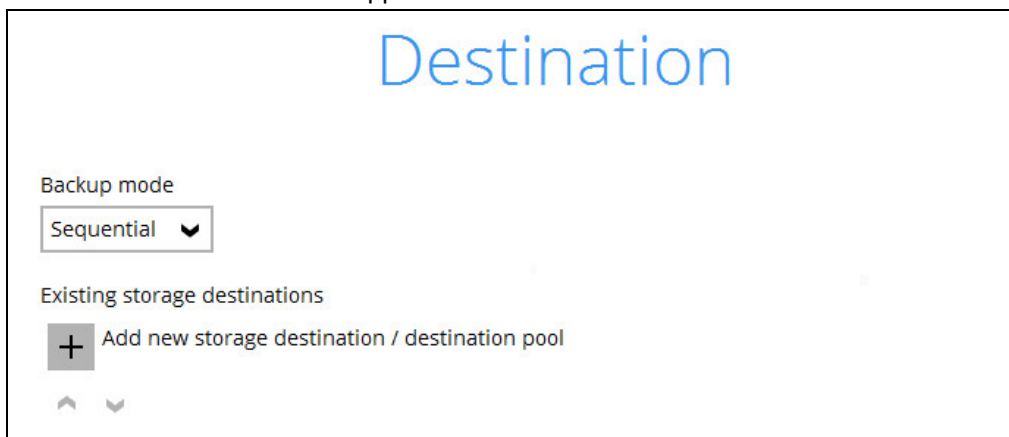


- If you want to add another schedule, click **Add**. When the New Backup Schedule window appears, specify your backup schedule. Then, click **OK** to save your changes and close the New Backup Schedule window.



The 'New Backup Schedule' window is a light blue dialog box. At the top, it has the title 'New Backup Schedule'. Below the title, there are several input fields: 'Name' with the text 'Daily-1', 'Type' with a dropdown menu showing 'Daily', 'Start backup' with a time picker set to 'at 13:00', and 'Stop' with a dropdown menu showing 'until full backup completed'. There is also a checkbox labeled 'Run Retention Policy after backup' which is checked. At the bottom right, there are three buttons: 'OK', 'Cancel', and 'Help'.

8. In case you have added a schedule, it will be shown in the Schedule window. Click **Next** to proceed when you are done setting.
9. The **Destination** window will appear.



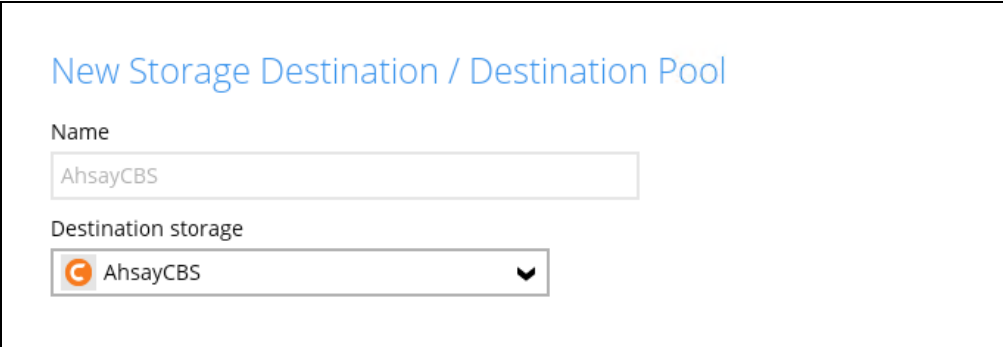
The 'Destination' window is a light blue dialog box. At the top, it has the title 'Destination'. Below the title, there are several input fields: 'Backup mode' with a dropdown menu showing 'Sequential', 'Existing storage destinations' with a list of destinations, and a button with a plus sign and the text 'Add new storage destination / destination pool'. There are also up and down arrow buttons below the list.

Select the appropriate option from the **Backup mode** dropdown menu.

- **Sequential** (default value) – run backup jobs to each backup destination one by one
- **Concurrent** – run backup jobs to all backup destinations at the same time

To select a backup destination for the backup data storage, click **+** next to **Add new storage destination / destination pool**.

10. In the **New Storage Destination / Destination Pool** window, select the destination storage. Then, click **OK** to confirm your selection.




New Storage Destination / Destination Pool

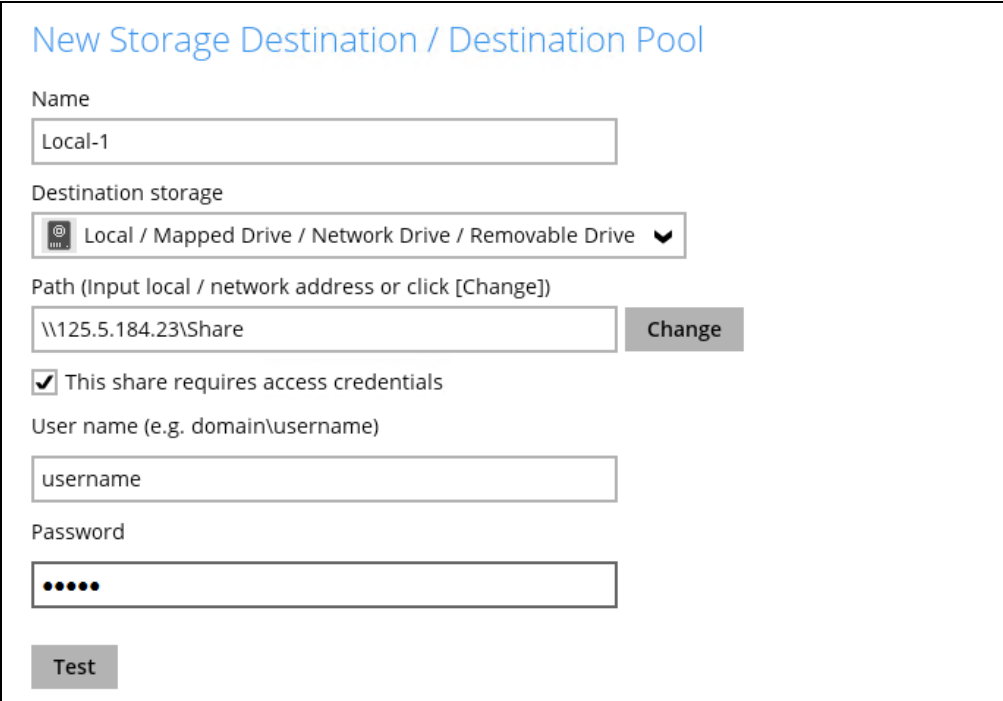
Name

AhsayCBS

Destination storage

 AhsayCBS ▼

If **Local / Mapped Drive / Network Drive / Removable Drive** is selected, you need to specify the path by clicking **Change** to select the path or you can manually enter it. Once a network address is entered, **This share requires access credentials** check box will be enabled. Check the box beside it if access credentials are required to connect to the storage destination and enter the User name and Password. Otherwise, leave it unchecked and click **Test** to check the connection. Click **OK** to add the storage destination.




New Storage Destination / Destination Pool

Name

Local-1

Destination storage

 Local / Mapped Drive / Network Drive / Removable Drive ▼

Path (Input local / network address or click [Change])

\\125.5.184.23\Share Change

☒ This share requires access credentials

User name (e.g. domain\username)

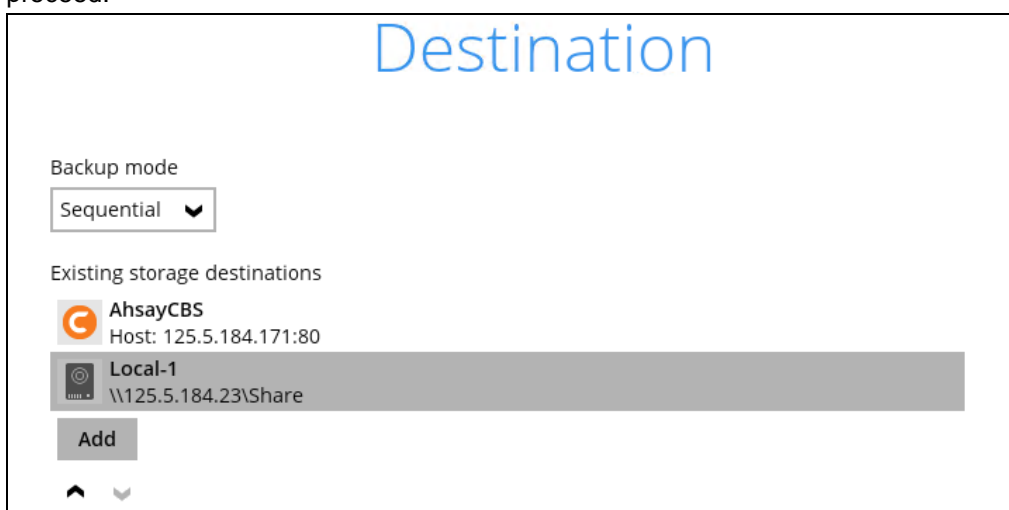
username

Password

•••••

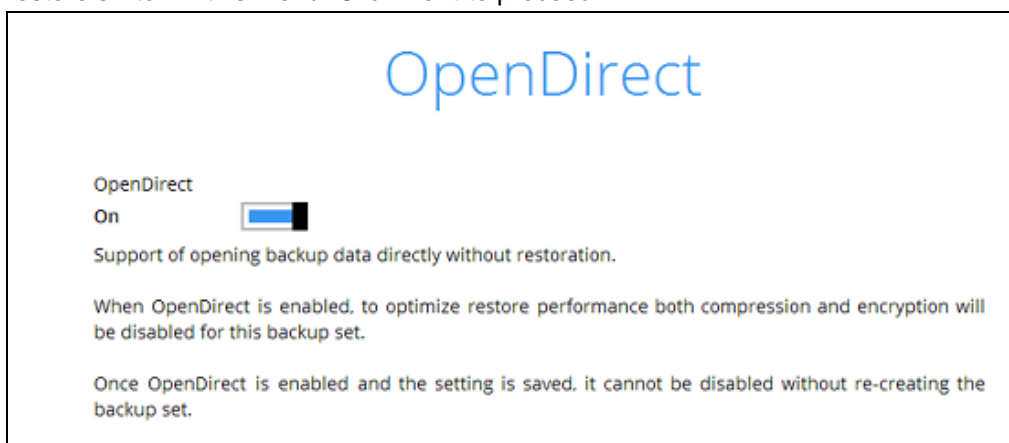
Test

11. In the **Destination** window, your selected storage destination will be shown. Click **Next** to proceed.



The screenshot shows the 'Destination' window. At the top, the title 'Destination' is displayed in blue. Below it, the 'Backup mode' is set to 'Sequential' with a dropdown arrow. Under 'Existing storage destinations', there are two entries: 'AhsayCBS' with host '125.5.184.171:80' and 'Local-1' with path '\\125.5.184.23\\Share'. The 'Local-1' entry is highlighted with a grey background. Below the list is an 'Add' button and two small arrow icons (up and down).

12. If you wish to enable the **OpenDirect Restore** feature, make sure you turn on the OpenDirect restore switch in this menu. Click **Next** to proceed.



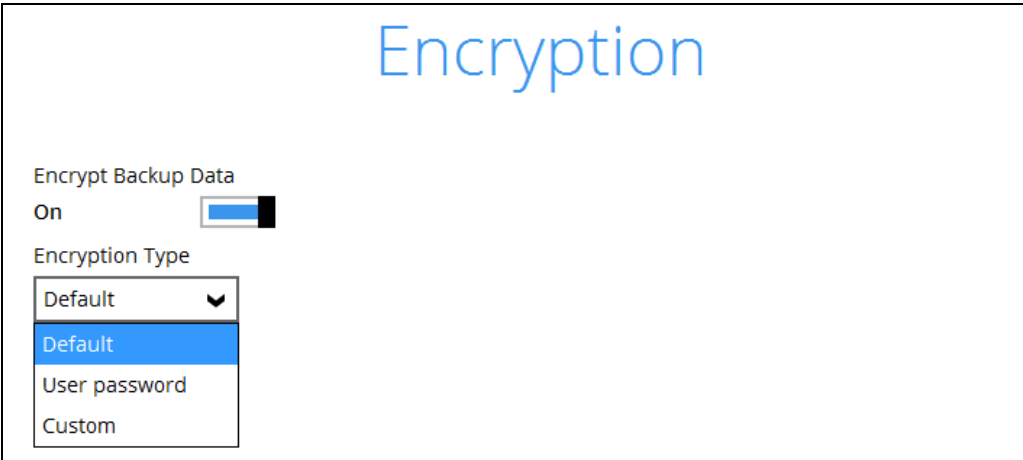
The screenshot shows the 'OpenDirect' window. The title 'OpenDirect' is at the top in blue. Below it, the 'OpenDirect' switch is turned 'On', indicated by a blue slider. A description reads: 'Support of opening backup data directly without restoration.' Below this, a note states: 'When OpenDirect is enabled, to optimize restore performance both compression and encryption will be disabled for this backup set.' At the bottom, another note says: 'Once OpenDirect is enabled and the setting is saved, it cannot be disabled without re-creating the backup set.'

#### NOTES

1. Once the OpenDirect Restore feature is enabled and the backup set is saved, it is **NOT** possible to disable it afterwards, and vice versa. A new backup set will have to be created again if you wish to do so.
2. It is possible to enable both OpenDirect restore and Run Direct restore at the same time. However, AhsayOBM restore job will only allow either OpenDirect or Run Direct to run, but not to run concurrently.
3. OpenDirect restore requires an additional OpenDirect restore module license to work. Contact your backup service provider for further details.
4. OpenDirect restore might not be available, this depends on your backup service provider settings. Contact your backup service provider for more information.

13. **IMPORTANT:** If you have enabled the OpenDirect Restore, backup data will not be compressed and encrypted to optimize restore performance, therefore you can skip to step 16.

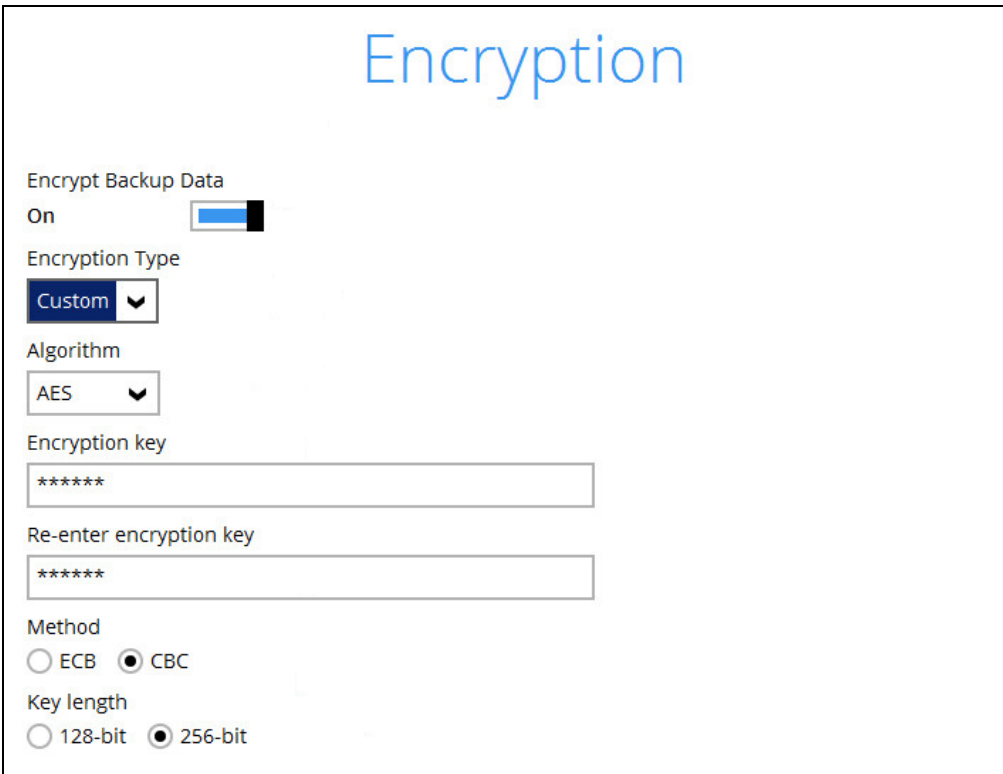
In the Encryption window, the default **Encrypt Backup Data** option is enabled with an encryption key preset by the system which provides the most secure protection.



The screenshot shows the 'Encryption' window. At the top, the word 'Encryption' is displayed in a large blue font. Below it, the 'Encrypt Backup Data' section has a toggle switch set to 'On'. Underneath, the 'Encryption Type' dropdown menu is open, showing four options: 'Default' (highlighted in blue), 'Default', 'User password', and 'Custom'.

You can choose from one of the following three Encryption Type options:

- **Default** – an encryption key with 44 alpha numeric characters will be randomly generated by the system
- **User password** – the encryption key will be the same as the login password of your AhsayOBM at the time when this backup set is created. Please be reminded that if you change the AhsayOBM login password later, the encryption keys of the backup sets previously created with this encryption type will remain unchanged.
- **Custom** – you can customize your encryption key, where you can set your own algorithm, encryption key, method, and key length.



This screenshot shows the 'Encryption' window with the 'Custom' encryption type selected. The 'Encrypt Backup Data' toggle is 'On'. The 'Encryption Type' dropdown is set to 'Custom'. Below this, the 'Algorithm' dropdown is set to 'AES'. The 'Encryption key' field is masked with '\*\*\*\*\*'. The 'Re-enter encryption key' field is also masked with '\*\*\*\*\*'. The 'Method' section has two radio buttons: 'ECB' and 'CBC', with 'CBC' selected. The 'Key length' section has two radio buttons: '128-bit' and '256-bit', with '256-bit' selected.

**Note:** For best practice on managing your encryption key, refer to the following Wiki article.  
[http://wiki.ahsay.com/doku.php?id=public:8015\\_faq:best\\_practices\\_for\\_managing\\_encryption\\_key](http://wiki.ahsay.com/doku.php?id=public:8015_faq:best_practices_for_managing_encryption_key)

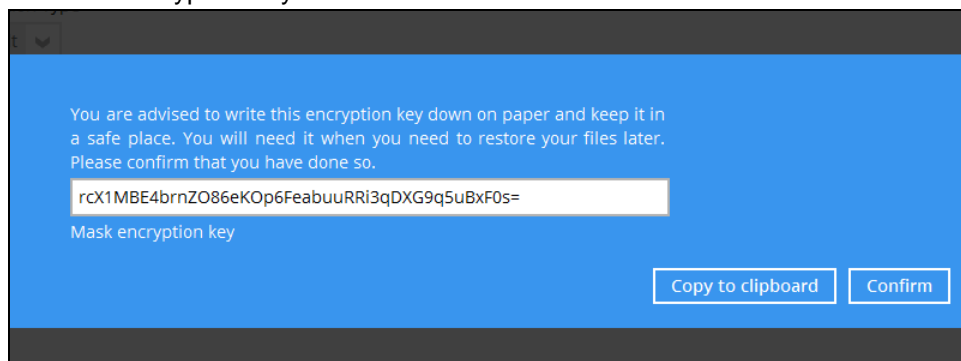
Click **Next** when you are done setting.

14. If you have enabled the Encryption Key feature in the previous step, the following pop-up window shows, no matter which encryption type you have selected.



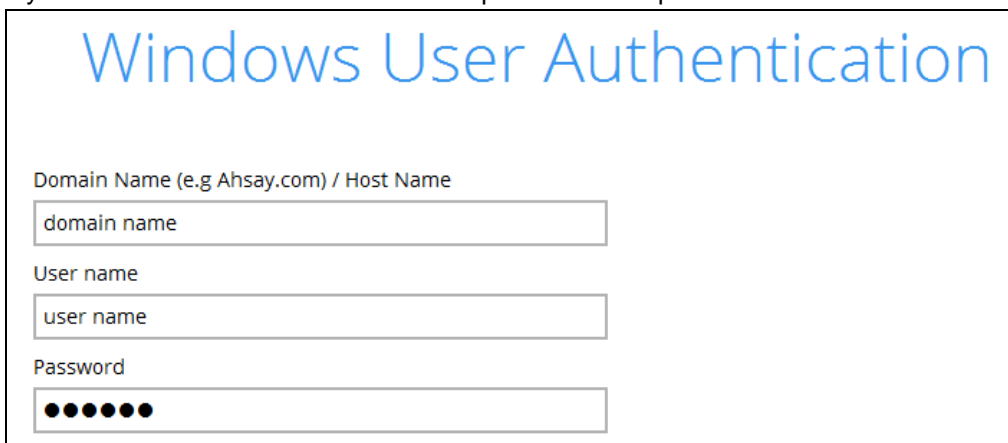
The pop-up window has the following three options to choose from:

- **Unmask encryption key** – The encryption key is masked by default. Click this option to show the encryption key.



- **Copy to clipboard** – Click to copy the encryption key, then you can paste it in another location of your choice.
- **Confirm** – Click to exit this pop-up window and proceed to the next step.

15. The following screen prompts you to enter the Windows login credentials for user authentication if you have enabled the Schedule Backup feature in step 8.



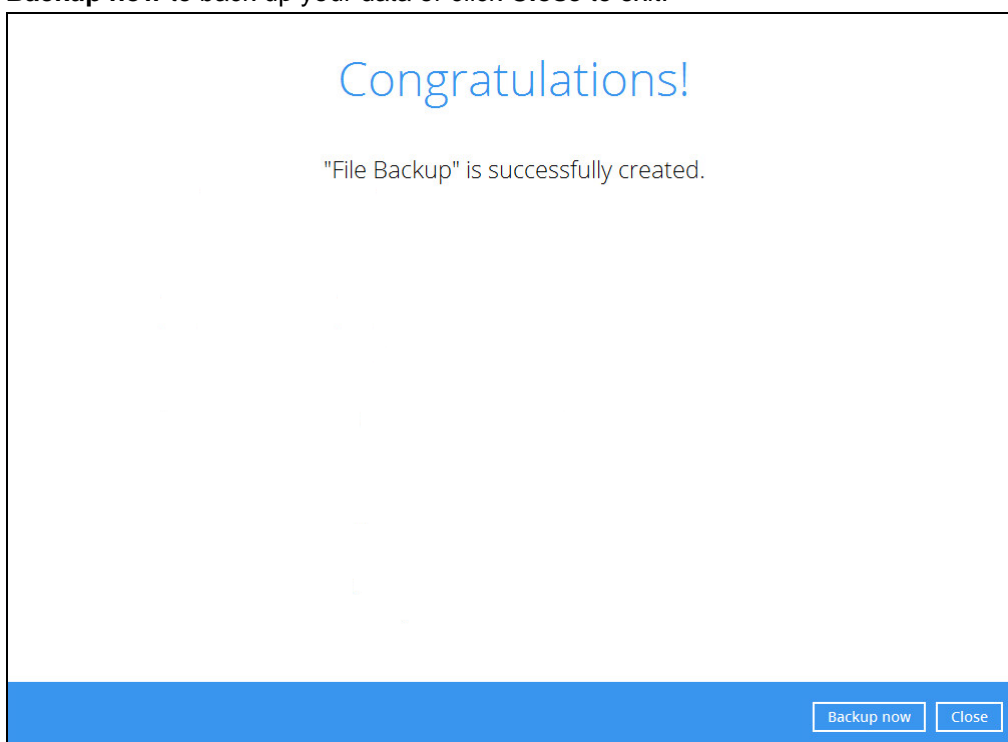
The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Windows User Authentication" in blue text. Below the title, there are three input fields. The first is labeled "Domain Name (e.g Ahsay.com) / Host Name" and contains the text "domain name". The second is labeled "User name" and contains the text "user name". The third is labeled "Password" and contains seven black dots. The dialog box has a thin black border.

**NOTE**

If you have selected to back up individual folder(s) / file(s) on your local computer's drive in step 5, the Windows User Authentication request will be bypassed and therefore the screen shown above will not display even though the Schedule Backup feature has been turned on.

It is recommended to enter the information of user with Administrator privilege to support backup of network drives.

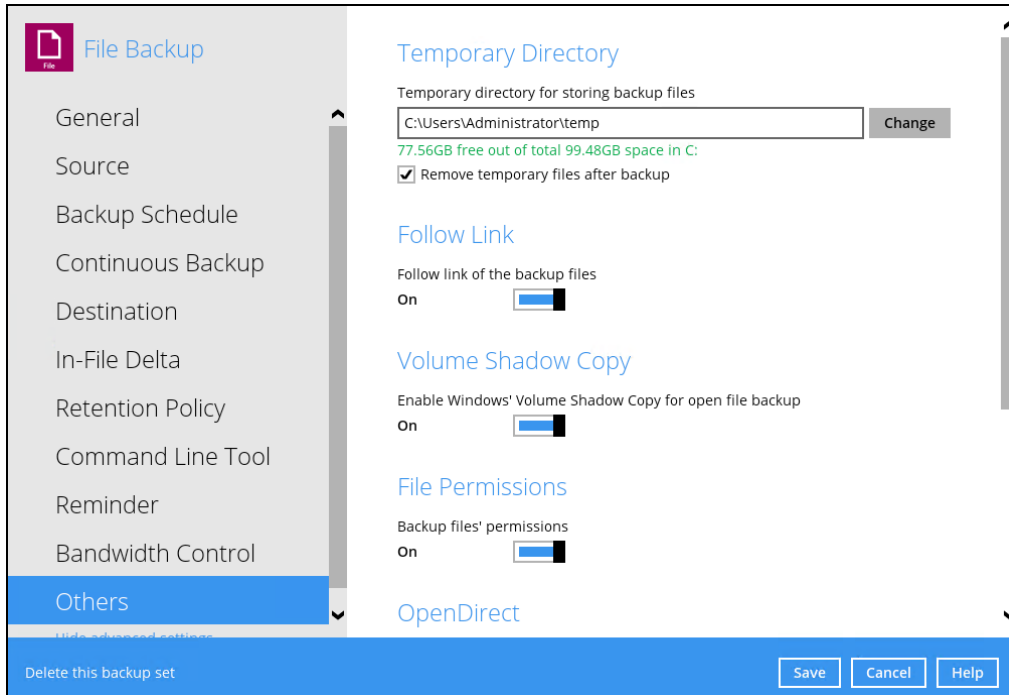
16. Upon successful creation of the backup set, the following screen will appear. You can click **Backup now** to back up your data or click **Close** to exit.



The screenshot shows a dialog box with a white background and a blue border. At the top, the word "Congratulations!" is written in large blue font. Below it, the text "\"File Backup\" is successfully created." is displayed in a smaller black font. At the bottom of the dialog box, there is a blue bar containing two buttons: "Backup now" and "Close", both in white text.

17. Based on [Best Practices and Recommendations](#), it is highly recommended to change the **Temporary Directory**. Select another location with sufficient free disk space other than Drive C.

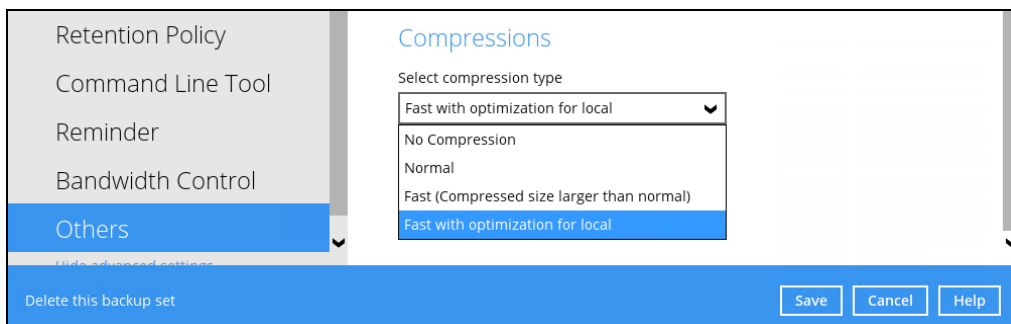
Go to **Others > Temporary Directory**. Click **Change** to browse for another location.



18. Optional: Select your preferred **Compression** type. By default, the compression is Fast with optimization for local.

Go to **Others > Compressions**. Select from the following:

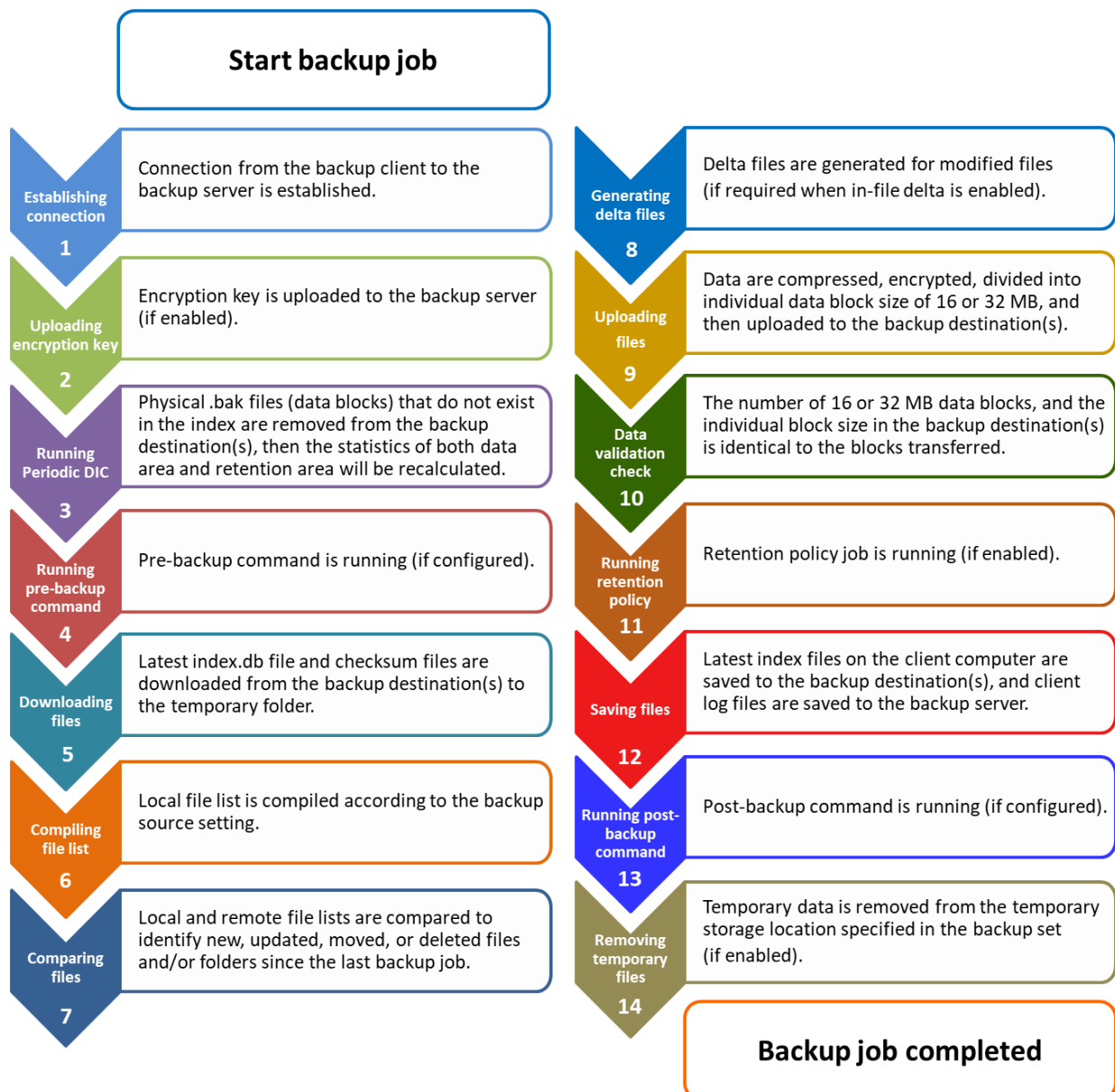
- No Compression
- Normal
- Fast (Compressed size larger than normal)
- Fast with optimization for local



## 10 Overview on the Backup Process

The following steps are performed during a backup job. For an overview of the detailed process for Steps 3, 5, 10, and 12, please refer to the following chapters.

- [Periodic Data Integrity Check \(PDIC\) Process \(Step 3\)](#)
- Backup Set Index Handling Process
  - [Start Backup Job \(Step 5\)](#)
  - [Completed Backup Job \(Step 12\)](#)
- [Data Validation Check Process \(Step 10\)](#)





## 10.1 Periodic Data Integrity Check (PDIC) Process

For AhsayOBM v8.3.6.0 (or above), the PDIC will run on the first backup job that falls on the corresponding day of the week from **Monday to Friday**.

To minimize the impact of the potential load of large number of PDIC jobs running at the same time on the AhsayCBS server, the schedule of a PDIC job for each backup set is automatically determined by the result of the following formula:

***PDIC schedule = %BackupSetID% modulo 5***

or

***%BackupSetID% mod 5***

The calculated **result** will map to the corresponding day of the week (i.e., from Monday to Friday).

0	Monday
1	Tuesday
2	Wednesday
3	Thursday
4	Friday

**NOTE: The PDIC schedule cannot be changed.**

**Example:**

Backup set ID: 1594627447932

Calculation:  $1594627447932 \bmod 5 = 2$

2	Wednesday
---	-----------

In this example:

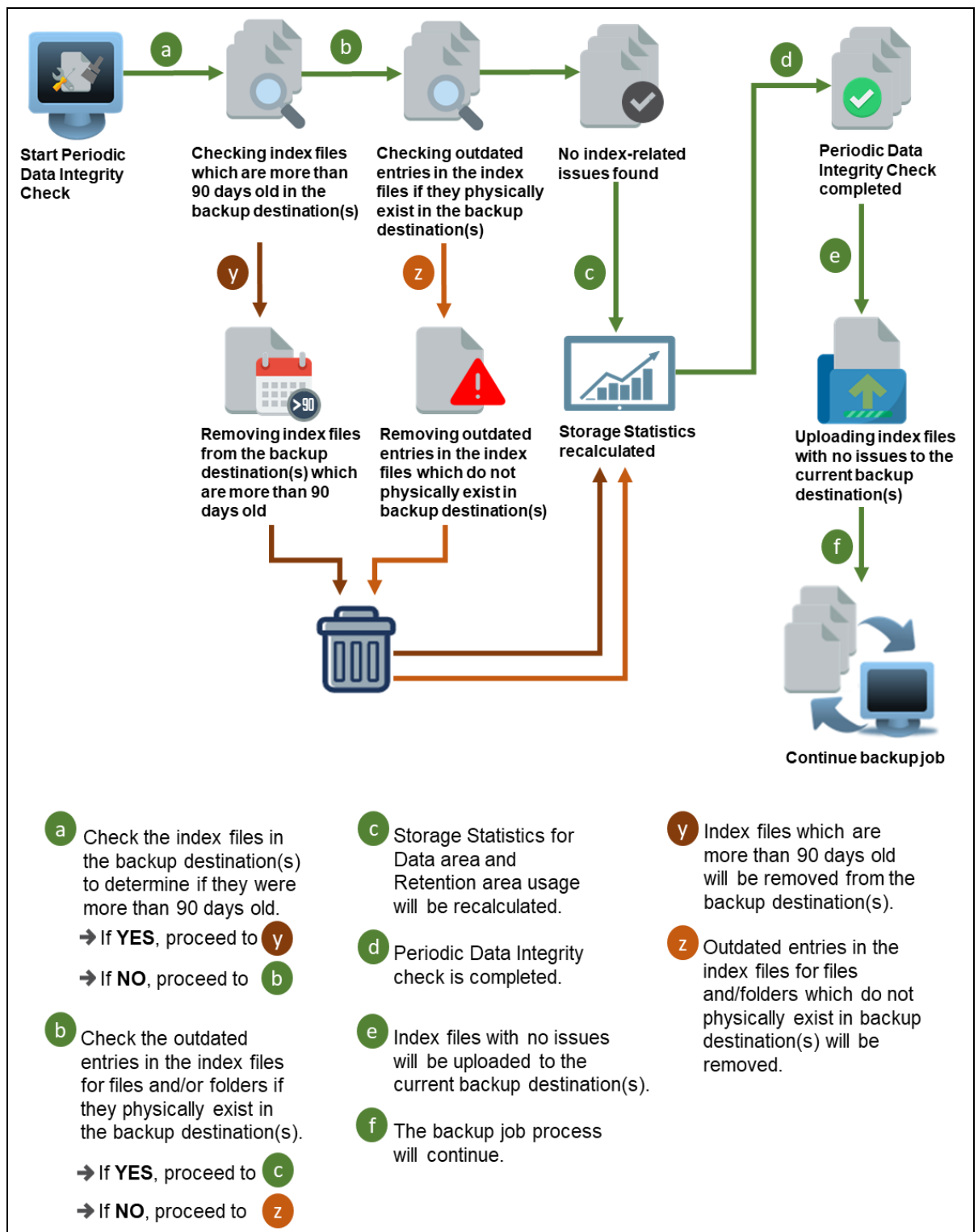
- the PDIC will run on the first backup job that falls on Wednesday; or
- if there is no active backup job(s) running from Monday to Friday, then the PDIC will run on the next available backup job.

### NOTES

Although according to the PDIC formula for determining the schedule is ***%BackupSetID% mod 5***, this schedule only applies if the previous PDIC job was actually run more than 7 days prior.

Under certain conditions, the PDIC may not run strictly according to this formula. For example:

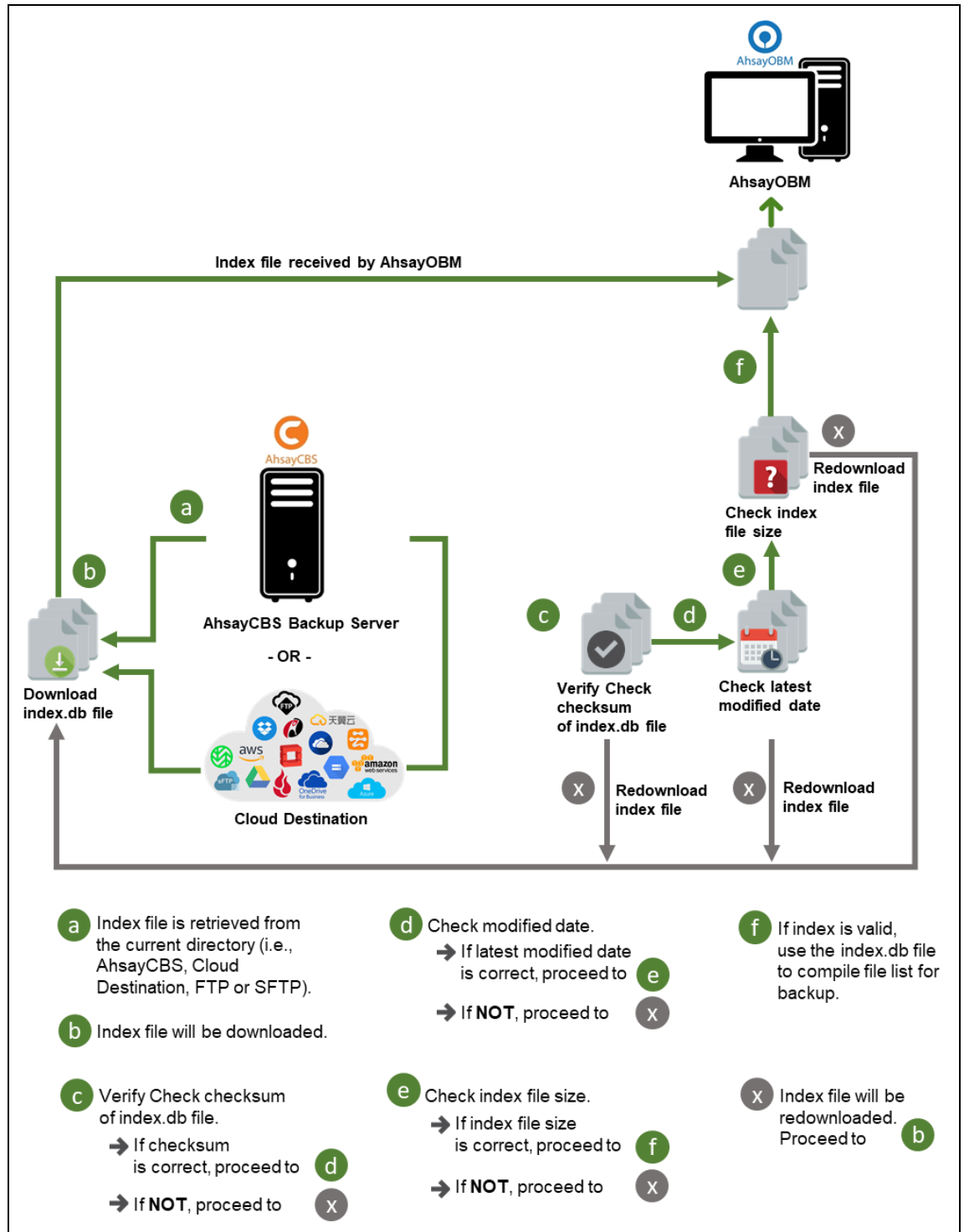
1. If AhsayOBM was upgraded to v8.5 (or above) from an older version v6, v7, or pre-8.3.6.0 version. In this case, the PDIC job will run on the first backup job after upgrade.
2. If backup jobs for a backup set are not run on a regular daily backup schedule (for example: on a weekly or monthly schedule), then the PDIC job will run if it detects that the previous PDIC job was run more than 7 days ago.
3. Every time a data integrity check (DIC) is run, the latest PDIC run date is reset, the next PDIC job will run after 7 days.
4. The PDIC job will not run if there are no files in both the data and retention areas. For example: a newly created backup set with no backup job history or a backup set where all the data has been deleted using the [Delete Backup Data](#) feature.
5. The PDIC job will not run on a backup set that contains any data which still in v6 format. It will only run if all v6 data format on a backup set has undergone data migration to v8 block format.



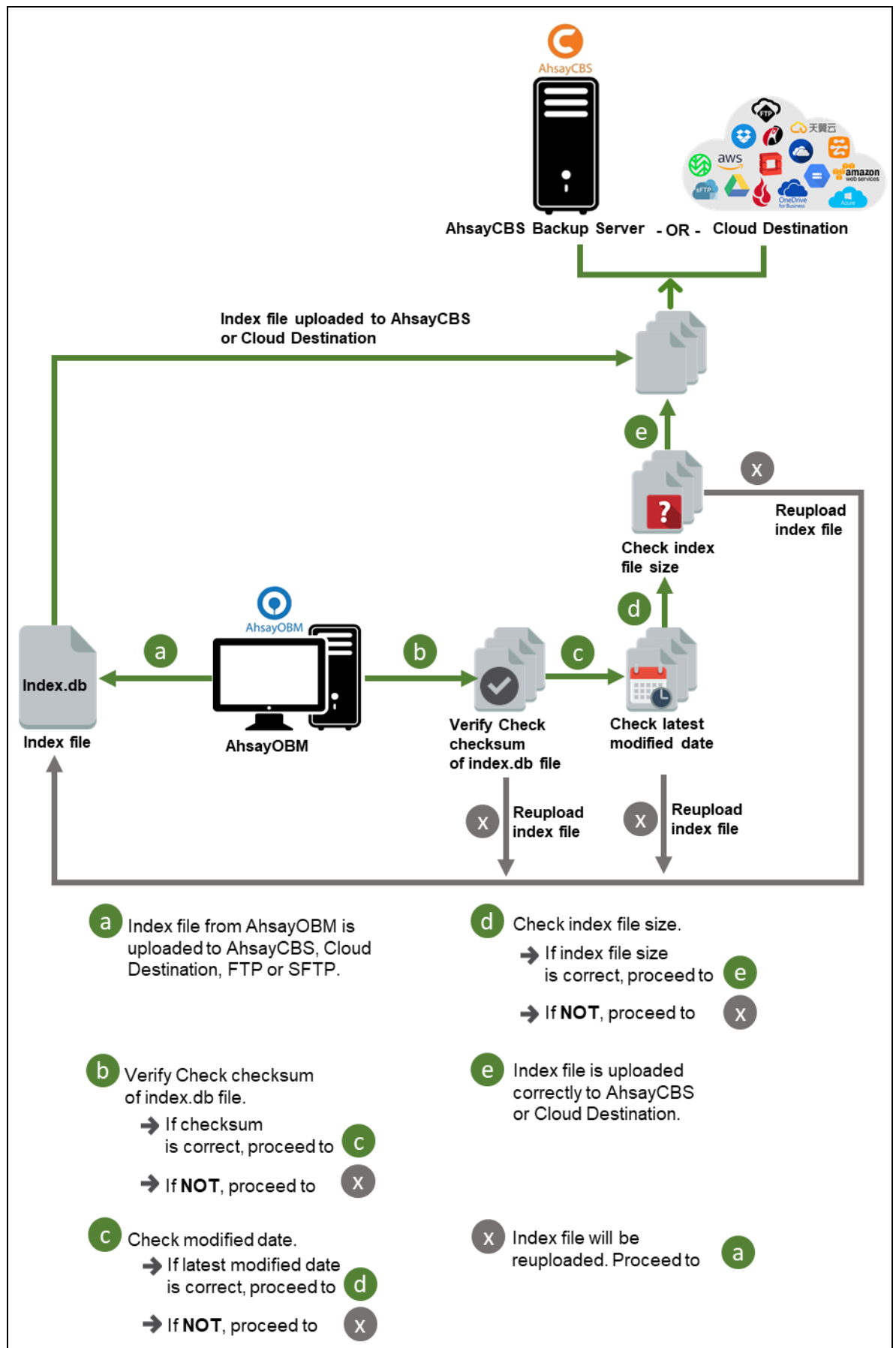
## 10.2 Backup Set Index Handling Process

To minimize the possibility of index related issues affecting backups, each time index files are downloaded from and uploaded to backup destination(s); the file size, last modified date, and checksum is verified to ensure index file integrity.

### 10.2.1 Start Backup Job

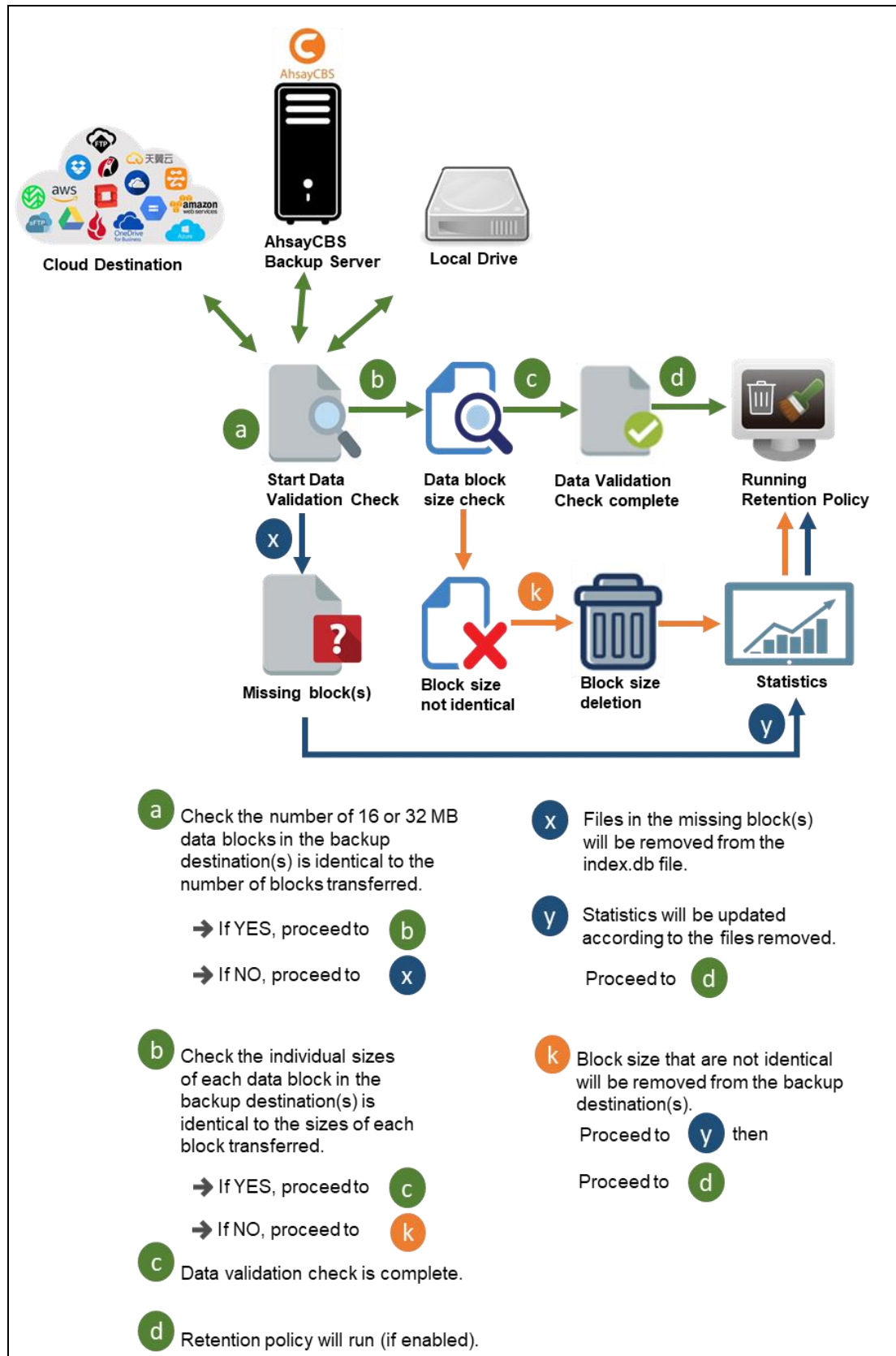


## 10.2.2 Completed Backup Job



## 10.3 Data Validation Check Process

As an additional measure to ensure that all files transferred to the backup destination(s) are received and saved correctly, both the number of 16 or 32 MB data block files and the size of each block file are checked again after the files are transferred.



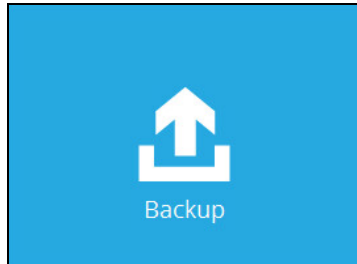
## 11 Run Backup Jobs

### 11.1 Login to AhsayOBM

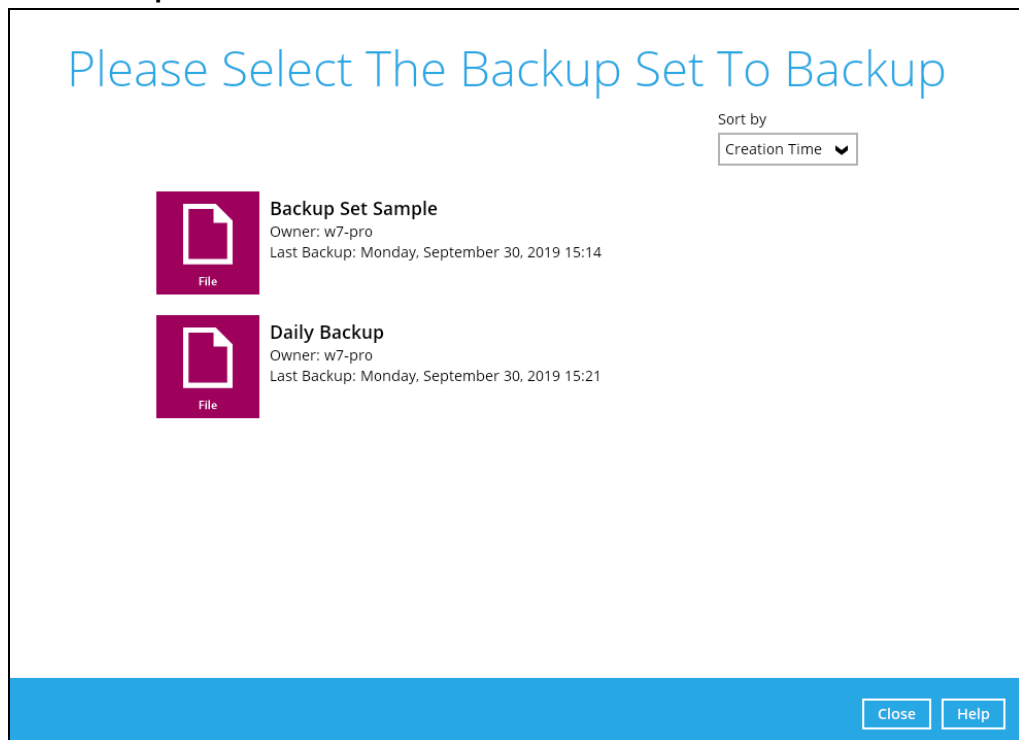
Login to the AhsayOBM application according to the instructions in [Chapter 7 Start AhsayOBM](#).

### 11.2 Start a Manual Backup


1. Click the **Backup** icon on the main interface of AhsayOBM.



2. Select the backup set which you would like to start a backup for. In case you want to modify the In-File Delta type, Destinations and Retention Policy settings, click **Show advanced option**.




3. When advanced options are shown, it is recommended that you tick the checkbox next to **Run Retention Policy after backup** in the Retention Policy section at the bottom. This will help you save hard disk quota in the long run. In the In-File Delta type section, the following three options are available:

 **Daily Backup**

Backup set type  
File

In-File Delta type  
☐ Full  
☐ Differential  
☒ Incremental


Destinations  
☒  AhsayCBS (Host: 10.16.10.30:80)

Retention Policy  
☒ Run Retention Policy after backup

[Hide advanced option](#)

- **Full** – A full backup captures all the data that you want to protect. When you run a backup job for the first time, AhsayOBM will run a full backup regardless of the in-file delta setting.
- **Differential** – A differential backup captures only the changes made as compared with the last uploaded full file only (i.e. changes since the last full backup, not since the last differential backup).
- **Incremental** – An incremental backup captures only the changes made as compared with the last uploaded full or delta file (i.e. changes since the last incremental backup).

4. Click Backup to start the backup job. The status will be shown.

 **AhsayCBS (Host: 10.16.10.30:80)**

[New File] C:\Users\Administrator\Documents\Test Files\cbs-win-v717252.zip (70%)


Estimated time left 46 sec (405.98M)

Backed up 80.94M (7 files, 332 directories, 0 link)

Elapsed time 22 sec

Transfer rate 72.88Mbit/s

5. When the backup is completed, the progress bar will be green in color and the message “Backup Completed Successfully” will appear.

 **AhsayCBS (Host: 10.16.10.30:80)**


✓ Backup Completed Successfully

Estimated time left 0 sec

Backed up 399.12k (22 files, 5 directories, 0 link)

Elapsed time 8 sec

Transfer rate 503.27kbit/s

6. You can click the  **View** icon on the right-hand side to check the log. A window will pop up to show the log. Click **Close** to exit the pop-up window.

Backup set Daily Backup
Destination AhsayCBS

Log 09/30/2019 15:34
Show All

Type	Log	Time
	The In-File Delta Backup feature is not enabled on this account. Please be aware that files are being backed up in their ent...	09/30/2019 15:34:22
	Start [ AhsayOBM v8.3.0.0 ]	09/30/2019 15:34:22
	Saving encrypted backup set encryption keys to server...	09/30/2019 15:34:22
	Start Backup ... [In-File Delta: Full]	09/30/2019 15:34:23
	Using Temporary Directory C:\Users\Administrator\temp\1569828013271\OBS@1569828075210	09/30/2019 15:34:23
	Start running pre-commands	09/30/2019 15:34:24
	Finished running pre-commands	09/30/2019 15:34:24
	Downloading server file list...	09/30/2019 15:34:24
	Downloading server file list... Completed	09/30/2019 15:34:24
	Contact your service provider to enable [Volume Shadow Copy] support	09/30/2019 15:34:25
	Reading backup source from hard disk...	09/30/2019 15:34:25
	Reading backup source from hard disk... Completed	09/30/2019 15:34:26
	[New Directory]... C:\	09/30/2019 15:34:26
	[New Directory]... C:\Users	09/30/2019 15:34:26
	[New Directory]... C:\Users\Administrator	09/30/2019 15:34:26
	[New Directory]... C:\Users\Administrator\Documents	09/30/2019 15:34:26
	[New Directory]... C:\Users\Administrator\Documents\Test Files	09/30/2019 15:34:26
	[New File]... 100% of "C:\Users\Administrator\Documents\Test Files\Copy of the Sample image.bmp"	09/30/2019 15:34:26
	[New File]... 100% of "C:\Users\Administrator\Documents\Test Files\Data.txt"	09/30/2019 15:34:26
	[New File]... 21% of "C:\Users\Administrator\Documents\Test Files\Diagram.png"	09/30/2019 15:34:27
	[New File]... 32% of "C:\Users\Administrator\Documents\Test Files\Diagram.png"	09/30/2019 15:34:27

Logs per page 50
Page 1 / 2



## 12 Restore Data

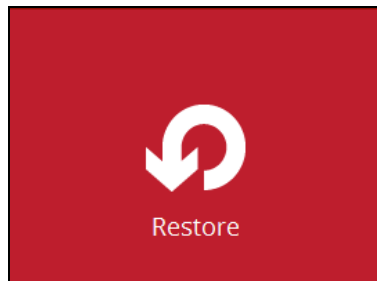
### 12.1 Restore Method

There are two restore methods available, the traditional restore and OpenDirect restore. OpenDirect restore applies only to File backup sets with OpenDirect feature enabled.

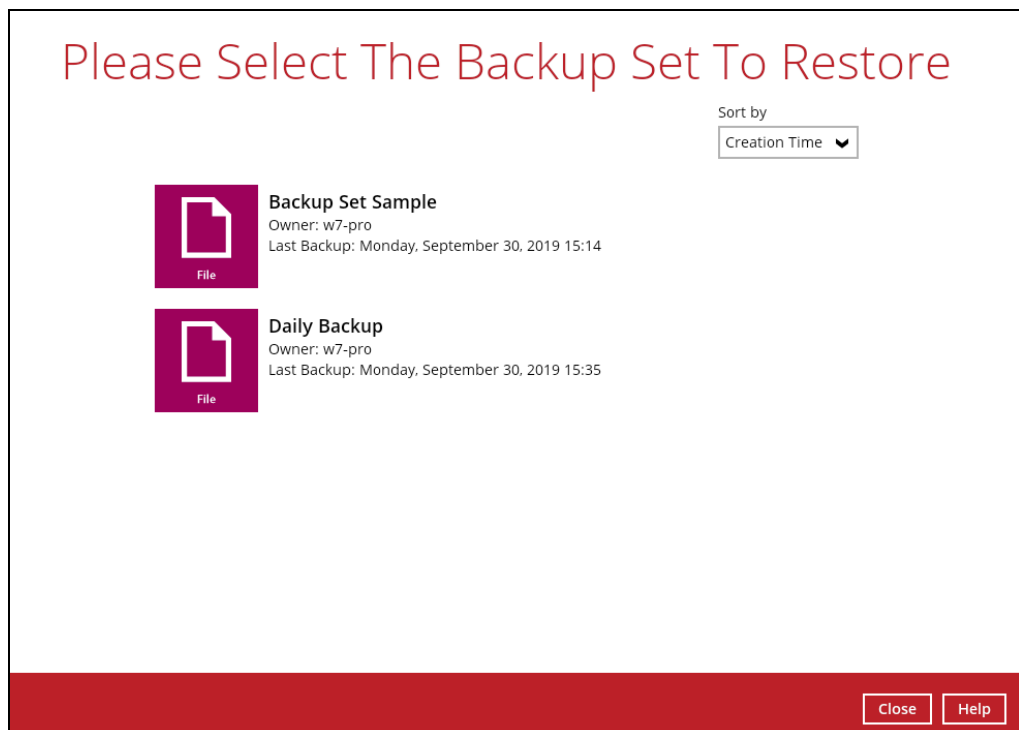
For more details on the differences of the two restore methods, refer to [Benefits of using OpenDirect Restore](#).

#### 12.1.1 Traditional Restore

1. Log in to the AhsayOBM application according to the instructions in section [Login to AhsayOBM](#).
2. Click the **Restore** icon on the AhsayOBM main interface.



3. All the available backup sets for restore will be listed. Select the backup set that you would like to restore data from.



4. Select where you would like to restore your data from.



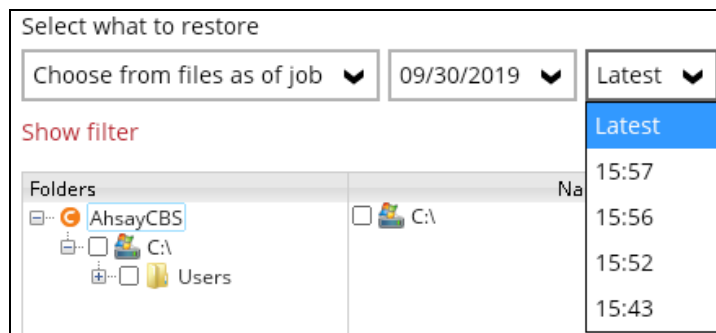
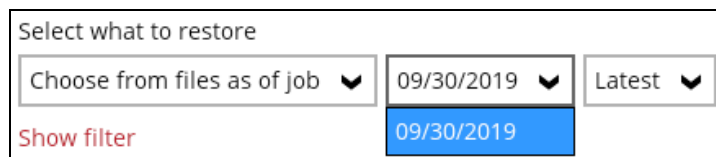
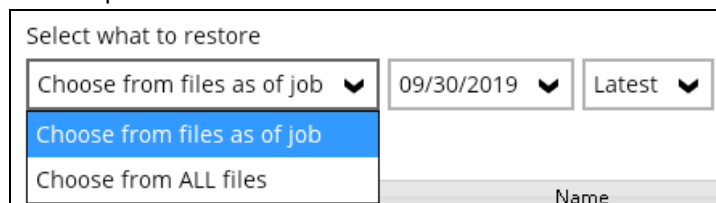
5. Select **Normal restore**.



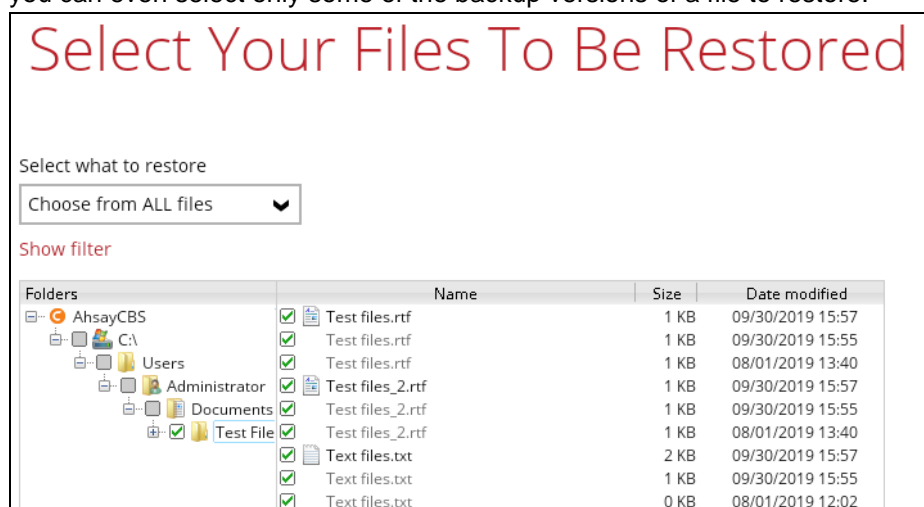
6. Select to restore files from a specific backup job, or from all files available, then select the files or folders that you would like to restore.

There are two options from the **Select what to restore** dropdown menu:

- **Choose from files as of job** – This option allows you to select a backup version from a specific date and time to restore.



- **Choose from ALL files** – This option allows you to restore all the available backup versions for this backup set. Among all the available backup versions, you can even select only some of the backup versions of a file to restore.



The following is an example showing all the available backup versions of the file **Test files.rtf**. The latest version is shown in solid black color and all the previous versions are shown in grey color. You can identify the file version from the **Date modified** column.

	Name	Size	Date modified
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Test files.rtf	1 KB	09/30/2019 15:57
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Test files.rtf	1 KB	09/30/2019 15:55
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Test files.rtf	1 KB	08/01/2019 13:40
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Test files_2.rtf	1 KB	09/30/2019 15:57
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Test files_2.rtf	1 KB	09/30/2019 15:55
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Test files_2.rtf	1 KB	08/01/2019 13:40
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Text files.txt	2 KB	09/30/2019 15:57
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Text files.txt	1 KB	09/30/2019 15:55
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Text files.txt	0 KB	08/01/2019 12:02

When the restore is done, you will see all the selected backup versions in the restore destination. The latest backup version has the file name as the original file, while the previous versions have the time stamps added to their file names for easy identification.

Name	Date modified	Type	Size
Test files	9/30/2019 3:57 PM	Rich Text Docu...	1 KB
Test files_2	9/30/2019 3:57 PM	Rich Text Docu...	1 KB
Test files_2_2019-09-30-15-43-06	8/1/2019 1:40 PM	Rich Text Docu...	1 KB
Test files_2_2019-09-30-15-56-12	9/30/2019 3:55 PM	Rich Text Docu...	1 KB
Test files_2019-09-30-15-43-06	8/1/2019 1:40 PM	Rich Text Docu...	1 KB
Test files_2019-09-30-15-56-12	9/30/2019 3:56 PM	Rich Text Docu...	1 KB
Text files	9/30/2019 3:57 PM	Text Document	2 KB
Text files_2019-09-30-15-43-06	8/1/2019 12:02 PM	Text Document	0 KB
Text files_2019-09-30-15-56-12	9/30/2019 3:55 PM	Text Document	1 KB

7. Click the **Show files** checkbox to select individual files for restoration. Click **Next** to proceed when you are done with the selections.

8. Select to restore the files to their **Original location**, or to an **Alternate location**. Then, click **Next** to proceed.

- **Original location** – The backed up data will be restored to the computer running AhsayOBM under the same directory path as on the machine storing the backup source. For example, if the backup source files are stored under **Users/[User's Name]/Downloads** folder, the data will be restored to **Users/[User's Name]/Downloads** as well on the computer running AhsayOBM.

Choose Where The Files To Be Restored

Restore files to

☒ Original location

☐ Alternate location

☐ This share requires access credentials

Show advanced option

- **Alternate location** – You can choose to restore the data to a location of your choice on the computer where AhsayOBM is running or to a network drive.
- i. To restore to a location of your choice on the computer where AhsayOBM is running, click Browse. Select the location and click **OK**.

Choose Where The Files To Be Restored

Restore files to

☐ Original location

☒ Alternate location

☐ This share requires access credentials

Show advanced option

Change Path

Look in: alternate

Recent Items

Desktop

Documents

This PC

Folder name: C:\Users\Administrator\Desktop\alternate

Files of type: All Files

OK

Cancel

- ii. To restore to a network drive, enter the network address where you want the backup files to be restored.

Choose Where The Files To Be Restored

Restore files to

☐ Original location

☒ Alternate location

☐ This share requires access credentials

Show advanced option

Browse

Check the box beside **This share requires access credentials** if the network drive was set up with password. Enter the User name and Password.

## Choose Where The Files To Be Restored

Restore files to

☐ Original location

☒ Alternate location

☒ This share requires access credentials

User name (e.g. domain\username)

Password

Show advanced option

9. Click **Show advanced option** to configure other restore settings:

Restore files to

☒ Original location

☐ Alternate location

Show advanced option

☐ Restore file permissions

☐ Delete extra files

☒ Follow Link

☐ Resolve Link

☐ Verify checksum of in-file delta files during restore

Hide advanced option

⦿ **Restore file permissions**

Restore file permissions are disabled by default. When you perform a file restore on shared files or folders using a shared computer, it is recommended that you enable Restore file permissions by ticking the checkbox so that the files restored will not be fully accessible to everyone using the shared computer.

⦿ **Delete extra files**

By enabling this option, the restore process will attempt to synchronize the selected restore source with the restore destination, making sure the data in the restore destination is exactly the same as the restore source. Any data created after backup will be treated as “extra files” and will be deleted from the restore source if this feature is enabled.

**Example:**

- i) Two files are created under the **Document folder 01**, namely doc 1 & doc 2.

Document folder 01	
Name	
doc 1.docx	Files created initially
doc 2.docx	

- ii) A backup is performed for folder **Document folder 01**.

- iii) Two new files are created, namely doc 3 & doc 4.

Document folder 01	
Name	
doc 1.docx	Files created BEFORE backup
doc 2.docx	
doc 3.docx	Files created AFTER backup
doc 4.docx	

- iv) A restore is performed for the **Document folder 01**, with **Delete extra files** option enabled.

- v) Since doc 3 & doc 4 have never been backed up, therefore they will be deleted from **Document folder 01**, leaving only the two files that have been backed up.

Document folder 01	
Name	
doc 1.docx	Files remain after restore
doc 2.docx	

**WARNING**

Please exercise extra caution when enabling this feature. Consider what data in the restore destination has not been backed up and what impact it would cause if those data is deleted.

Prior to the data restore and synchronization, a warning message shows as the one shown below. Only clicking **Yes** will the “extra file” be deleted. You can click **Apply to all** to confirm deleting all the “extra files” at a time.

• **Follow Link (Enabled by default)**

When this option is enabled, not only the symbolic link or junction point will be restored, the directories and files that the symbolic link or junction point links to will also be restored.

The table below summarizes the behaviors when a restore is performed with different settings.

Follow Link	Restore to	Behavior
Enabled	Original location	Symbolic link or junction point is restored to the original backup location.

		Target directories or files are also restored to the original backup location.
	<b>Alternate location</b>	Symbolic link or junction point is restored to the location specified. Target directories or files are also restored to the alternate location specified.
<b>Disabled</b>	<b>Original location</b>	Symbolic link or junction point is restored to the original backup location. Target directories or files are <b>NOT</b> restored to the original backup location.
	<b>Alternate location</b>	Symbolic link or junction point is restored to the location specified. Target directories or files are <b>NOT</b> restored to the alternate location specified.

#### ⦿ **Resolve link (Only for restoring to Alternate Location)**

This option must be used in conjunction with the **Follow Link** option. When this option is enabled, the symbolic link, as well as the directories and files that the symbolic link links to will also be restored in the alternate location you have chosen. That means the symbolic link will point to the alternate location instead of the original location.

The table below summarizes the behaviors when a restore is performed with this option turned on and off.

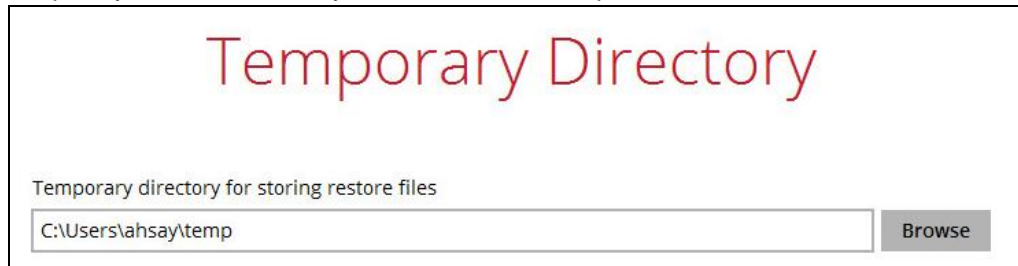
<b>Resolve Link</b>	<b>Behavior</b>
<b>Enabled</b>	Symbolic link is restored to the alternate location specified, with its target directories and files also restored to the same location in their relative path.  Target of the link is updated to the new relative path. In other word, the link now points to the new alternate location.
<b>Disabled</b>	Symbolic link is restored to the alternate location specified, with its target directories and files also restored to the same location in their relative path.  However, target of the link is NOT updated to the new relative path. In other word, the link still points to the original location.

#### ⦿ **Verify checksum of in-file delta files during restore**

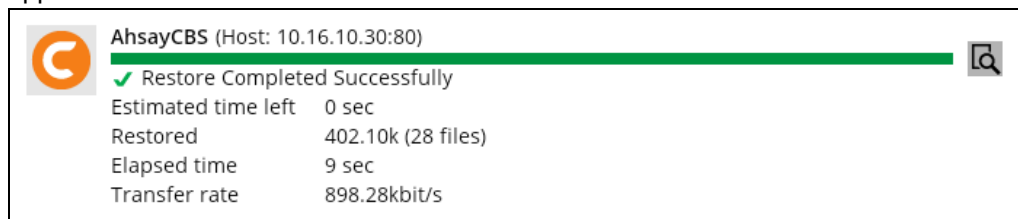
Verify checksum of in-file delta files during restore is disabled by default. When you perform restore for non-RunDirect backup set, you can enable the feature by ticking the checkbox so that the checksum of in-file delta files will be verified. As the feature will make the restore process time longer, it is recommended to enable the feature only if you want to verify if the merged file were correct.


10. Click **Next** to proceed when you are done with the settings.
11. Select the temporary directory for storing temporary files, such as delta files, when they are being merged.






By default, the temporary files are stored under the temp directory of the user profile directory. In case the same directory path does not exist in the computer you are running AhsayOBM, you have to click **Browse** to define a new location for storing the temporary files. Otherwise, you will not be able to perform a restore.



12. Click **Restore** to start the restore. The status will be shown.
13. When the restore is completed, the message "Restore Completed Successfully" will appear.



You can click the  **View** icon on the right-hand side to check the log. A window will pop up to show the log. Click **Close** to exit the pop-up window.

Show All		
Type	Log	Time
	Start [ AhsayOBM v8.3.3.5 ]	03/05/2020 14:45:12
	Initializing decrypt action...	03/05/2020 14:45:12
	Initializing decrypt action... Completed	03/05/2020 14:45:12
	Creating new directory... "\\125.5.184.23\restored\125.5.184.23"	03/05/2020 14:45:13
	Creating new directory... "\\125.5.184.23\restored\125.5.184.23\Share"	03/05/2020 14:45:14

14. In the Restore window, click **Cancel** to close the Restore window.
15. To exit AhsayOBM, click the "x" on the top right corner. A message will appear to ask for your confirmation. Click **Yes** to close the application. If you wish to run AhsayOBM again, you will then have to launch it again.



## 12.1.2 OpenDirect Restore

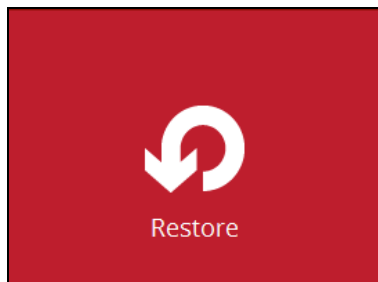
This restore method applies to backup sets created with OpenDirect restore enabled only.

### IMPORTANT

Before you proceed with the OpenDirect Restore, make sure the following dependencies are fulfilled. Failure to do so may cause the restore to fail.

- Microsoft Visual C++ 2015 Redistributable (x86) / (x64)  
<https://www.microsoft.com/en-us/download/details.aspx?id=48145>
- Update for Universal C Runtime in Windows  
<https://support.microsoft.com/en-us/help/2999226/update-for-universal-c-runtime-in-windows>
- Microsoft Security Advisory 3033929 (for Windows 7 and Windows Server 2008 R2)  
<https://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/security/3033929.aspx>

1. Log in to the AhsayOBM application according to the instructions in section [Login to AhsayOBM](#).
2. Click the **Restore** icon on the AhsayOBM main interface.



3. All the available backup sets for restore will be listed. Select the backup set that you would like to restore data from.

### Please Select The Backup Set To Restore

Sort by

Creation Time ▼



#### Backup Set Sample

Owner: w7-pro

Last Backup: Monday, September 30, 2019 15:14



#### Daily Backup

Owner: w7-pro

Last Backup: Monday, September 30, 2019 15:57



#### OpenDirect Backup

Owner: w7-pro

Last Backup: Wednesday, October 02, 2019 11:06

4. Select where you would like to restore your data from.

Select The Destination From Which To Restor...

 OpenDirect Backup

 AhsayCBS  
Host: 10.16.10.30:80

5. Select **Open backup data directly without restoration (OpenDirect)**.

Please Choose A Restore Mode

Restore mode

☐ Normal restore

☒ Open backup data directly without restoration (OpenDirect)

[Show advanced option](#)

You may select the **Read timeout limit** by clicking Show advanced option.

Read timeout limit

Default

▼

Default

Unlimited

[Show advanced option](#)

This selection defines the duration when the OpenDirect restore session will be disconnected if there is no response from the mounted compressed or image file.

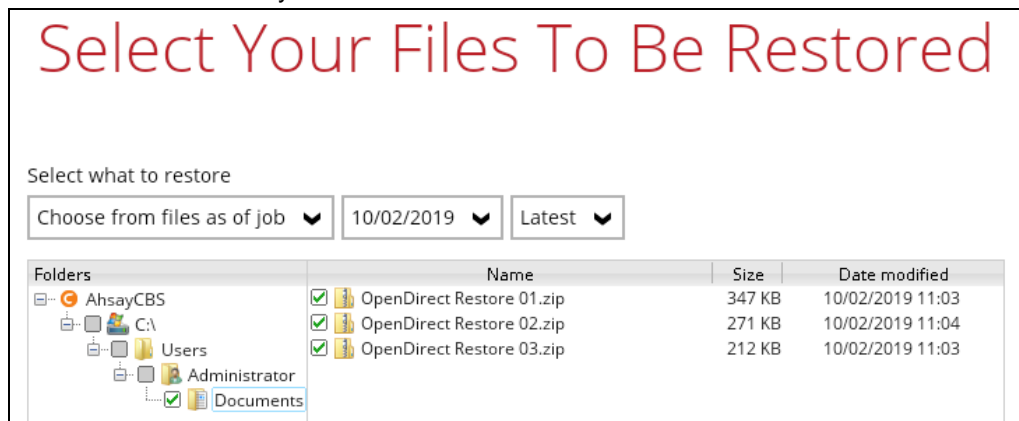
- 🔵 **Default** – This setting should be suitable for compressed or image file located on a local, removable, or network drive. The time out value is 15 seconds.
- 🔵 **Unlimited** – the connection will not be time out when this is selected. This selection is recommended under the following usage:
  - 🔵 Backup destination is a cloud storage.
  - 🔵 AhsayCBS over the Internet.
  - 🔵 A large compressed or image file with large incremental delta chain.

#### NOTE

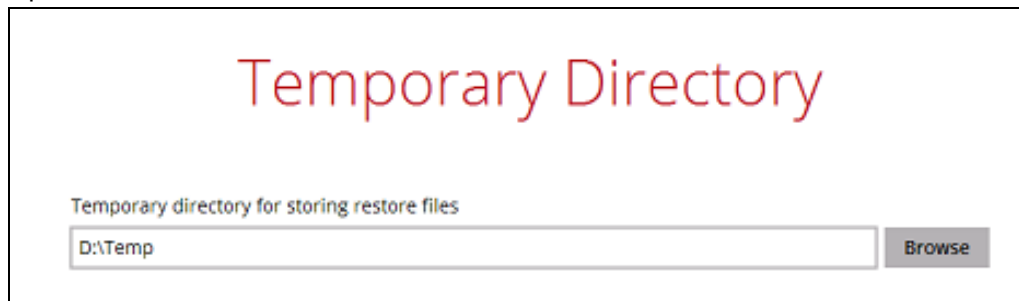
If in doubt or unsure about the compressed or image file size or network stability, it is recommended to use **Unlimited**.

Click **Next** to proceed when you are done with the selection.

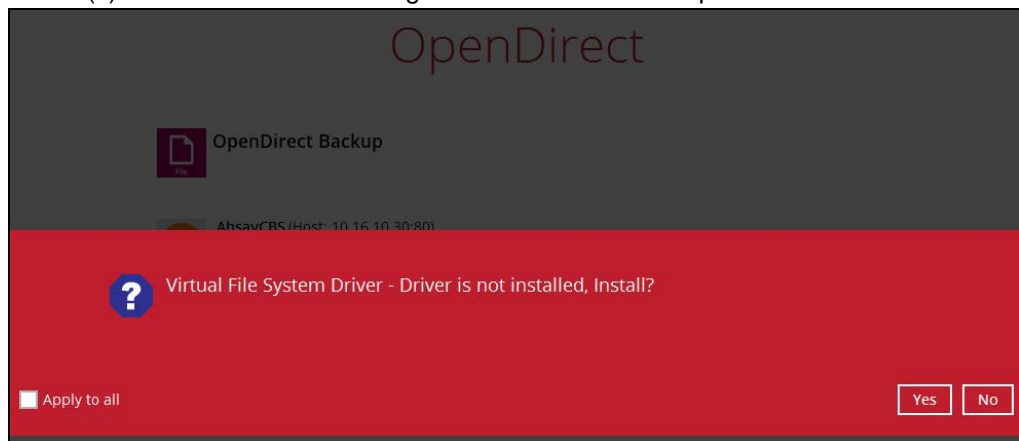
6. Select to restore files from a specific backup job, or from all files available, then select the files or folders that you would like to restore.



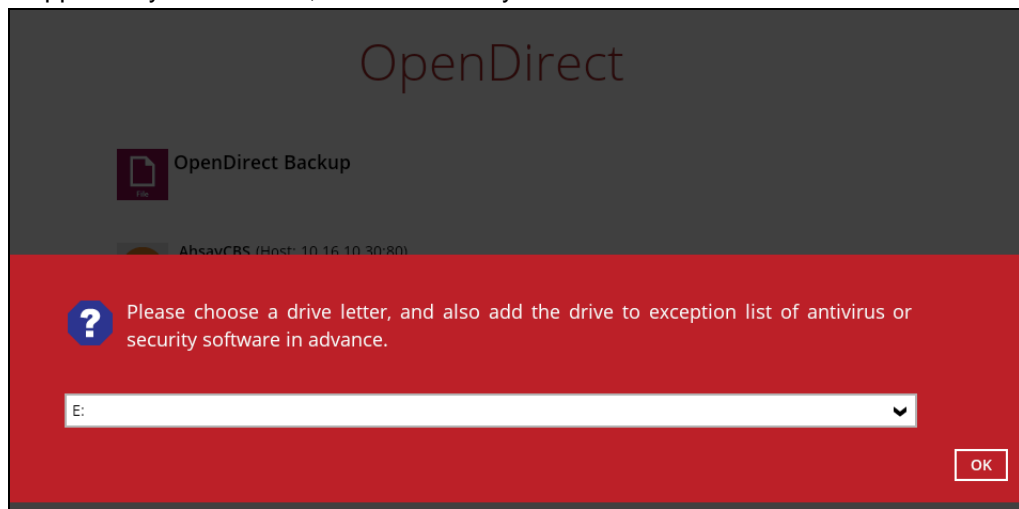
7. Select a temporary directory for storing restore files, then click Restore to start the OpenDirect restore.



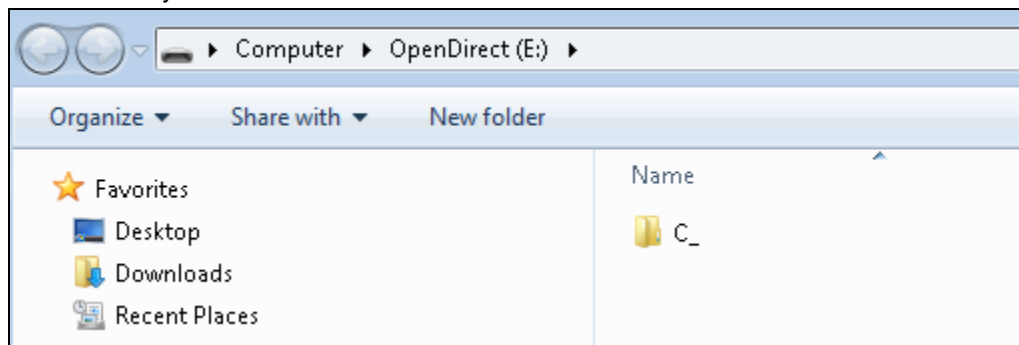
8. Click **Restore** to start the restore. The status will be shown.
9. The following screen shows when you perform OpenDirect restore for this backup set on this machine for the first time only. Make sure you click **Yes** to confirm mounting the file(s) on this machine. Clicking **No** will exit the restore process.



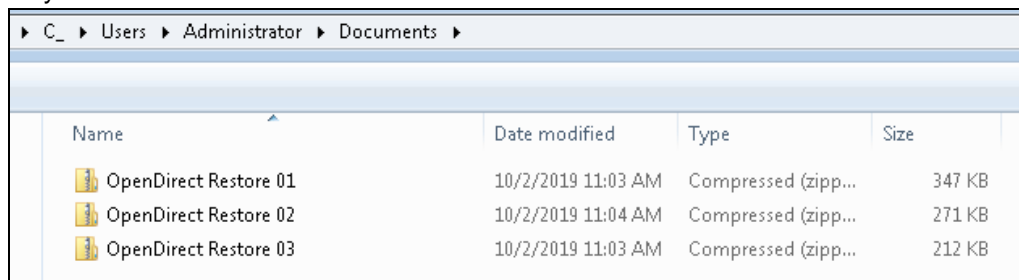
10. You will be prompted to select drive letter where you wish the mounted files to be mapped on your machine, click **OK** when you have finished selection.



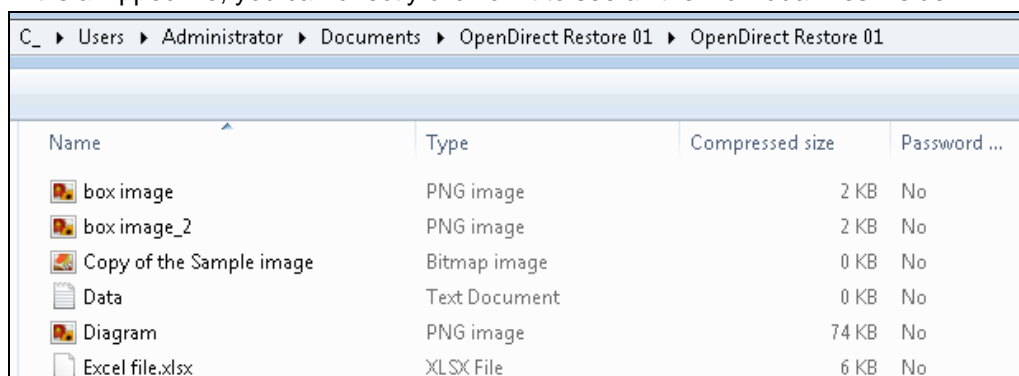
11. The selected drive letter will be mapped and prompted in the Windows Files Explorer with the files you wish to restore shown.



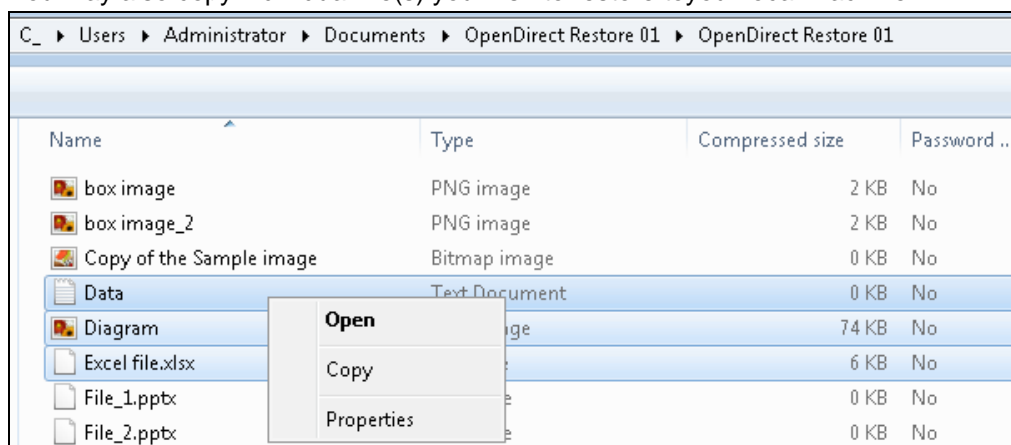
12. You can now click on the files to view them directly from here, which will be in read-only mode.



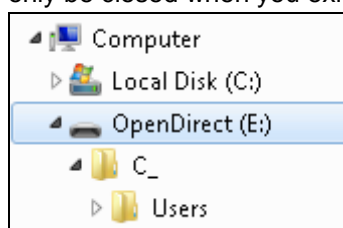
If it is a zipped file, you can directly click on it to see all the individual files inside.



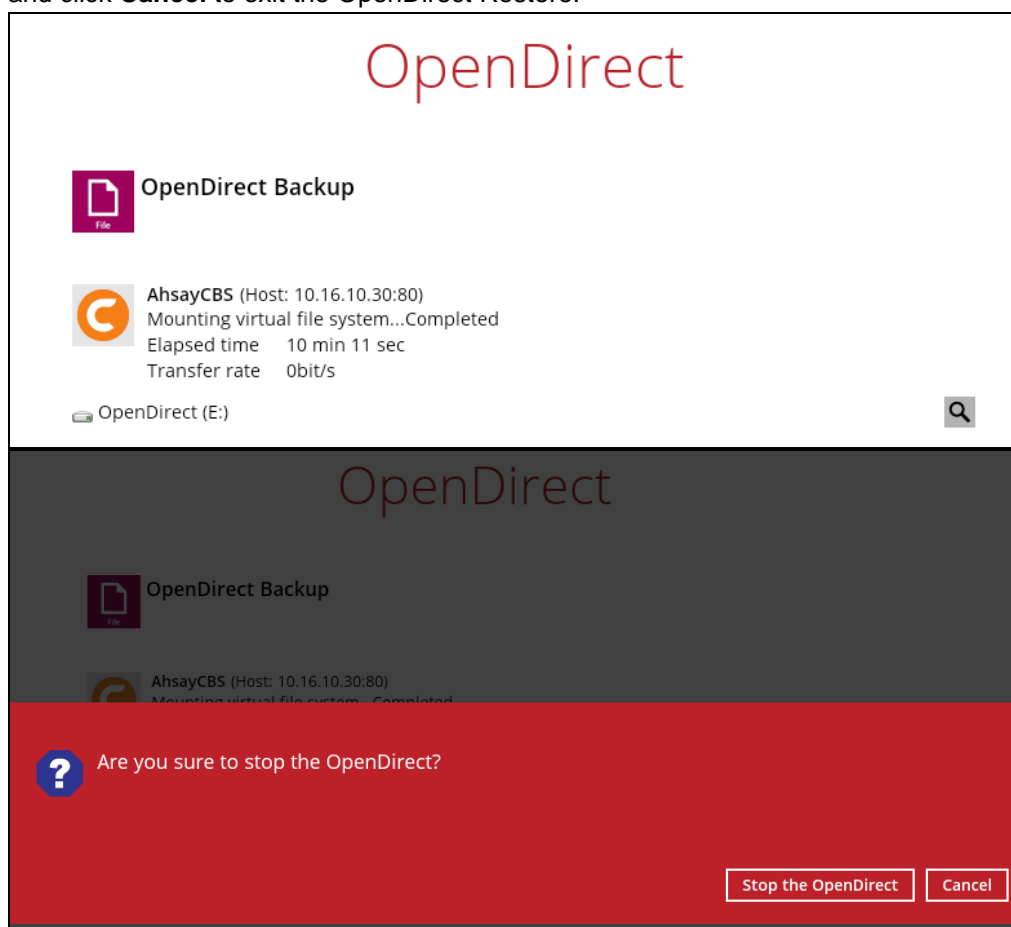
You may also copy individual file(s) you wish to restore to your local machine.



13. The mounted drive letter cannot be ejected from the Windows File Explorer, it will only be closed when you exit AhsayOBM.



14. When you have finished restoring the necessary files, you can go back to AhsayOBM and click **Cancel** to exit the OpenDirect Restore.



### IMPORTANT

1. As a result of the limitation of the virtual file system library, the mapped drive will only be unmounted from your machine when you exit AhsayOBM. In other words, each OpenDirect restore session on AhsayOBM can only mount and unmount once.
2. **OpenDirect restore** of file backup sets:
  - Will not show up on the **Restore Status** tab in **Live Activities** of the backup service provider AhsayCBS. **Restore Status** tab in **Live Activities** only applies to the restore performed directly through AhsayOBM.
  - Will not generate restore reports or report email on backup service provider AhsayCBS.
  - Will not generate restore log on AhsayOBM.

## 12.2 Restore Filter

This search feature allows you to search directories, files, and folders.

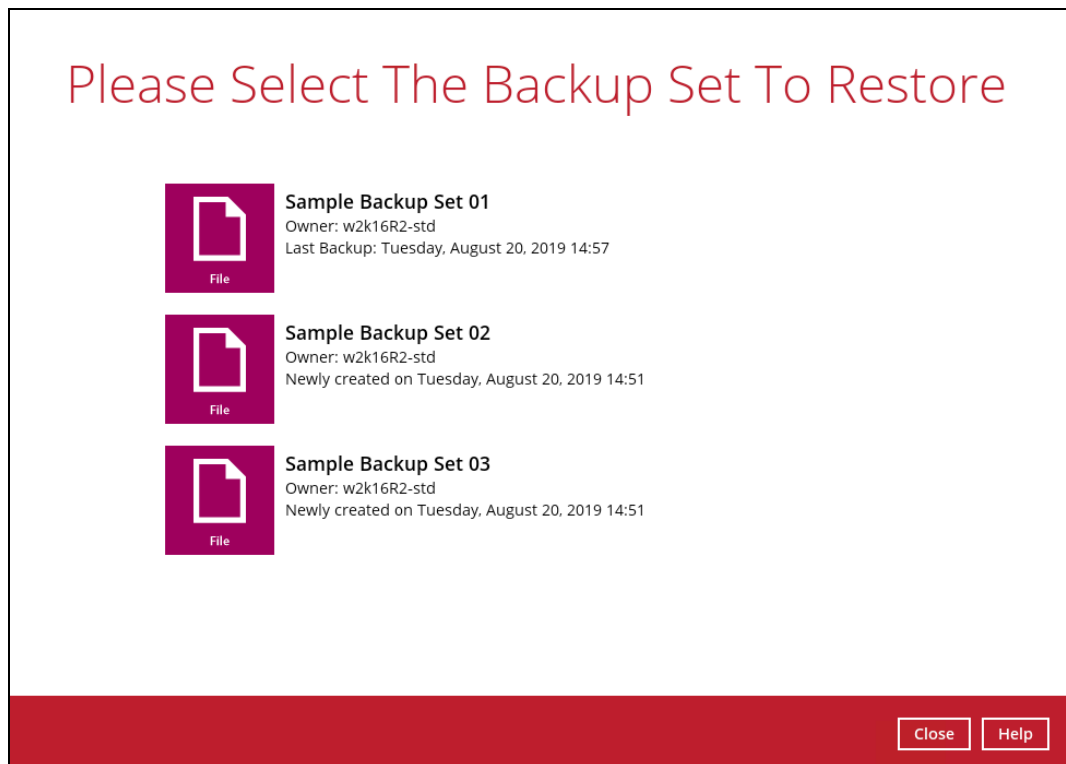
To make it more flexible, the search feature offers filtering. You can add additional pattern upon searching. Pattern includes the following criteria:

- ▶ **Contains**  
These are Directories, Files, and Folders with the name **containing** the specific letter or word.
- ▶ **Exact**  
These are Directories, Files, and Folders with the **exact** or **accurate** name.
- ▶ **Start With**  
These are Directories, Files, and Folders with the name **starting** with a specific letter or word.
- ▶ **Ends With**  
These are Directories, Files, and Folders with the name **ending** with a specific letter or word.

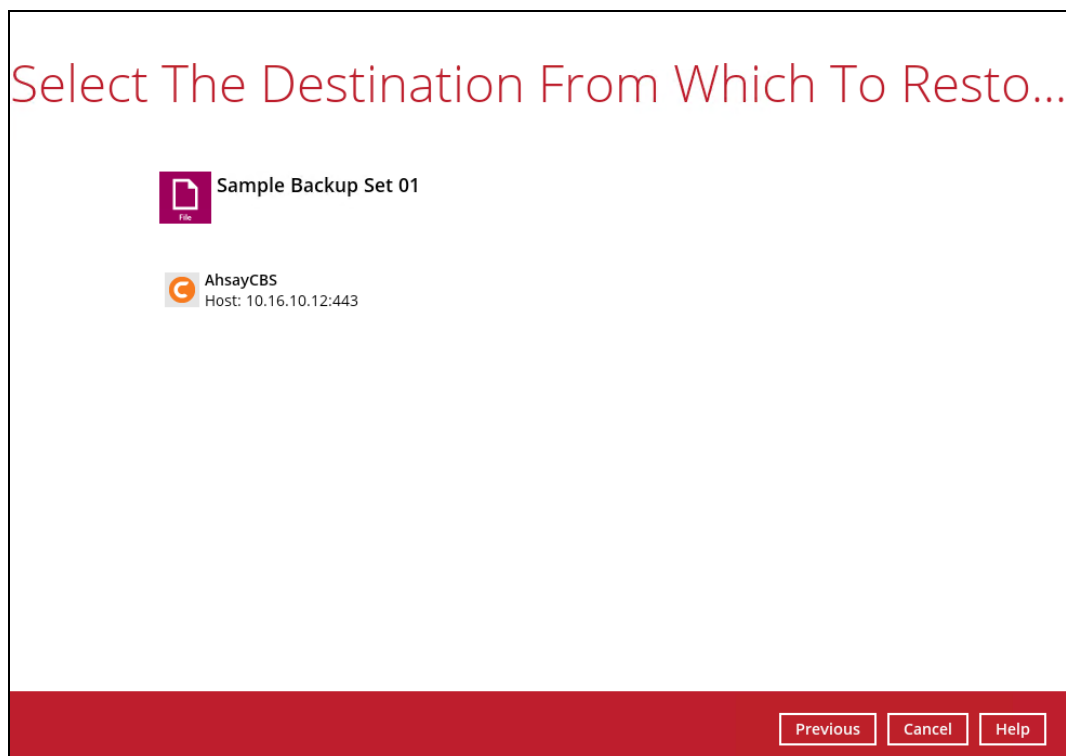
It also has the **Match Case** function, which serves as an additional accuracy when searching for any specific directories, files, folders, and mails.

For more detailed examples using the restore filter on AhsayOBM, refer to [Appendix B: Example Scenarios for Restore Filter](#).

- 1 Log in to AhsayOBM according to the instructions in [Login to AhsayOBM](#).
- 2 Click the [Restore] icon on the main interface of AhsayOBM.
- 3 Select the backup set that you would like to restore.



- 4 Select the backup destination that you would like to restore backed up items to.





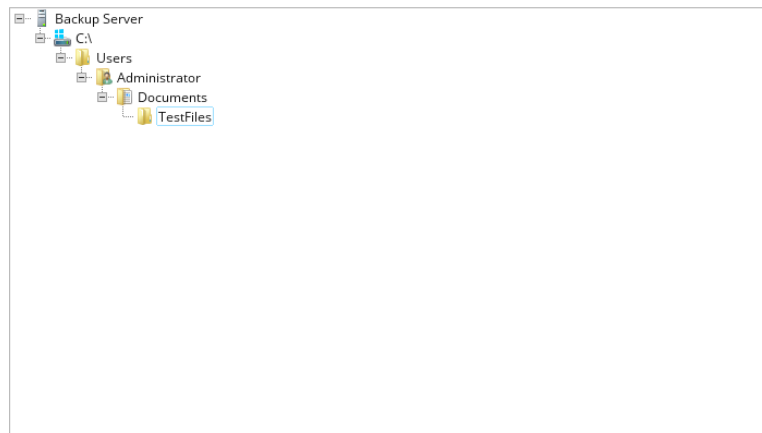
- 5 Click the [Search] located on the lower left side of the screen.

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Select Your Files To Be Restored". At the top, it says "Select what to restore" with three dropdown menus: "Choose from files as of job", "08/20/2019", and "Latest". Below this is a "Show filter" link. The main area is a file explorer showing a tree view on the left with "AhsayCBS" expanded, containing "C:\\" and "Users". The right pane shows the contents of "C:\\". At the bottom, there is a "Search" button, "Items per page" set to 50, and "Page" 1 / 1. A red bar at the bottom contains "Previous", "Next", "Cancel", and "Help" buttons.

- 6 Click the [Change] button to change the path of the restore items from other location.

The screenshot shows a "Search" dialog box. It has a "Look in" text box with a "Change" button to its right. Below is a checked checkbox for "Search subfolders". There are three dropdown menus: "Kind" set to "Files and Directories", "Type" set to "contains", and "Pattern" which is empty. A "Match case" checkbox is also present. A "Search" button is below these. The main area is a table with columns "Name", "In Folder", "Size", and "Date modified". At the bottom, "Items per page" is set to 50 and "Page" is set to "-". A red bar at the bottom contains "OK", "Cancel", and "Help" buttons. Below the red bar, "Previous", "Next", "Cancel", and "Help" buttons are visible but dimmed.

## Change Path



OK Cancel

## Search

Look in  
C:\Users\Administrator\Documents\TestFiles Change

☐ Search subfolders

Kind Type Pattern  
Files and Directories contains  ☐ Match case

Search

Name	In Folder	Size	Date modified
------	-----------	------	---------------

Items per page 50 ▼ Page - ▼

OK Cancel Help

Previous Next Cancel Help

- 7 Tick the [Search subfolders] to include available subfolders upon searching.

☐ Search subfolders

☒ Search subfolders

- 8 Select from the following Kind of files you want to search.

- Files and Directories
- Files only
- Directories

- 9 Select from the following Type of filtering you want to search.

- Contains
- Exact
- Starts With
- Ends With

- 10 Enter a pattern you want and tick the [Match case] box if you want to accurately search for a specific file.

Pattern  
 ☐ Match case

Pattern  
 ☒ Match case

- 11 Click the [Search] button and the result will be displayed.

- 12 Check all the items or check a specific item that you want and click the [OK] button to proceed and you will return to the restore main screen.

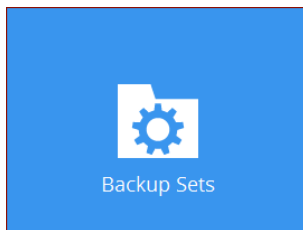
## 13 Mobile Backup and Restore to AhsayCBS and Predefined Destination


To do a mobile backup and restore to AhsayCBS and Predefined Destination, follow the steps:

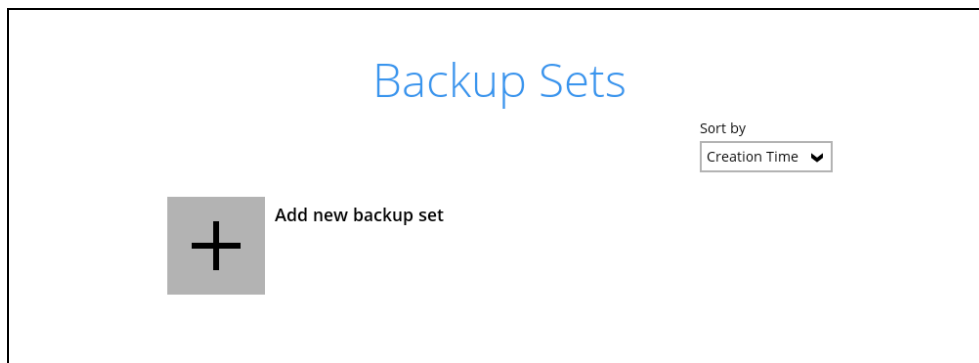
- Backup photos and videos from Ahsay Mobile app to AhsayOBM local destination. For more detailed information, check [Ahsay Mobile App User Guide for Android and iOS – Chapter 10](#).
- [Create a File Backup Set](#) on AhsayOBM and follow these setup:
  - Backup source should be photos and videos backed up in AhsayOBM local destination. Example: D:\Backup\Redmi
  - Backup destination should be to AhsayCBS and Predefined Destination. Examples of predefined destinations: Google Drive, OneDrive, Wasabi, etc.
- [Run a Backup Job](#) on AhsayOBM.
- [Restore Data](#) on AhsayOBM. This can be from Original or Alternate location.

### 13.1 Create a File Backup Set

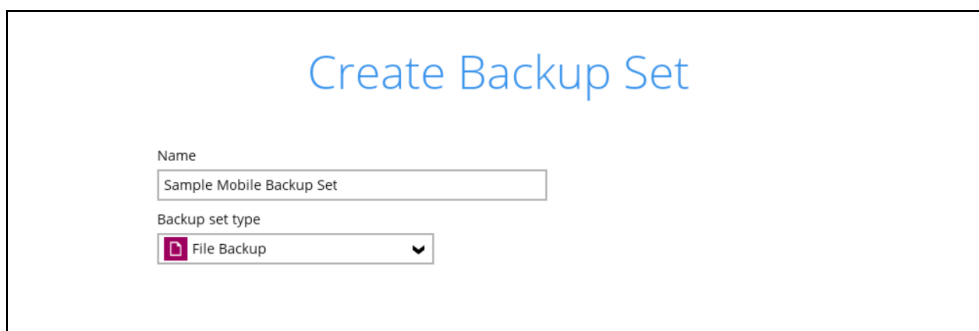
1. Click the **Backup Sets** icon on the main interface of AhsayOBM.



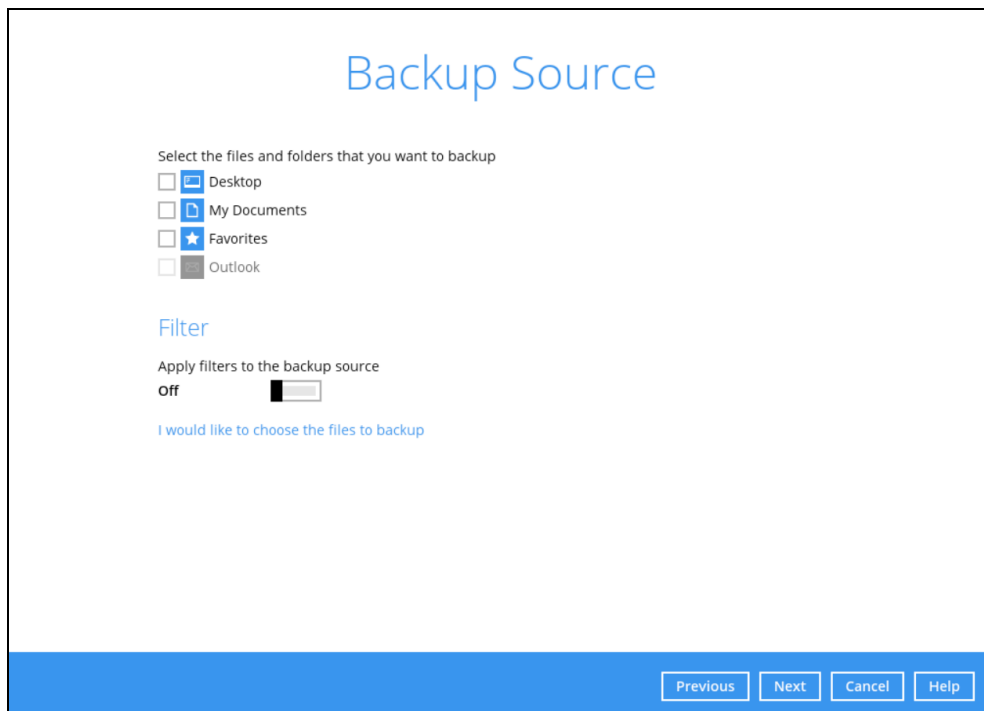
2. Create a new backup set by clicking  next to **Add new backup set**.



3. When the Create Backup Set window appears, name your new backup set, and select the **File Backup** set type. Then, click **Next** to proceed.

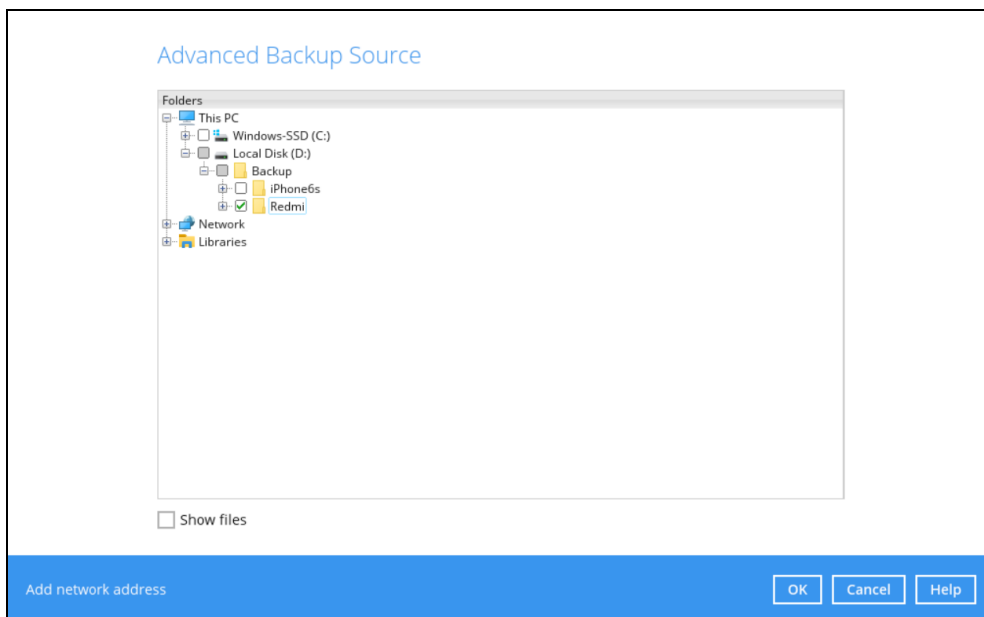


4. In the Backup Source window, select the mobile backup source for backup. Click **I would like to choose the files to backup**.

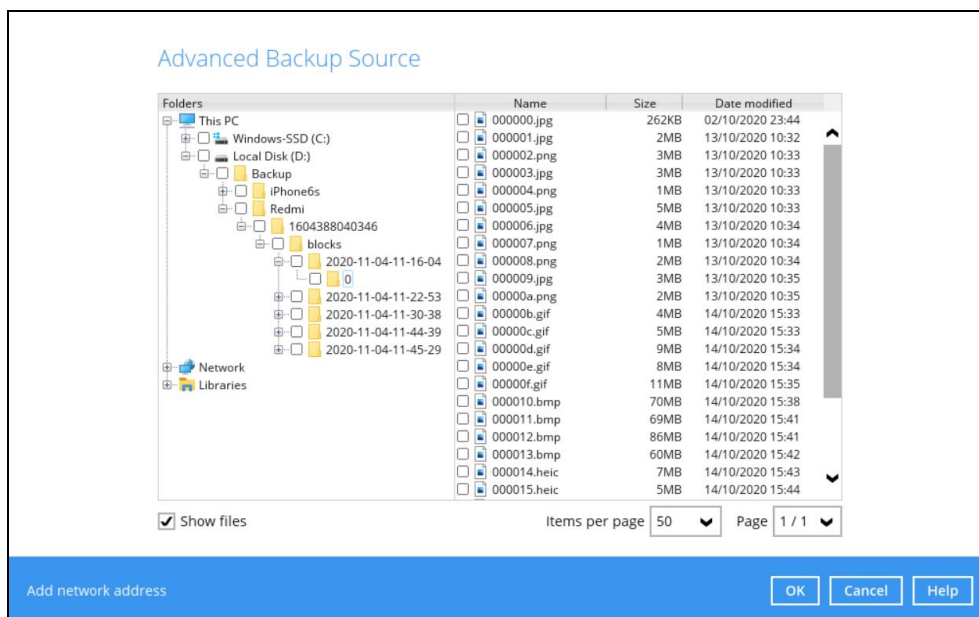


In the **Advanced Backup Source** window, select the mobile backup source.

In this example, Redmi folder is selected. The mobile backup source is in **Local Disk (D:)**.

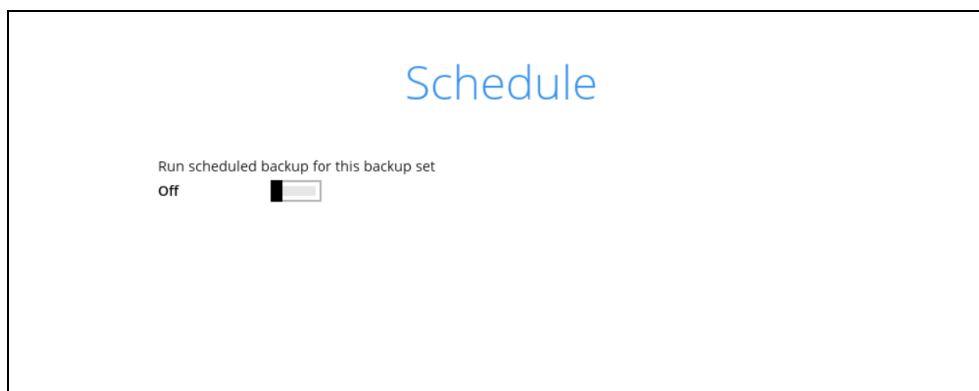


Alternatively, if you want to back up only specific files instead of all files in your selected folder(s), select the **Show files** checkbox at the bottom of the screen. A list of files will appear on the right-hand side. Select the checkbox(es) next to the file(s) to back up. Then, click **OK** to save your selections and close the Advanced Backup Source window.

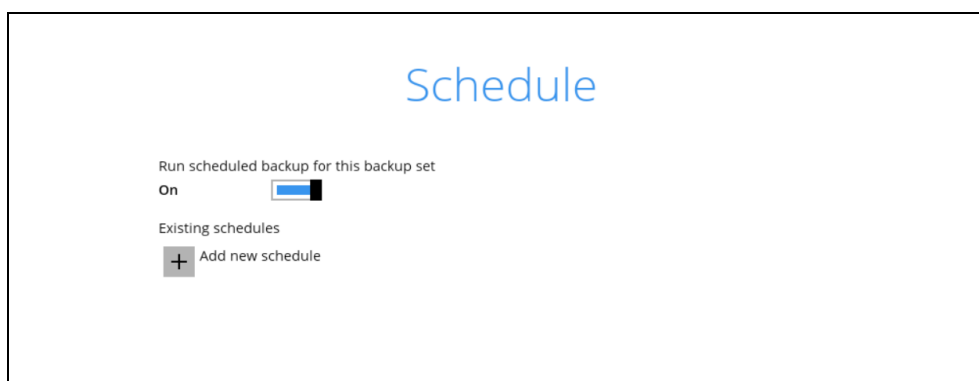


In the Backup Source window, click **Next** to proceed.

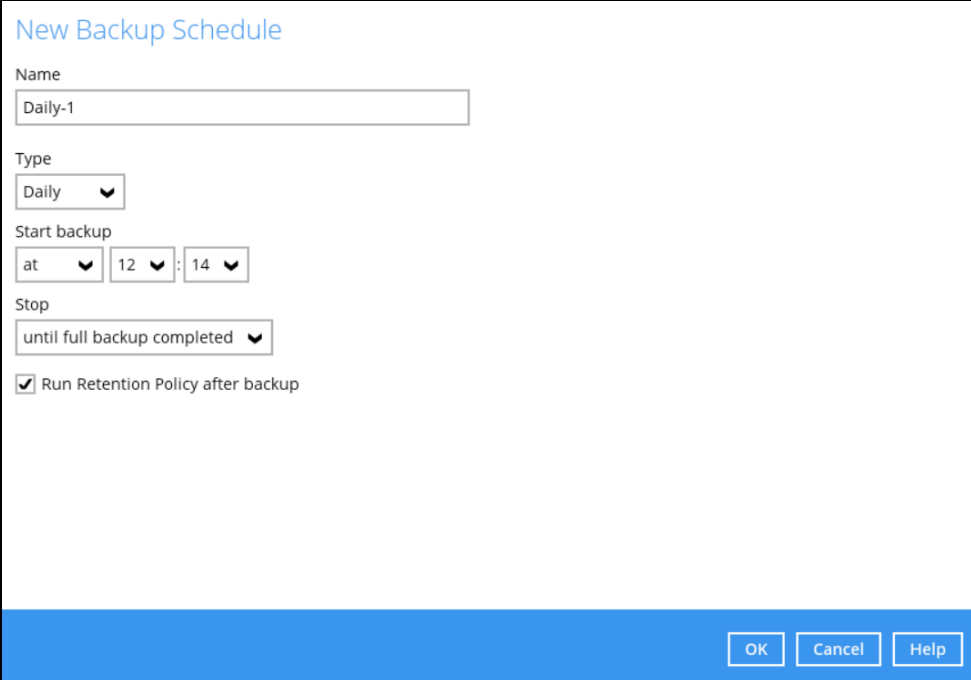
5. In the Schedule window, the Run scheduled backup for this backup set is **Off** by default. You can configure a backup schedule to automatically run a backup job at your specified time interval.



Swipe the switch to the right to enable the schedule then click **Add** to add a new schedule.



When the New Backup Schedule window appears, specify your backup schedule. Then, click **OK** to save your changes and close the New Backup Schedule window.



New Backup Schedule

Name  
Daily-1

Type  
Daily

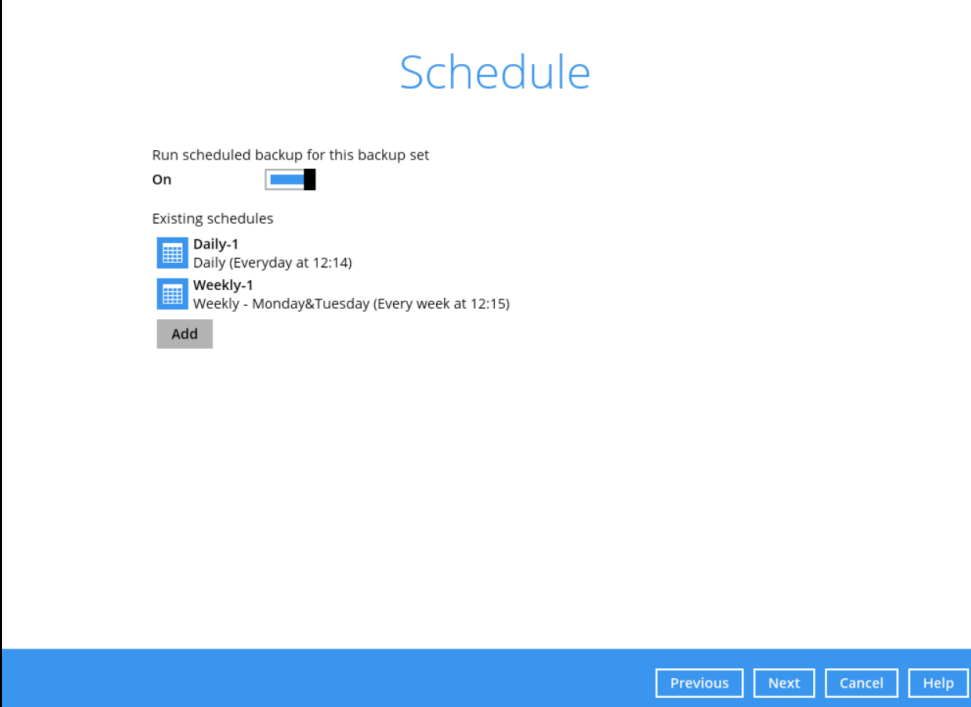
Start backup  
at 12 : 14

Stop  
until full backup completed

☒ Run Retention Policy after backup

OK Cancel Help

In case you have added a schedule, it will be shown in the Schedule window. Click **Next** to proceed when you are done setting.



Schedule

Run scheduled backup for this backup set  
On

Existing schedules

- Daily-1  
Daily (Everyday at 12:14)
- Weekly-1  
Weekly - Monday&Tuesday (Every week at 12:15)

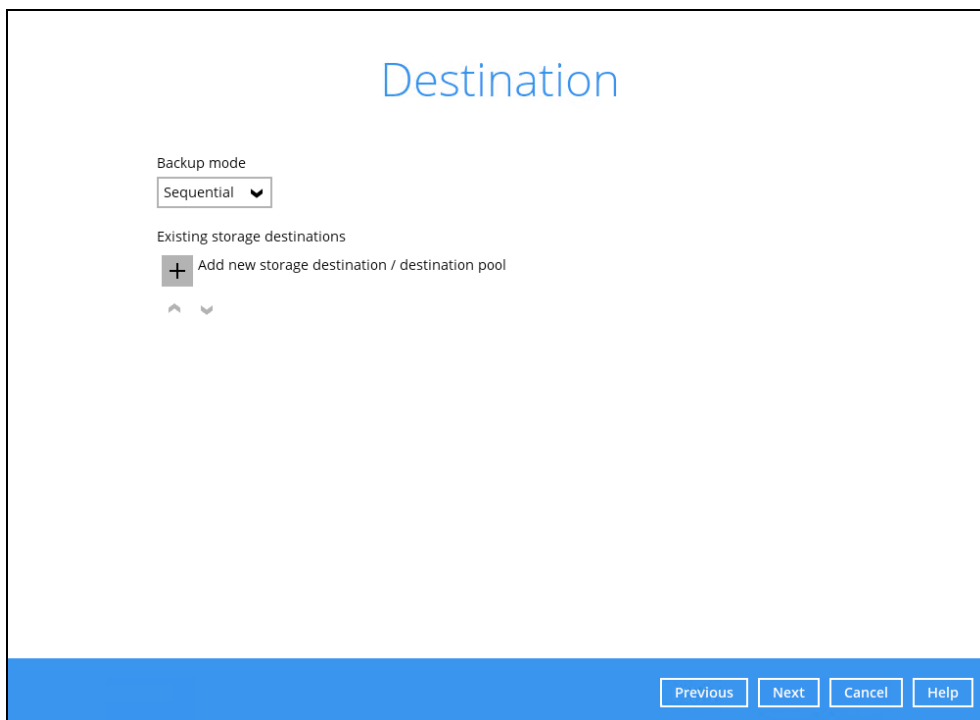
Add

Previous Next Cancel Help

6. The **Destination** window will appear. Select the appropriate option from the **Backup mode** dropdown menu.

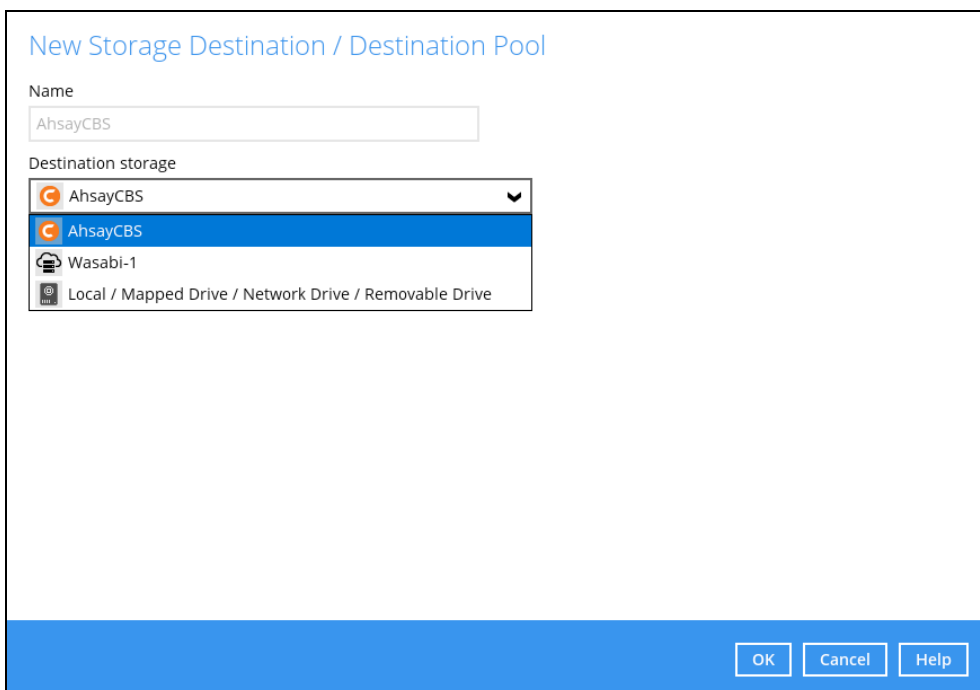
- **Sequential** (default value) – run backup jobs to each backup destination one by one
- **Concurrent** – run backup jobs to all backup destinations at the same time

To select a backup destination for the backup data storage, click **+** next to **Add new storage destination / destination pool**.



The screenshot shows the 'Destination' window. At the top, the title 'Destination' is displayed in blue. Below it, there is a 'Backup mode' section with a dropdown menu currently set to 'Sequential'. Underneath, the 'Existing storage destinations' section features a '+' icon followed by the text 'Add new storage destination / destination pool'. At the bottom right, there are four buttons: 'Previous', 'Next', 'Cancel', and 'Help'.

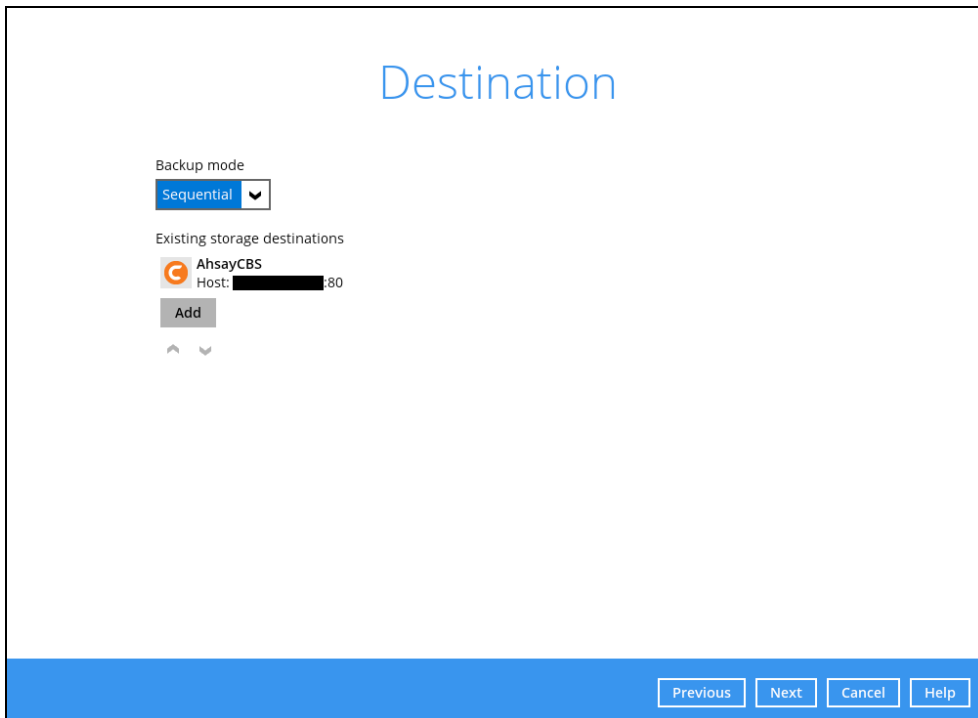
In the New Storage Destination/Destination Pool window, select AhsayCBS or a Predefined destination. Then, click **OK** to confirm your selection.



The screenshot shows the 'New Storage Destination / Destination Pool' window. The title is 'New Storage Destination / Destination Pool'. Below the title, there is a 'Name' field with the text 'AhsayCBS'. Underneath, the 'Destination storage' section contains a list of options: 'AhsayCBS' (selected and highlighted in blue), 'AhsayCBS' (unselected), 'Wasabi-1', and 'Local / Mapped Drive / Network Drive / Removable Drive'. At the bottom right, there are three buttons: 'OK', 'Cancel', and 'Help'.

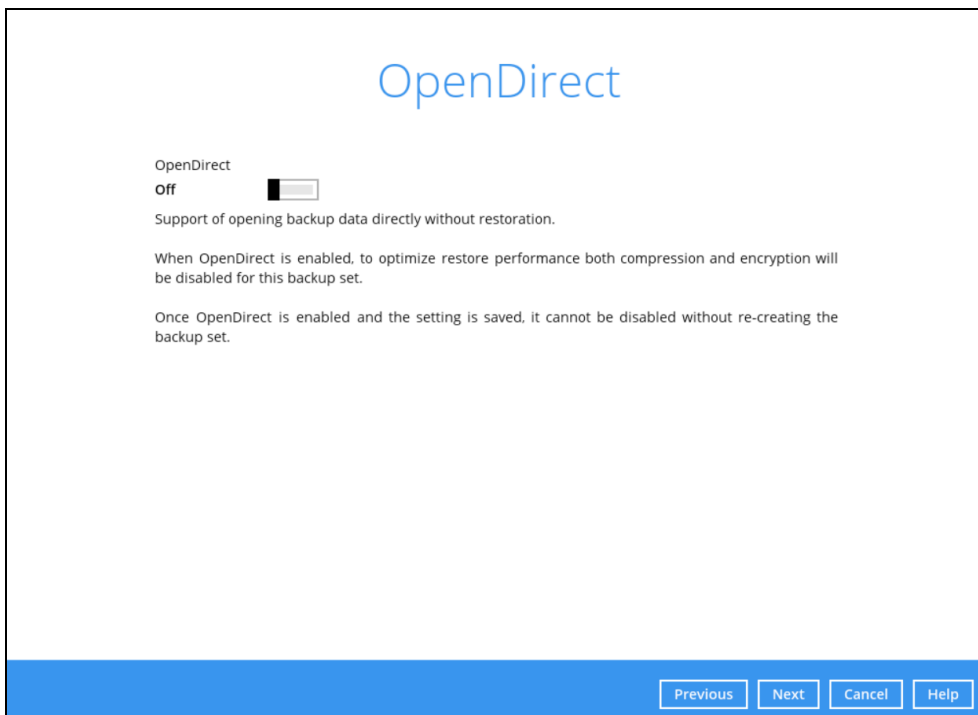


In the Destination window, your selected storage destination will be shown. Click **Next** to proceed.



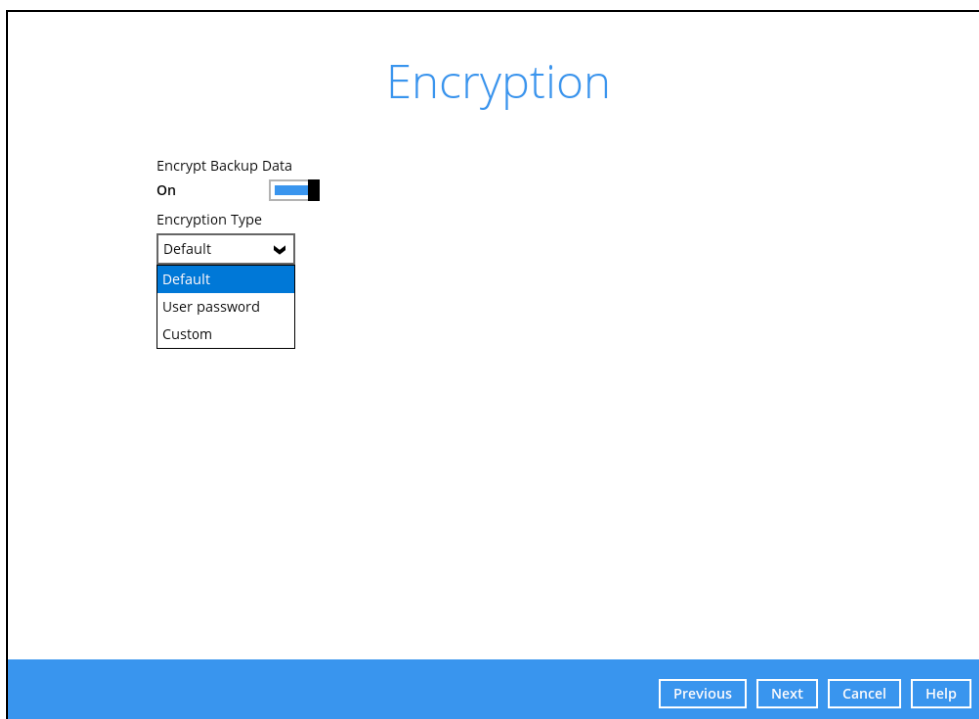
The screenshot shows the 'Destination' window in a software interface. At the top, the word 'Destination' is displayed in a large blue font. Below it, the 'Backup mode' is set to 'Sequential' with a dropdown arrow. Under 'Existing storage destinations', there is an entry for 'AhsayCBS' with a host address partially visible as 'Host: [redacted]:80'. An 'Add' button is located below this entry. At the bottom right, there are four buttons: 'Previous', 'Next', 'Cancel', and 'Help'.

7. The **OpenDirect Restore** feature should be disabled. Click **Next** to proceed.



The screenshot shows the 'OpenDirect' window. The title 'OpenDirect' is at the top in a large blue font. Below it, the 'OpenDirect' toggle switch is set to 'Off'. A descriptive text states: 'Support of opening backup data directly without restoration. When OpenDirect is enabled, to optimize restore performance both compression and encryption will be disabled for this backup set. Once OpenDirect is enabled and the setting is saved, it cannot be disabled without re-creating the backup set.' At the bottom right, there are four buttons: 'Previous', 'Next', 'Cancel', and 'Help'.

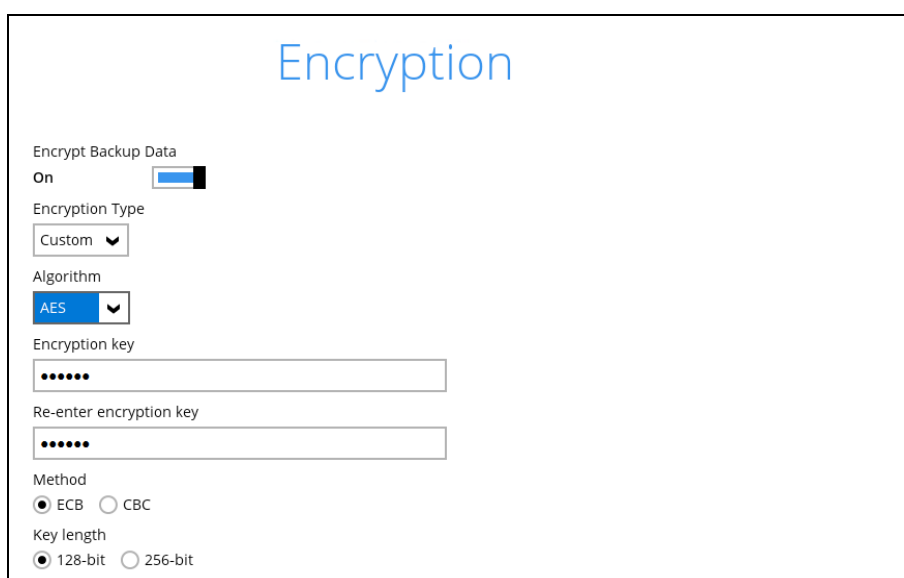
8. In the Encryption window, the default **Encrypt Backup Data** option is enabled with an encryption key preset by the system which provides the most secure protection



The screenshot shows the 'Encryption' window. At the top, the title 'Encryption' is displayed in blue. Below it, the 'Encrypt Backup Data' section has a toggle switch set to 'On'. The 'Encryption Type' dropdown menu is open, showing three options: 'Default' (selected), 'User password', and 'Custom'. At the bottom right, there are four buttons: 'Previous', 'Next', 'Cancel', and 'Help'.

You can choose from one of the following three Encryption Type options:

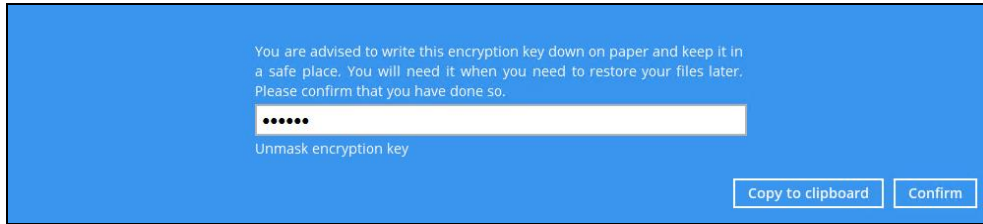
- **Default** – an encryption key with 44 alpha numeric characters will be randomly generated by the system
- **User password** – the encryption key will be the same as the login password of your AhsayOBM at the time when this backup set is created. Please be reminded that if you change the AhsayOBM login password later, the encryption keys of the backup sets previously created with this encryption type will remain unchanged.
- **Custom** – you can customize your encryption key, where you can set your own algorithm, encryption key, method, and key length.



The screenshot shows the 'Encryption' window with the 'Custom' encryption type selected. The 'Algorithm' dropdown is set to 'AES'. There are two text input fields for the 'Encryption key' and 'Re-enter encryption key', both containing six dots. The 'Method' section has two radio buttons: 'ECB' (selected) and 'CBC'. The 'Key length' section has two radio buttons: '128-bit' (selected) and '256-bit'.

Click **Next** when you are done setting.

9. If you have enabled the Encryption Key feature in the previous step, the following pop-up window shows, no matter which encryption type you have selected.

A blue pop-up window with white text. The text reads: "You are advised to write this encryption key down on paper and keep it in a safe place. You will need it when you need to restore your files later. Please confirm that you have done so." Below this is a text input field containing six dots. Underneath the field is the label "Unmask encryption key". At the bottom right are two buttons: "Copy to clipboard" and "Confirm".

You are advised to write this encryption key down on paper and keep it in a safe place. You will need it when you need to restore your files later. Please confirm that you have done so.

.....

Unmask encryption key

Copy to clipboard Confirm

The pop-up window has the following three options to choose from:

- **Unmask encryption key** – The encryption key is masked by default. Click this option to show the encryption key.

A blue pop-up window with white text. The text reads: "You are advised to write this encryption key down on paper and keep it in a safe place. You will need it when you need to restore your files later. Please confirm that you have done so." Below this is a text input field containing the string "T0j/DUMs/GnTb22d3teFx+9rtSGoqb4+xcLm2YnxbVE=". Underneath the field is the label "Mask encryption key". At the bottom right are two buttons: "Copy to clipboard" and "Confirm".

You are advised to write this encryption key down on paper and keep it in a safe place. You will need it when you need to restore your files later. Please confirm that you have done so.

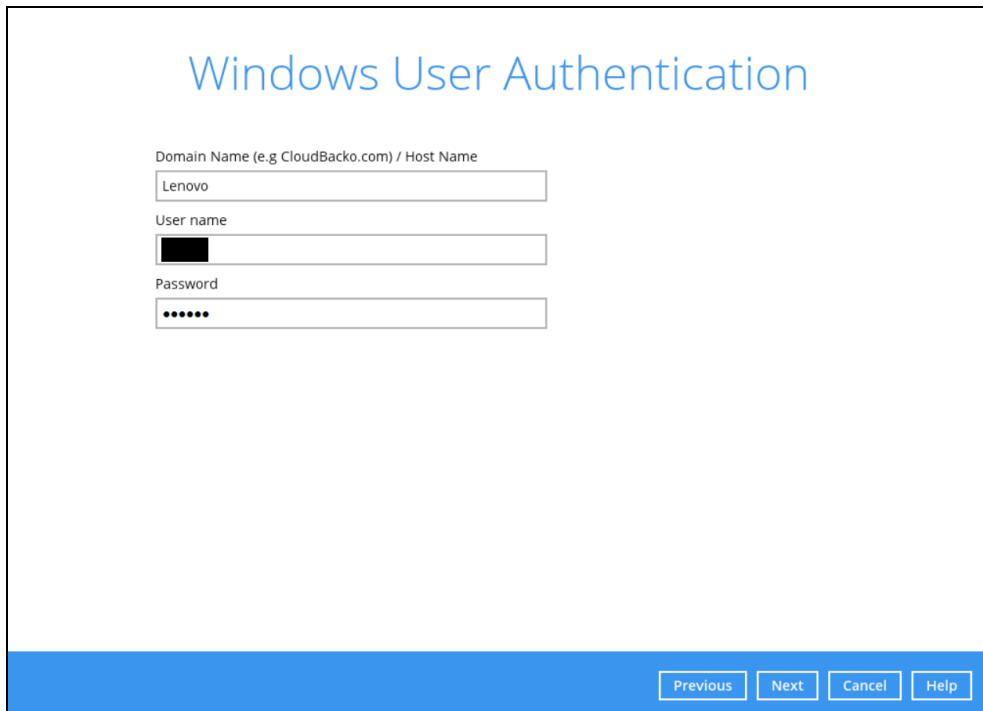
T0j/DUMs/GnTb22d3teFx+9rtSGoqb4+xcLm2YnxbVE=

Mask encryption key

Copy to clipboard Confirm

- **Copy to clipboard** – Click to copy the encryption key, then you can paste it in another location of your choice.
- **Confirm** – Click to exit this pop-up window and proceed to the next step.

10. The following screen prompts you to enter the Windows login credentials for user authentication if you have enabled the Schedule Backup feature in step 5.

A white screen with a blue header area. The title "Windows User Authentication" is in blue. Below it are three input fields: "Domain Name (e.g CloudBacko.com) / Host Name" with the value "Lenovo", "User name" with a blacked-out value, and "Password" with a masked value of six dots. At the bottom is a blue bar with four buttons: "Previous", "Next", "Cancel", and "Help".

## Windows User Authentication

Domain Name (e.g CloudBacko.com) / Host Name

Lenovo

User name

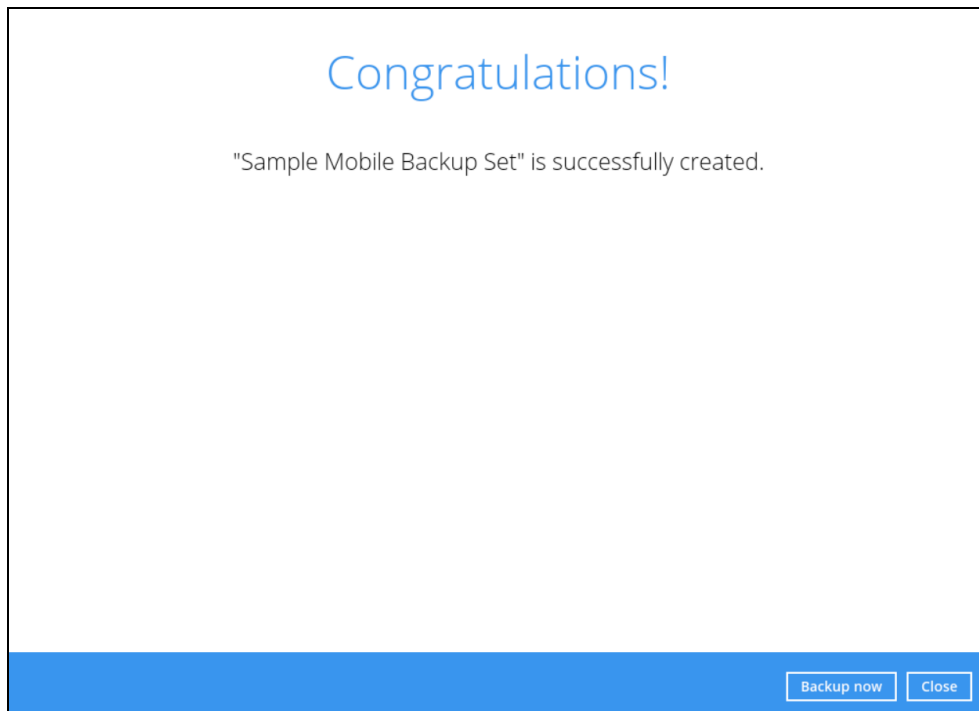
.....

Password

.....

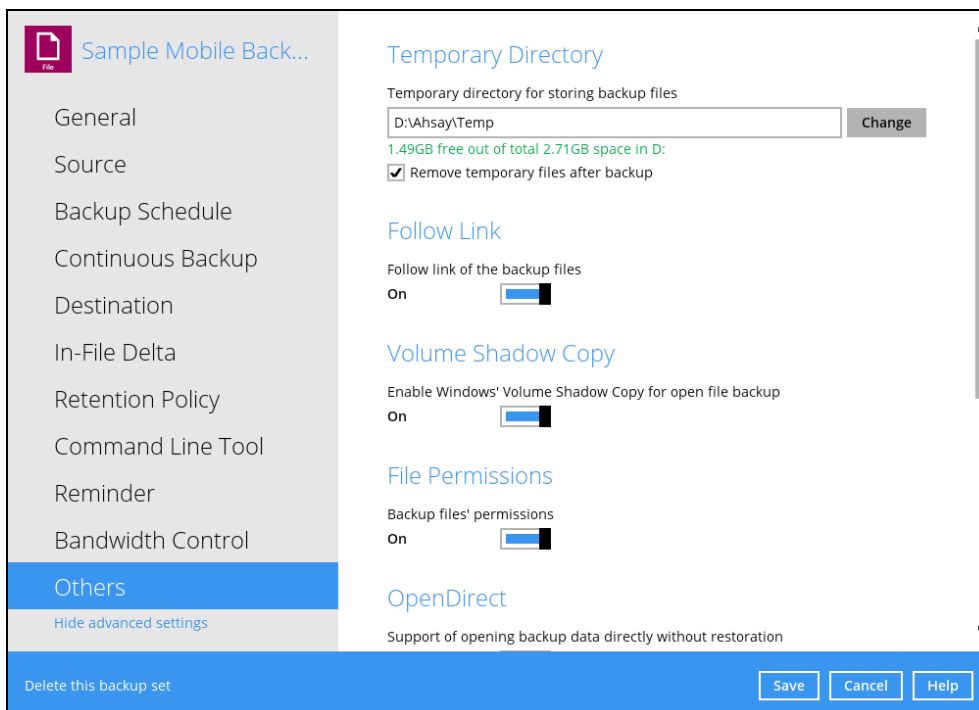
Previous Next Cancel Help

11. Upon successful creation of the backup set, the following screen will appear. You can click **Backup now** to back up your data or click **Close** to exit.



12. It is highly recommended to change the Temporary Directory. Select another location with sufficient free disk space other than **C:\Users\Ahsay\Temp**.

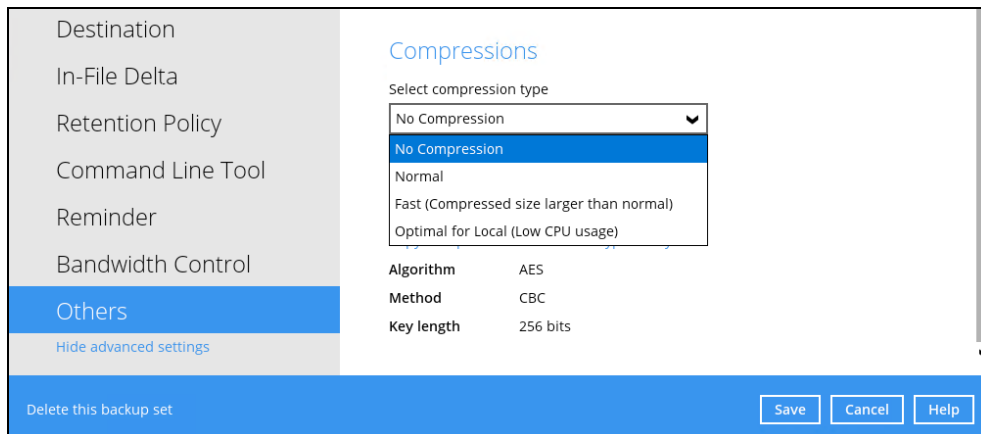
Go to **Others > Temporary Directory**. Click **Change** to browse for another location.



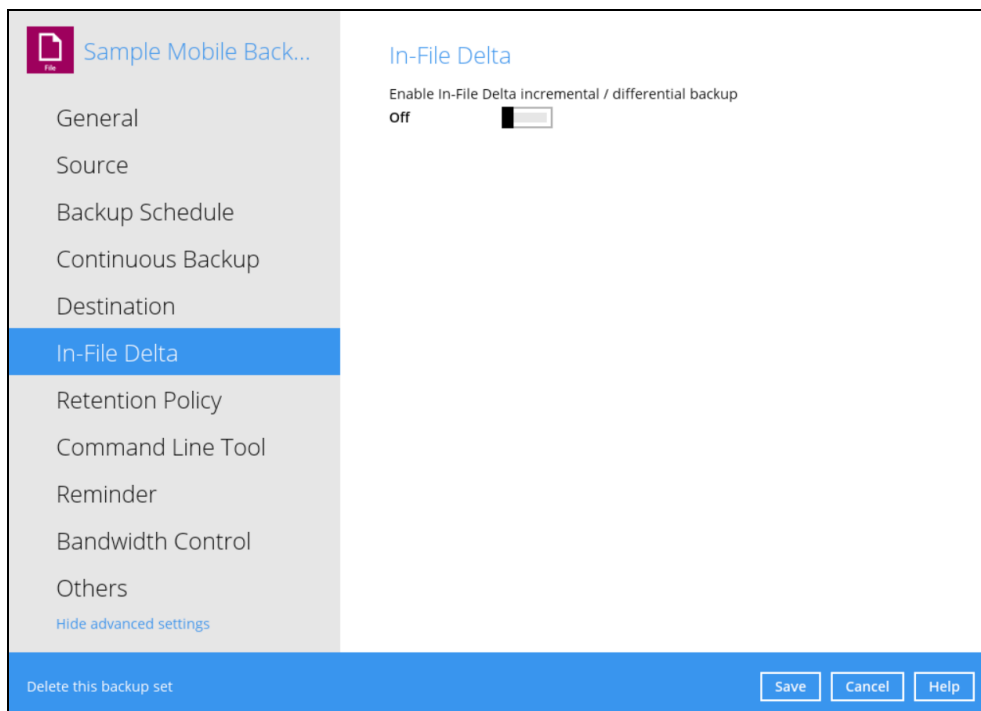
13. Optional: Select your preferred **Compression** type. By default, the compression is set Optimal for Local (Low CPU Usage) Go to **Others > Compressions**.

Select from the following list:

- No Compression
- Normal
- Fast
- Optimal for Local (Low CPU Usage)

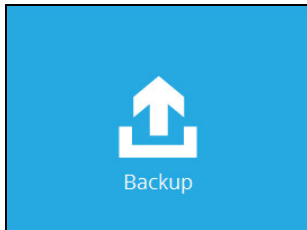


14. Optional: It is recommended to disable the **In-File Delta** as the files are relatively small, photos and videos are also not updated.

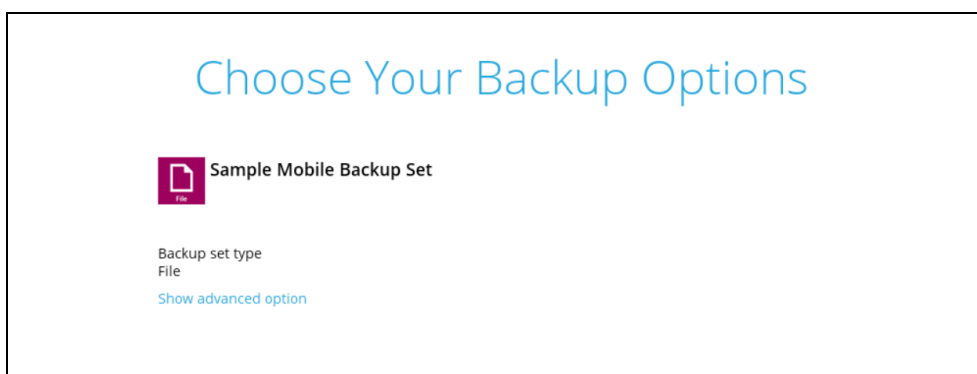
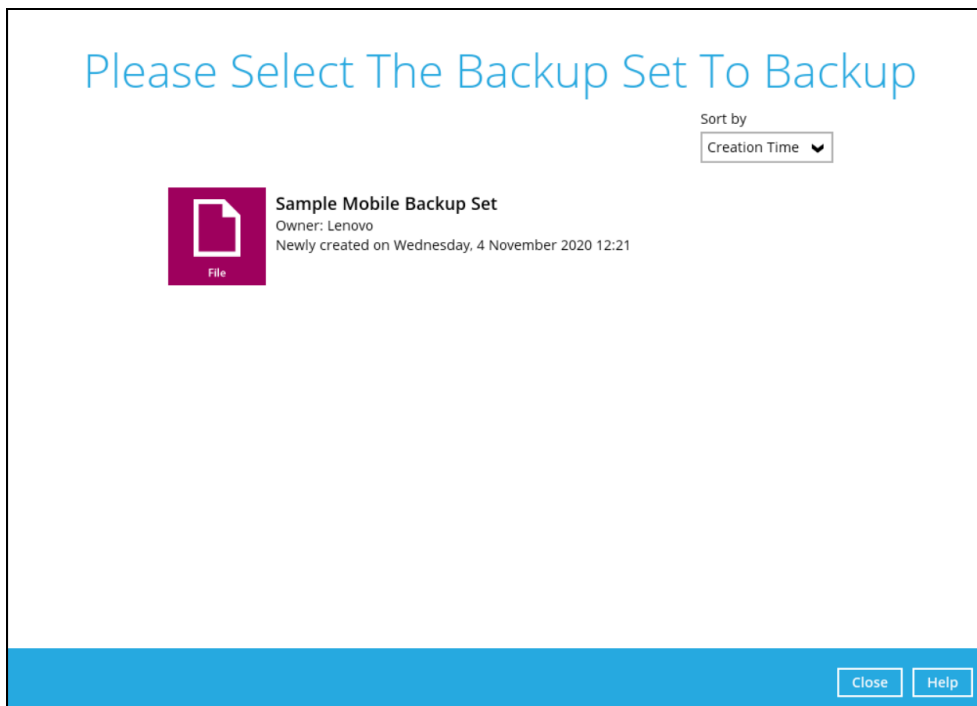


## 13.2 Run a Backup Job

1. Click **Backup** on the main interface of AhsayOBM.




2. Select the backup set that you would like to start a backup job for. In case you want to modify the In-File Delta type, Destinations and Retention Policy settings, click **Show advanced option**.



- When advanced options are shown, it is recommended that you tick the checkbox next to **Run Retention Policy after backup** in the Retention Policy section at the bottom.


This will help you save hard disk quota in the long run. In the In-File Delta type section, it is recommended to run in **Full** as a full backup captures all the data that you want to protect. When you run a backup job for the first time, AhsayOBM will run a full backup regardless of the in-file delta setting.

## Choose Your Backup Options

 **Sample Mobile Backup Set**

Backup set type  
File

In-File Delta type  
☒ Full  
☐ Differential  
☐ Incremental

Destinations  
☒  AhsayCBS (Host: 125.5.184.164:80)

Retention Policy  
☒ Run Retention Policy after backup  
[Hide advanced option](#)

Previous


Backup


Cancel


Help

- Click **Backup** to start the backup job. The status will be shown.

## Backup

 **Sample Mobile Backup Set**

 **AhsayCBS (Host: 125.5.184.164:80)**

[New File] D:\Backup\Redmi\1607332254879\blocks\2020-12-07-17-13-05\0\000033.j...

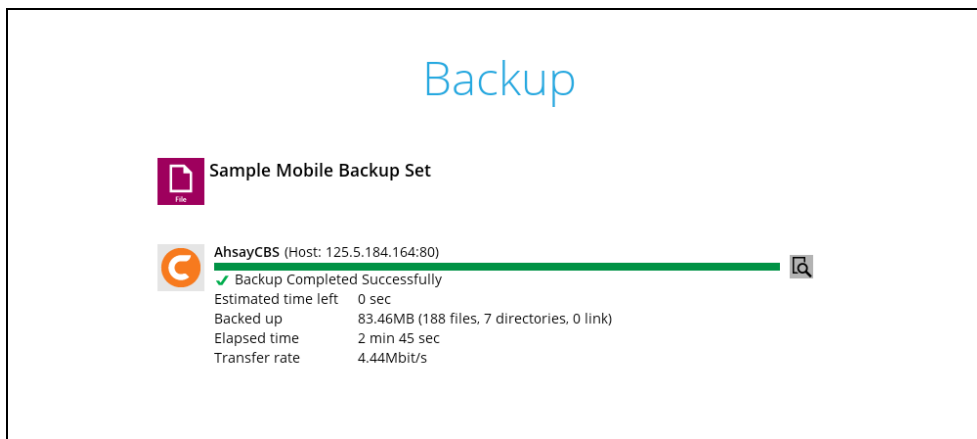
Estimated time left 59 sec (52.27MB)


Backed up 31.18MB (51 files, 7 directories, 0 link)

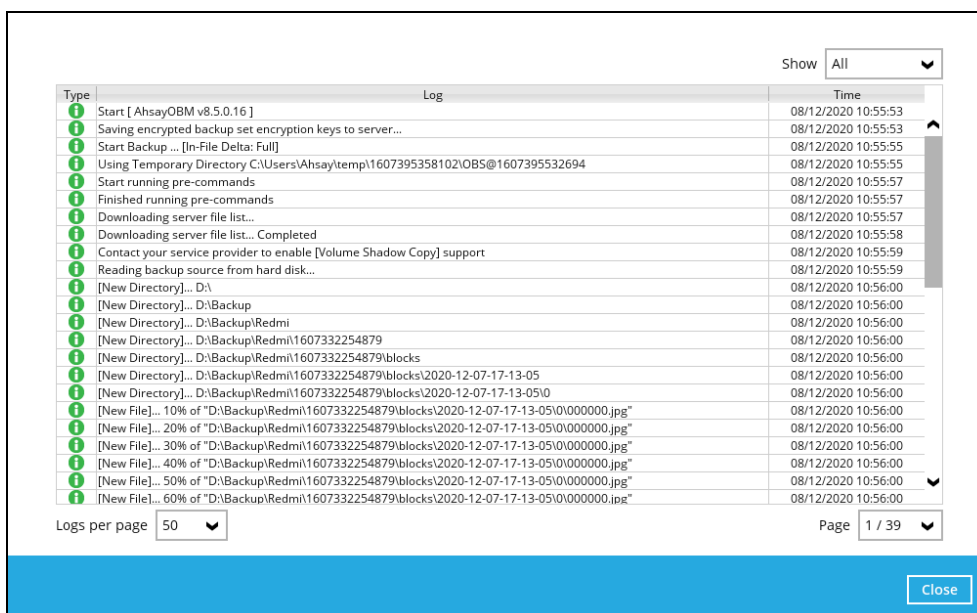
Elapsed time 9 sec

Transfer rate 7.34Mbit/s

- When the backup is completed, the progress bar will be green in color and the message "Backup Completed Successfully" will appear.



- You can click the  **View** icon on the right-hand side to check the log. A window will pop up to show the log. Close the pop-up window when you finish reading it.





## 13.3 Restore Data

There are two (2) options to restore data from AhsayCBS and Predefined Destination to the mobile device, Original location, and Alternate location.

- ▶ Original location - data will be restored on the original location which is the **backup destination for your mobile device**.

Using this option, you can perform seamless restore to your mobile device as the location is the same with the mobile backup destination.

- ▶ Alternate location - data will be restored on an alternate location which can be setup anywhere in the AhsayOBM local machine. If you choose this option then restoring to your mobile device will have to be manually done. There are two (2) options available:
  - ◉ Option 1: Copy the restored data from alternate location to original location which is the **backup destination for your mobile device**. You can now use the Ahsay Mobile app to restore the photos and videos back to your mobile device.
  - ◉ Option 2: Copy the restored data from the alternate location to your Android or iOS mobile device.

Examples:

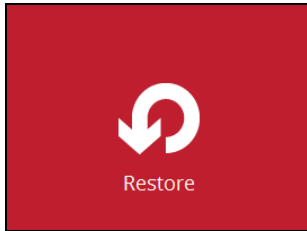
- For an Android device, you need to plug your cable and transfer the restored data from the alternate location to your mobile device storage.
- For an iOS device, you need to transfer the restored data from the alternate location to iCloud.

Restore to alternate location is not supported on another AhsayOBM machine. Options 1 and 2 must be on the original machine where the backups were performed.

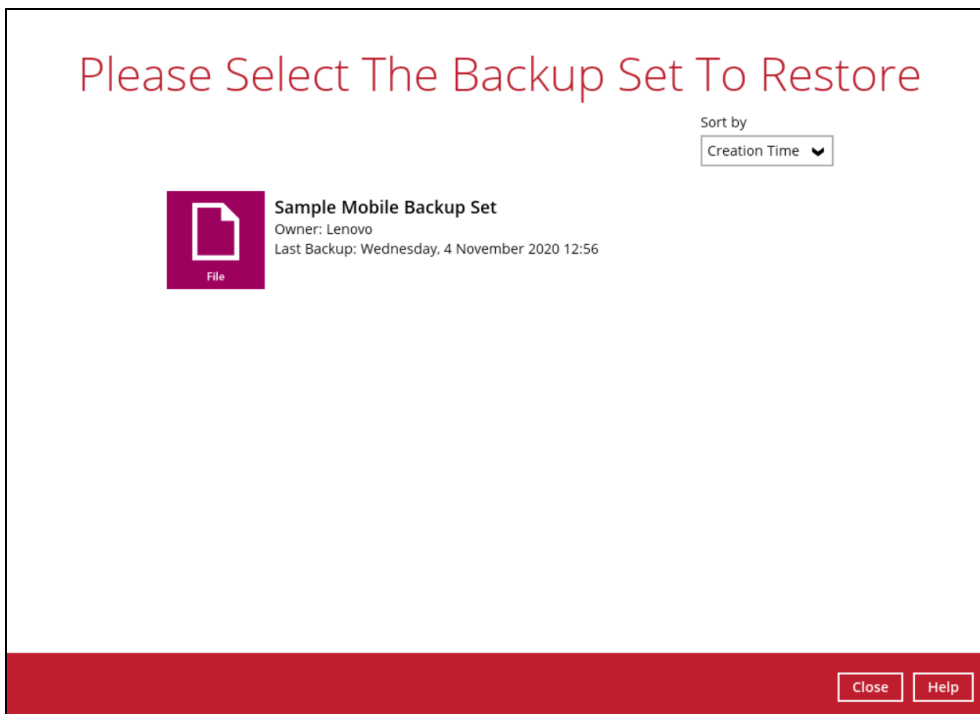
In case the original machine is no longer available, AhsayOBM will be able to restore the photos and videos from AhsayCBS or Predefined Destination to the mobile backup destination folder. However, as the mobile devices were not originally paired with the new installation or machine, the mobile devices will not be able to restore the photos and videos from the AhsayOBM.

### 13.3.1 Original Location

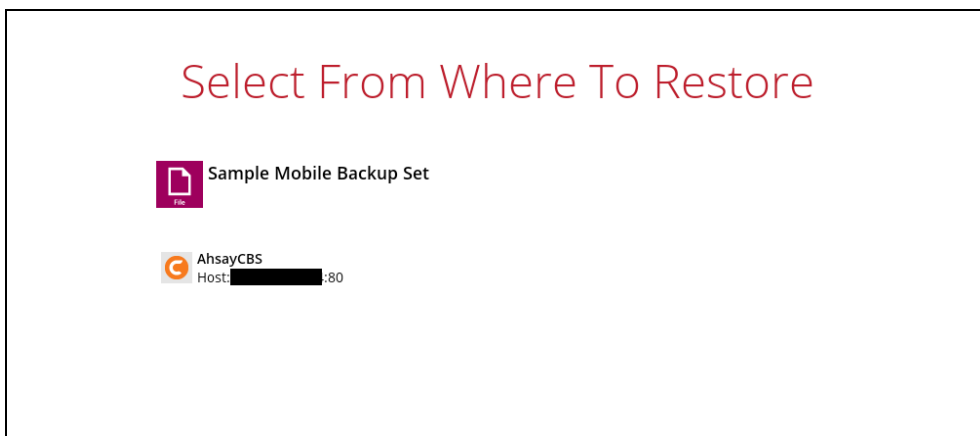
1. Click the **Restore** icon on the main interface of AhsayOBM.



2. All the available backup sets for restore will be listed. Select the backup set that you would like to restore data from.



3. Select where you would like to restore your data from.



4. Select to restore files from a specific backup job, or from all files available. Then, select the files or folders that you would like to restore.

There are two options from the **Select what to restore** dropdown menu:

- **Choose from files as of job** – This option allows you to select a backup version from a specific date and time to restore.

- **Choose from ALL files** – This option allows you to restore all files for this backup set.

Select what to restore

Choose from ALL files ▼

Show filter

Folders	Name	Size	Date modified
AhsayCBS	000000.jpg	262KB	02/10/2020 23:44
D:\	000001.heic	7MB	14/10/2020 15:43
Backup	000002.heic	5MB	14/10/2020 15:44
Redmi	000003.heic	2MB	14/10/2020 15:44
1607332254879	000004.heic	3MB	14/10/2020 15:44
blocks	000005.heic	5MB	14/10/2020 15:45
2020-12-07-17-13-05	000006.jpg	304KB	21/10/2020 10:29
0	000007.jpg	172KB	21/10/2020 10:33
	000008.jpg	253KB	21/10/2020 10:34
	000009.jpg	248KB	22/10/2020 09:50
	00000a.jpg	251KB	22/10/2020 09:51
	00000b.jpg	152KB	22/10/2020 14:55
	00000c.jpg	115KB	22/10/2020 14:55
	00000d.jpg	112KB	22/10/2020 14:56
	00000e.jpg	151KB	22/10/2020 14:56
	00000f.jpg	228KB	22/10/2020 17:00
	000010.jpg	141KB	27/10/2020 09:30
	000011.jpg	139KB	27/10/2020 09:42
	000012.jpg	139KB	27/10/2020 09:42

Search

Items per page 50 ▼ Page 1 / 4 ▼

Click **Next** to proceed when you are done with the selections.

5. Select to restore the files to **Original location**. Then, click **Next** to proceed.

The backed up data will be restored to the computer running the AhsayOBM under the same directory path as on the machine storing the backup source.

For example, if the backup source files are stored under **Users/[User's Name]/Downloads** folder, the data will be restored to **Users/[User's Name]/Downloads** as well on the computer running the AhsayOBM.

## Choose Where The Files To Be Restored

Restore files to

☒ Original location

☐ Alternate location

☐ This share requires access credentials

Show advanced option

6. Click **Show advanced option** to configure other restore settings:

Restore files to

☒ Original location

☐ Alternate location

☐ This share requires access credentials

Show advanced option

### Choose Where The Files To Be Restored

Restore files to

☒ Original location

☐ Alternate location

☐ This share requires access credentials

☐ Restore file permissions

☐ Delete extra files

☒ Follow Link

☐ Verify checksum of in-file delta files during restore

Hide advanced option

• **Restore file permissions**

Restore file permissions are disabled by default. When you perform a file restore on shared files or folders using a shared computer, it is recommended that you enable Restore file permissions by ticking the checkbox so that the files restored will not be fully accessible to everyone using the shared computer.

• **Delete extra files**

By enabling this option, the restore process will attempt to synchronize the selected restore source with the restore destination, making sure the data in the restore destination is exactly the same as the restore source. Any data created after backup will be treated as “extra files” and will be deleted from the restore source if this feature is enabled.

**WARNING**

Please exercise extra caution when enabling this feature. Consider what data in the restore source has not been backed up and what impact it would cause if those data were deleted. Prior to the data restore and synchronization, a warning message shows as the one shown below. Only clicking **Yes** will the “extra file” be deleted. You can click **Apply to all** to confirm deleting all the “extra files” at a time.

⦿ **Follow Link (Enabled by default)**

When this option is enabled, not only the symbolic link or junction point will be restored, the directories and files that the symbolic link or junction point links to will also be restored.

The table below summarizes the behaviors when a restore is performed with different settings.

Follow Link	Restore to	Behavior
Enabled	Original location	Symbolic link or junction point is restored to the original backup location. Target directories or files are also restored to the original backup location.
	Alternate location	Symbolic link or junction point is restored to the location specified. Target directories or files are also restored to the alternate location specified.
Disabled	Original location	Symbolic link or junction point is restored to the original backup location. Target directories or files are <b>NOT</b> restored to the original backup location.
	Alternate location	Symbolic link or junction point is restored to the location specified. Target directories or files are <b>NOT</b> restored to the alternate location specified.

⦿ **Verify checksum of in-file delta files during restore**

Verify checksum of in-file delta files during restore is disabled by default. You can enable the feature by ticking the checkbox so that the checksum of in-file delta files will be verified. As the feature will make the restore process time longer, it is recommended to enable the feature only if you want to verify whether the merged files were correct.

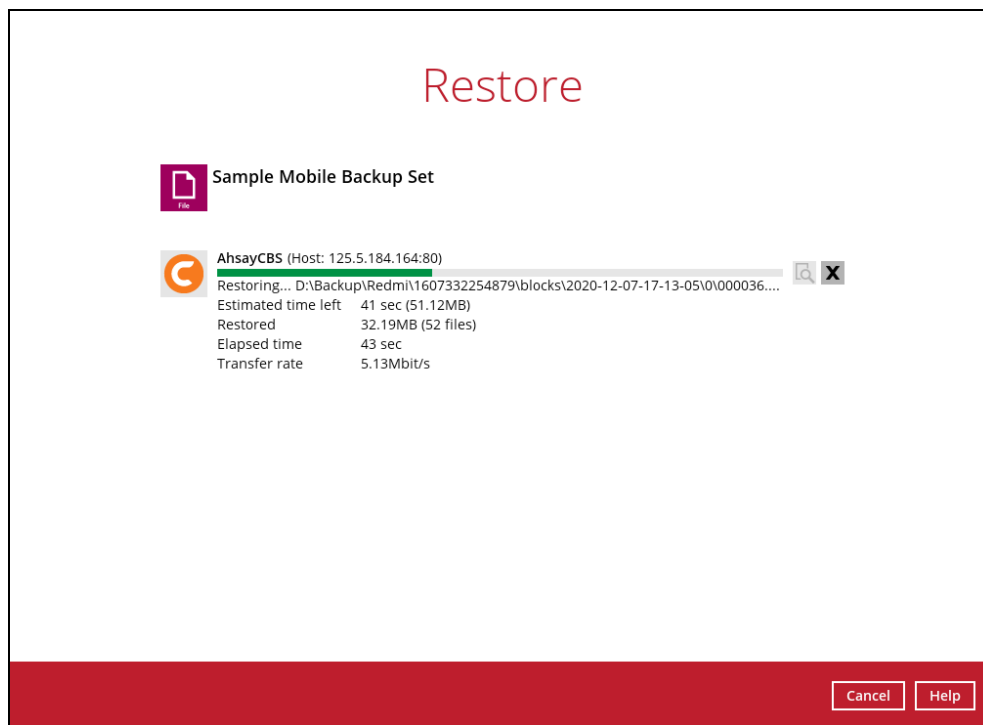
Click **Next** to proceed when you are done with the settings.

7. Select the temporary directory for storing temporary files, such as delta files, when they are being merged. By default, the temporary files are stored under the temp directory of the user profile directory. In case the same directory path does not exist in the computer you are running AhsayOBM, you have to click **Browse** to define a new location for storing the temporary files. Otherwise, you will not be able to perform a restore.

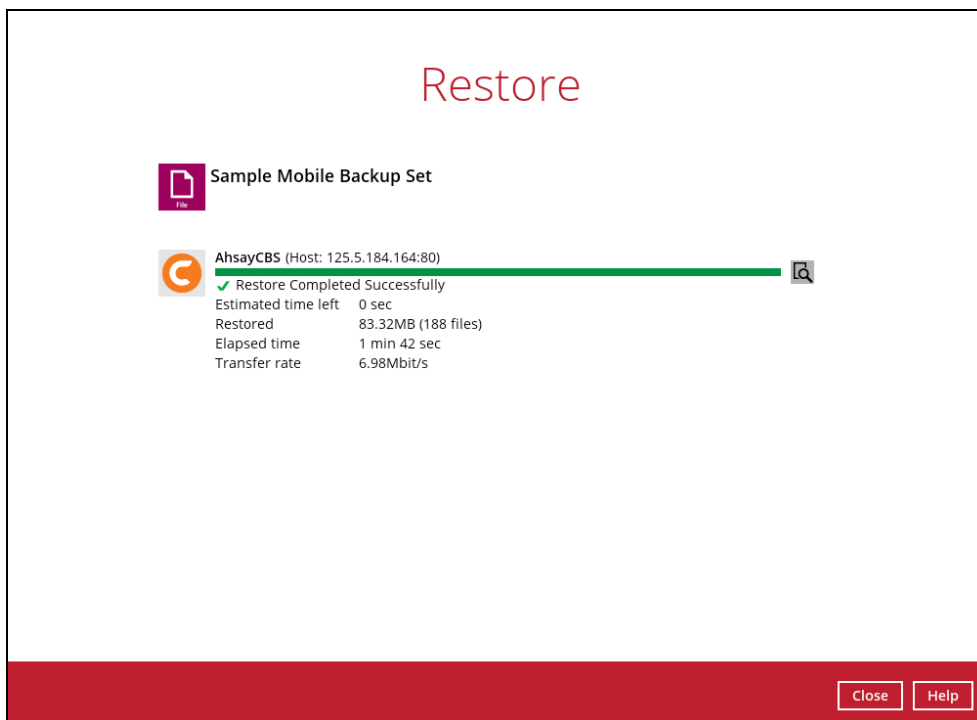
## Temporary Directory


Temporary directory for storing restore files
























8. Click **Restore** to start the restore. The status will be shown.



9. When the restore is completed, the progress bar will be green in color and the message "Restore Completed Successfully" will appear.



10. You can click the  **View** icon on the right-hand side to check the log. A window will pop up to show the log. Close the pop-up window when you finish reading it.

Type	Log	Time
	Start [ AhsayOBM v8.5.0.16 ]	08/12/2020 12:49:27
	Initializing decrypt action...	08/12/2020 12:49:27
	Initializing decrypt action... Completed	08/12/2020 12:49:27
	Creating new directory... "D:\Backup\Redmi"	08/12/2020 12:49:29
	Creating new directory... "D:\Backup\Redmi\1607332254879"	08/12/2020 12:49:29
	Creating new directory... "D:\Backup\Redmi\1607332254879\blocks"	08/12/2020 12:49:29
	Creating new directory... "D:\Backup\Redmi\1607332254879\blocks\2020-12-07-17-13-05"	08/12/2020 12:49:29
	Creating new directory... "D:\Backup\Redmi\1607332254879\blocks\2020-12-07-17-13-05\0\000000.jpg"	08/12/2020 12:49:29
	Downloading... "D:\Backup\Redmi\1607332254879\blocks\2020-12-07-17-13-05\0\000000.jpg" (Total 261K bytes)	08/12/2020 12:49:29
	Downloading... "D:\Backup\Redmi\1607332254879\blocks\2020-12-07-17-13-05\0\000001.heic" (Total 6.88M bytes)	08/12/2020 12:49:29
	Downloading... "D:\Backup\Redmi\1607332254879\blocks\2020-12-07-17-13-05\0\000002.heic" (Total 4.77M bytes)	08/12/2020 12:49:29
	Downloading... "D:\Backup\Redmi\1607332254879\blocks\2020-12-07-17-13-05\0\000003.heic" (Total 2.06M bytes)	08/12/2020 12:49:49
	Downloading... "D:\Backup\Redmi\1607332254879\blocks\2020-12-07-17-13-05\0\000004.heic" (Total 2.76M bytes)	08/12/2020 12:49:50
	Downloading... "D:\Backup\Redmi\1607332254879\blocks\2020-12-07-17-13-05\0\000005.heic" (Total 5.14M bytes)	08/12/2020 12:50:08
	Downloading... "D:\Backup\Redmi\1607332254879\blocks\2020-12-07-17-13-05\0\000006.jpg" (Total 304K bytes)	08/12/2020 12:50:08
	Downloading... "D:\Backup\Redmi\1607332254879\blocks\2020-12-07-17-13-05\0\000007.jpg" (Total 171K bytes)	08/12/2020 12:50:08
	Downloading... "D:\Backup\Redmi\1607332254879\blocks\2020-12-07-17-13-05\0\000008.jpg" (Total 252K bytes)	08/12/2020 12:50:08
	Downloading... "D:\Backup\Redmi\1607332254879\blocks\2020-12-07-17-13-05\0\000009.jpg" (Total 247K bytes)	08/12/2020 12:50:08
	Downloading... "D:\Backup\Redmi\1607332254879\blocks\2020-12-07-17-13-05\0\00000a.jpg" (Total 251K bytes)	08/12/2020 12:50:08
	Downloading... "D:\Backup\Redmi\1607332254879\blocks\2020-12-07-17-13-05\0\00000b.jpg" (Total 152K bytes)	08/12/2020 12:50:08
	Downloading... "D:\Backup\Redmi\1607332254879\blocks\2020-12-07-17-13-05\0\00000c.jpg" (Total 115K bytes)	08/12/2020 12:50:08
	Downloading... "D:\Backup\Redmi\1607332254879\blocks\2020-12-07-17-13-05\0\00000d.jpg" (Total 112K bytes)	08/12/2020 12:50:08
	Downloading... "D:\Backup\Redmi\1607332254879\blocks\2020-12-07-17-13-05\0\00000e.jpg" (Total 151K bytes)	08/12/2020 12:50:08

Logs per page 50 Page 1 / 4

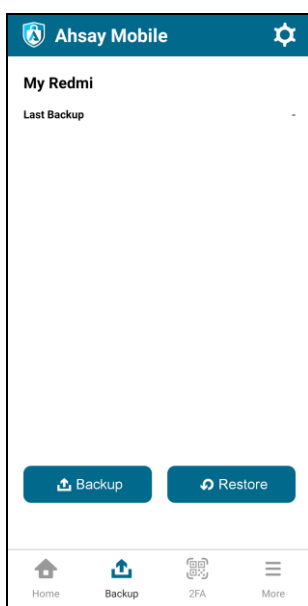
Close

11. You can restore the restored data from the original location to your mobile device by using the Ahsay Mobile app.

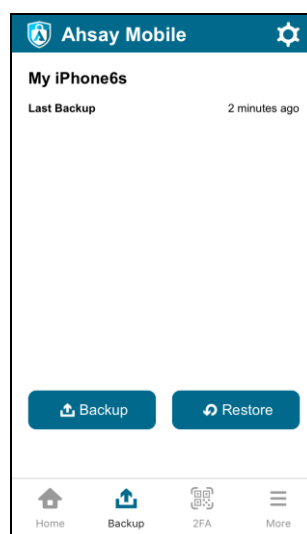
Original location: **D:\Backup\Redmi**

Name	Date	Type	Size	Tags
000000.jpg	02/10/2020 11:44 pm	JPG File	262 KB	
00000a.jpg	22/10/2020 9:51 am	JPG File	252 KB	
00000b.jpg	22/10/2020 2:55 pm	JPG File	153 KB	
00000c.jpg	22/10/2020 2:55 pm	JPG File	116 KB	
00000d.jpg	22/10/2020 2:56 pm	JPG File	113 KB	
00000e.jpg	22/10/2020 2:56 pm	JPG File	152 KB	
00000f.jpg	22/10/2020 5:00 pm	JPG File	229 KB	

Android device



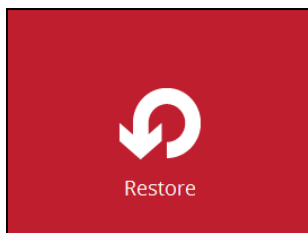
iOS device



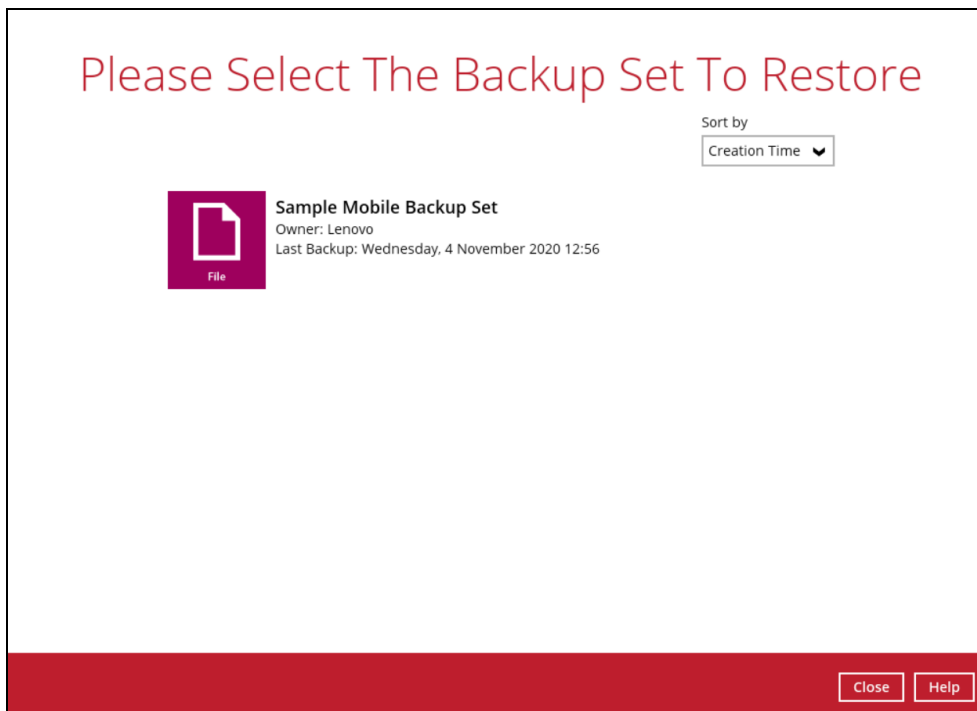


### 13.3.2 Alternate Location

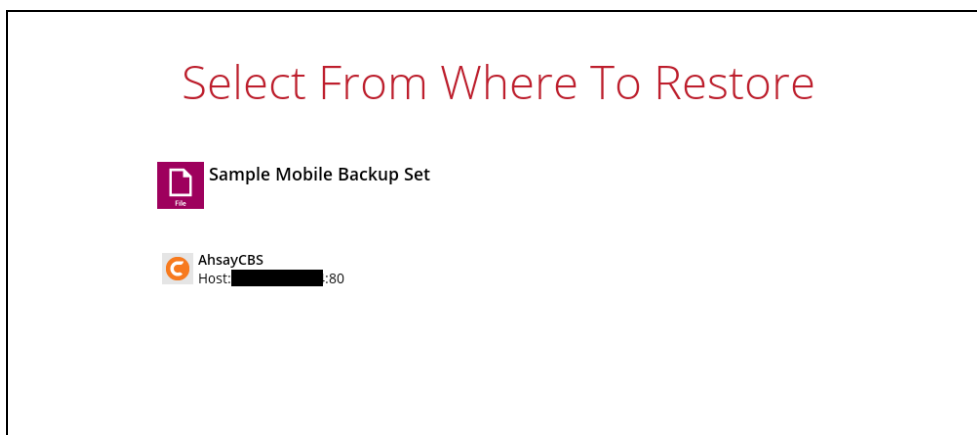
1. Click the **Restore** icon on the main interface of AhsayOBM.



2. All the available backup sets for restore will be listed. Select the backup set that you would like to restore data from.



3. Select where you would like to restore your data from.



4. Select to restore files from a specific backup job, or from all files available. Then, select the files or folders that you would like to restore.

There are two options from the **Select what to restore** dropdown menu:

- **Choose from files as of job** – This option allows you to select a backup version from a specific date and time to restore.

- **Choose from ALL files** – This option allows you to restore all files for this backup set.

Select what to restore

Choose from ALL files ▼

Show filter

Folders	Name	Size	Date modified
AhsayCBS	000000.jpg	262KB	02/10/2020 23:44
D:\Backup	000001.heic	7MB	14/10/2020 15:43
Redmi	000002.heic	5MB	14/10/2020 15:44
1607332254879	000003.heic	2MB	14/10/2020 15:44
blocks	000004.heic	3MB	14/10/2020 15:44
2020-12-07-17-13-05	000005.heic	5MB	14/10/2020 15:45
0	000006.jpg	304KB	21/10/2020 10:29
	000007.jpg	172KB	21/10/2020 10:33
	000008.jpg	253KB	21/10/2020 10:34
	000009.jpg	248KB	22/10/2020 09:50
	00000a.jpg	251KB	22/10/2020 09:51
	00000b.jpg	152KB	22/10/2020 14:55
	00000c.jpg	115KB	22/10/2020 14:55
	00000d.jpg	112KB	22/10/2020 14:56
	00000e.jpg	151KB	22/10/2020 14:56
	00000f.jpg	228KB	22/10/2020 17:00
	000010.jpg	141KB	27/10/2020 09:30
	000011.jpg	139KB	27/10/2020 09:42
	000012.jpg	139KB	27/10/2020 09:42

Search

Items per page 50 Page 1 / 4

Click **Next** to proceed when you are done with the selections.

5. Select to restore the files to **Alternate location**. You can choose to restore the data to a location of your choice on the computer where AhsayOBM is running. Then, click **Next** to proceed.

## Choose Where The Files To Be Restored

Restore files to

☐ Original location

☒ Alternate location D:\Documents

☐ This PC

Show advanced option

Change Path

Look in: Documents

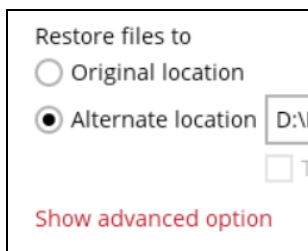
Recent Desktop Documents This PC Network

Folder name: D:\Documents OK

Files of type: All Files Cancel

Previous Next Cancel Help

6. Click **Show advanced option** to configure other restore settings:



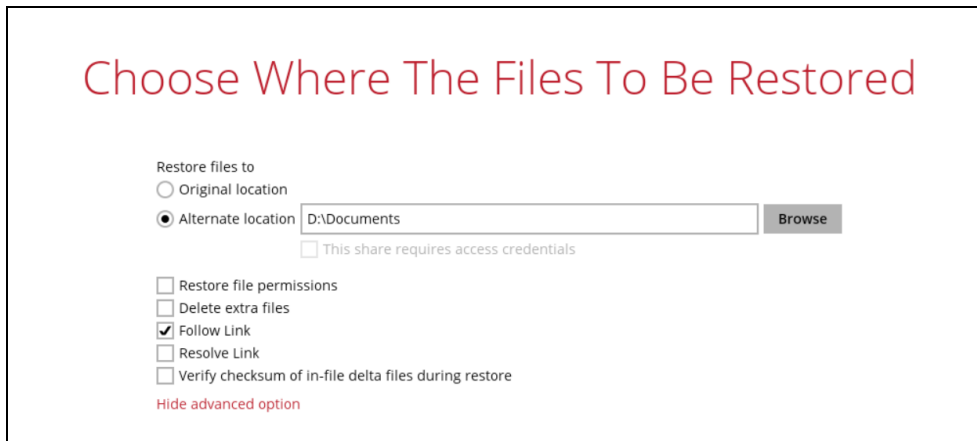
Restore files to

☐ Original location

☒ Alternate location

☐ This share requires access credentials

Show advanced option



Choose Where The Files To Be Restored

Restore files to

☐ Original location

☒ Alternate location

☐ This share requires access credentials

☐ Restore file permissions

☐ Delete extra files

☒ Follow Link

☐ Resolve Link

☐ Verify checksum of in-file delta files during restore

Hide advanced option

• **Restore file permissions**

Restore file permissions are disabled by default. When you perform a file restore on shared files or folders using a shared computer, it is recommended that you enable Restore file permissions by ticking the checkbox so that the files restored will not be fully accessible to everyone using the shared computer.

• **Delete extra files**

By enabling this option, the restore process will attempt to synchronize the selected restore source with the restore destination, making sure the data in the restore destination is exactly the same as the restore source. Any data created after backup will be treated as “extra files” and will be deleted from the restore source if this feature is enabled.

**WARNING**

Please exercise extra caution when enabling this feature. Consider what data in the restore source has not been backed up and what impact it would cause if those data is deleted.

Prior to the data restore and synchronization, a warning message shows as the one shown below. Only clicking **Yes** will the “extra file” be deleted. You can click **Apply to all** to confirm deleting all the “extra files” at a time.

⦿ **Follow Link (Enabled by default)**

When this option is enabled, not only the symbolic link or junction point will be restored, the directories and files that the symbolic link or junction point links to will also be restored.

The table below summarizes the behaviors when a restore is performed with different settings.

Follow Link	Restore to	Behavior
Enabled	Original location	Symbolic link or junction point is restored to the original backup location. Target directories or files are also restored to the original backup location.
	Alternate location	Symbolic link or junction point is restored to the location specified. Target directories or files are also restored to the alternate location specified.
Disabled	Original location	Symbolic link or junction point is restored to the original backup location. Target directories or files are <b>NOT</b> restored to the original backup location.
	Alternate location	Symbolic link or junction point is restored to the location specified. Target directories or files are <b>NOT</b> restored to the alternate location specified.

⦿ **Resolve Link**

This option must be used in conjunction with the Follow Link option. When this option is enabled, the symbolic link, as well as the directories and files that the symbolic link links to will also be restored in the alternate location you have chosen. That means the symbolic link will point to the alternate location instead of the original location.

The table below summarizes the behaviors when a restore is performed with this option turned on and off.

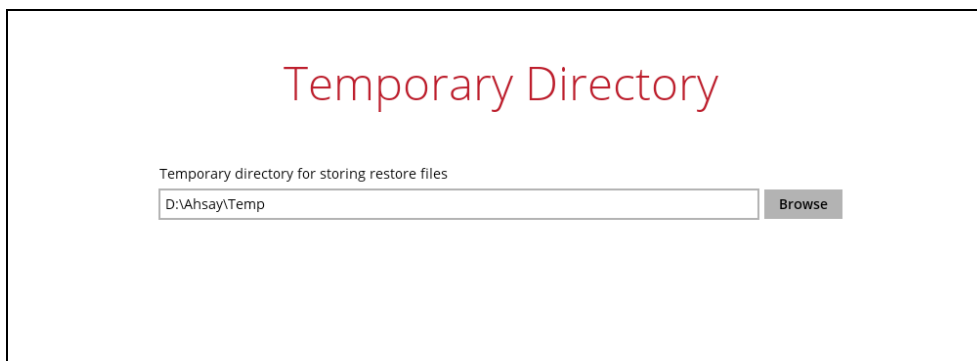
Resolve Link	Behavior
Enabled	Symbolic link is restored to the alternate location specified, with its target directories and files also restored to the same location in their relative path. Target of the link is updated to the new relative path. In other word, the link now points to the new alternate location.
Disabled	Symbolic link is restored to the alternate location specified, with its target directories and files also restored to the same location in their relative path. However, target of the link is NOT updated to the new relative path. In other word, the link still points to the original location.

### • **Verify checksum of in-file delta files during restore**

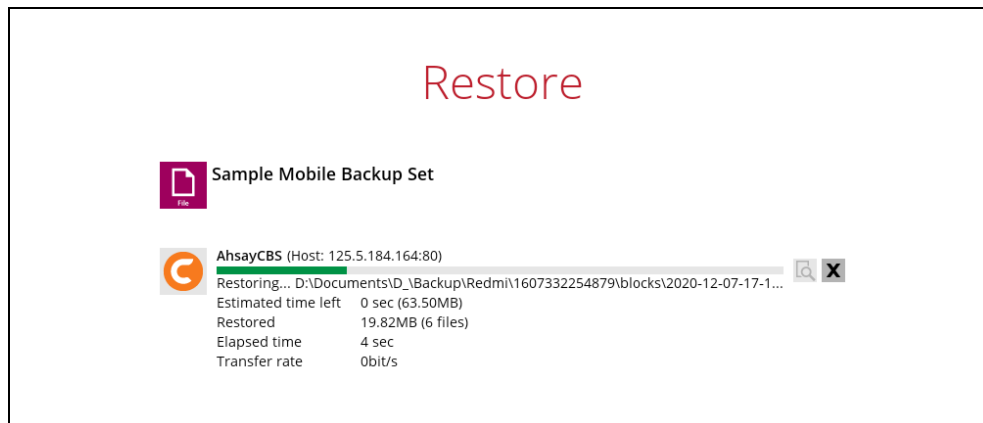
Verify checksum of in-file delta files during restore is disabled by default. You can enable the feature by ticking the checkbox so that the checksum of in-file delta files will be verified. As the feature will make the restore process time longer, it is recommended to enable the feature only if you want to verify whether the merged files were correct.

Click **Next** to proceed when you are done with the settings.

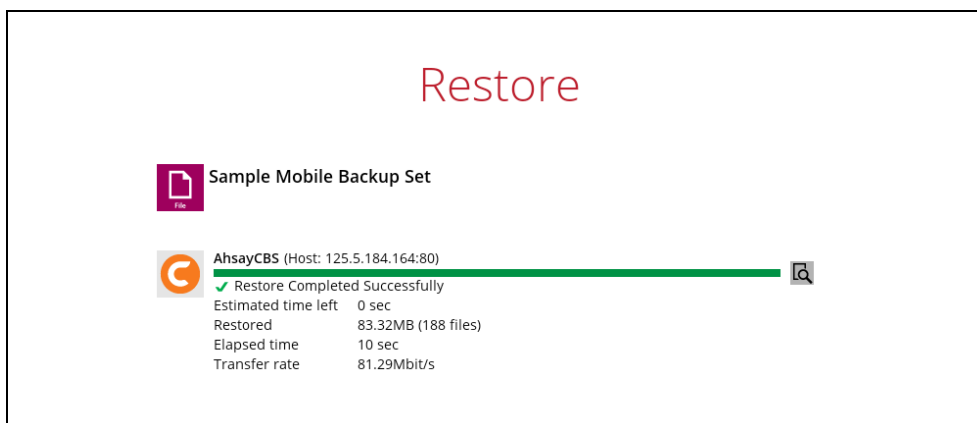
7. Select the temporary directory for storing temporary files, such as delta files, when they are being merged. By default, the temporary files are stored under the temp directory of the user profile directory. In case the same directory path does not exist in the computer you are running AhsayOBM, you have to click **Browse** to define a new location for storing the temporary files. Otherwise, you will not be able to perform a restore.




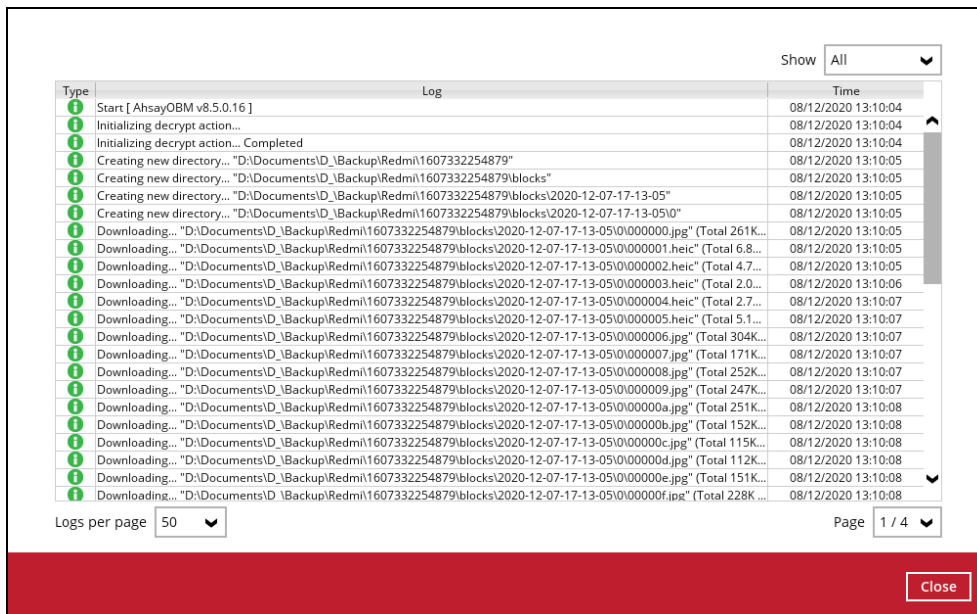
8. Click **Restore** to start the restore. The status will be shown.



9. When the restore is completed, the progress bar will be green in color and the message "Restore Completed Successfully" will appear.



10. You can click the  **View** icon on the right-hand side to check the log. A window will pop up to show the log. Close the pop-up window when you finish reading it.

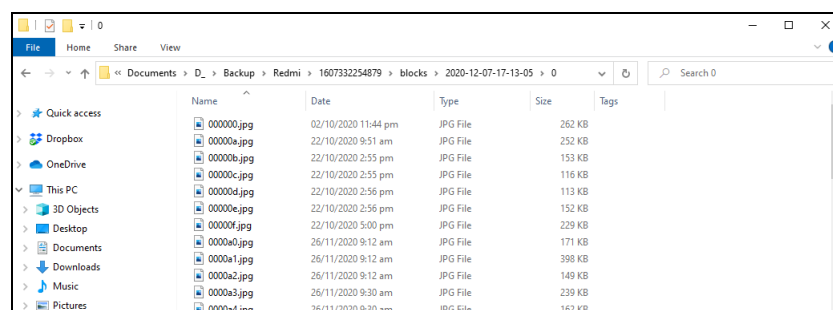


11. These are the steps to restore the restored data from the alternate location to your mobile device.

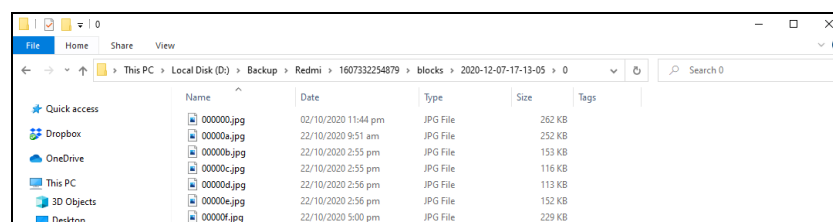
Option 1: Copy the restored data from alternate location to original location which is the **backup destination for your mobile device**.

Example:

Alternate location: **D:\Documents**



Original location: **D:\Backup**



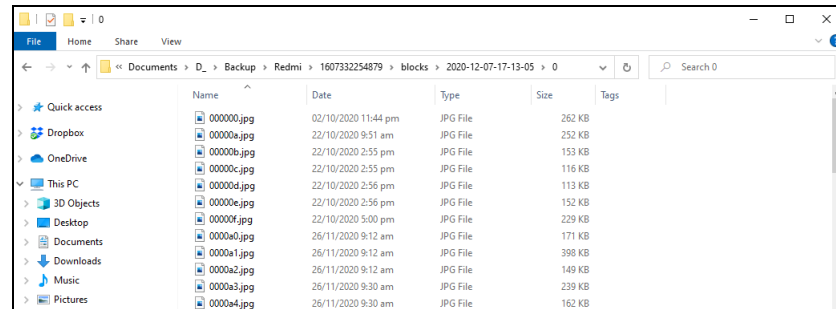
You can now use the Ahsay Mobile app to restore the photos and videos back to your mobile device.

Option 2: Copy the restored data from the alternate location to your Android or iOS mobile device.

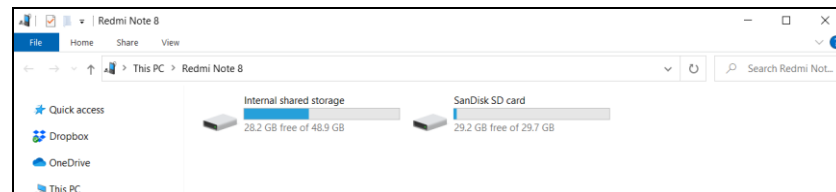
Examples:

- ▶ For an Android device, you need to plug your cable and transfer the restored data from the alternate location to your mobile device storage.

Alternate location: **D:\Documents**

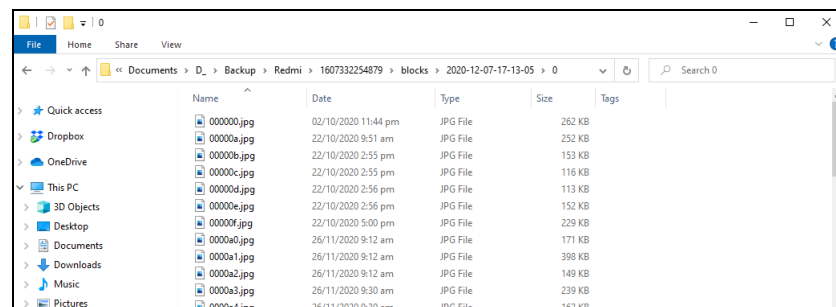


Mobile device storage: Redmi Note 8 Internal storage and SD Card

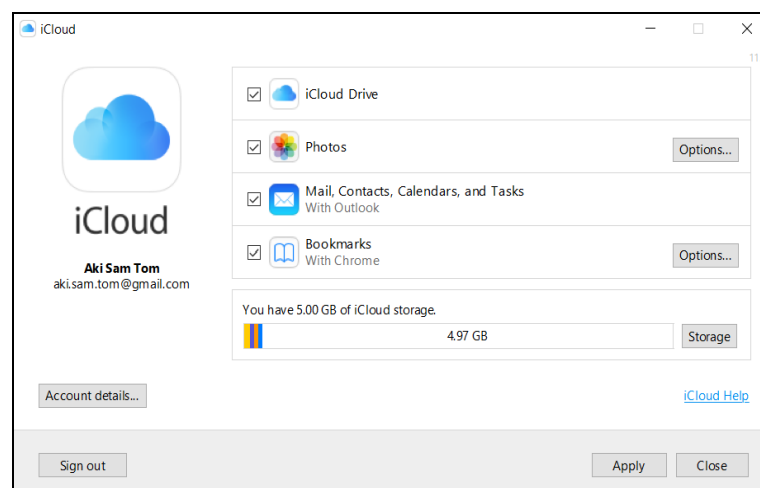


- ▶ For an iOS device, you need to transfer the restored data from the alternate location to iCloud.

Alternate location: **D:\D\_Backup**



Upload to iCloud using the iCloud app





## 14 Contact Ahsay

### 14.1 Technical Assistance

To contact Ahsay support representatives for technical assistance, visit the Partner Portal:

<https://www.ahsay.com/partners/>

Also use the Ahsay Wikipedia for resource such as Hardware Compatibility List, Software Compatibility List, and other product information:

<https://wiki.ahsay.com/>

### 14.2 Documentation

Documentations for all Ahsay products are available at:

[https://www.ahsay.com/jsp/en/downloads/ahsay-downloads\\_documentation\\_guides.jsp](https://www.ahsay.com/jsp/en/downloads/ahsay-downloads_documentation_guides.jsp)

You can send us suggestions for improvements or report on issues in the documentation by contacting us at:

<https://www.ahsay.com/partners/>

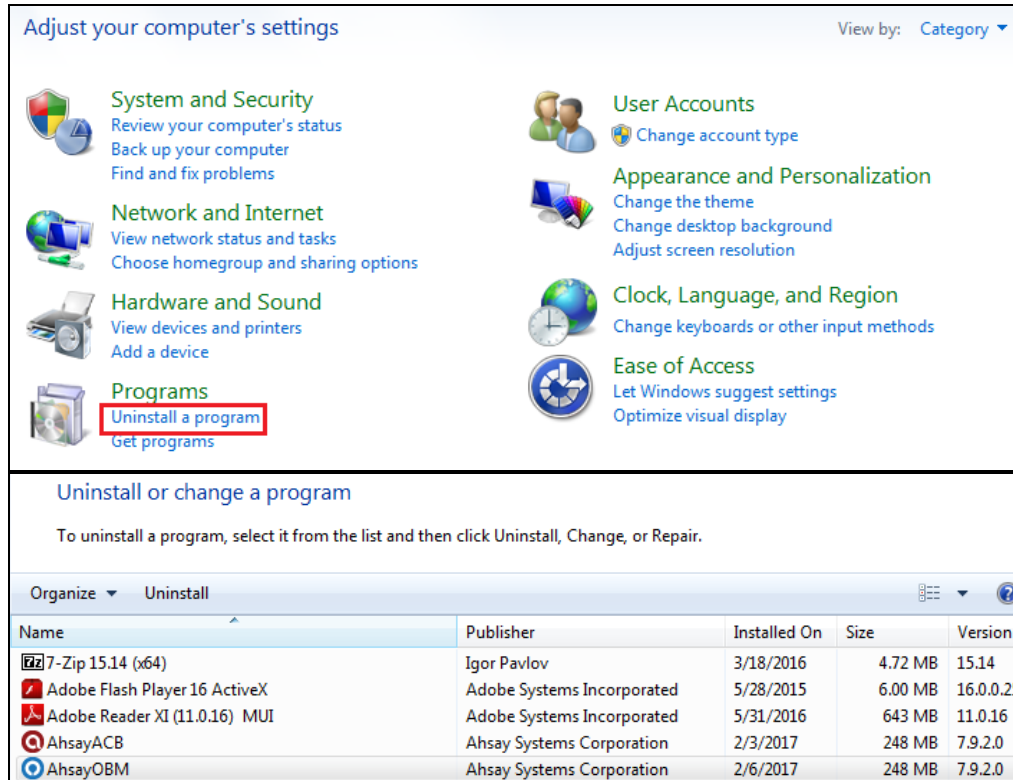
Please specify the specific document title as well as the change required/suggestion when contacting us.

## Appendix

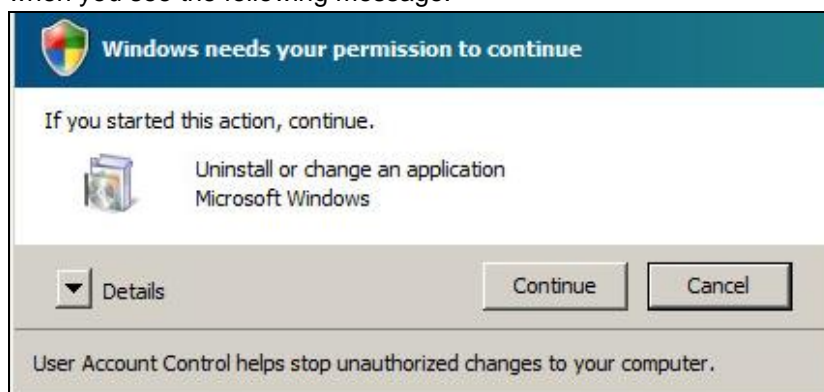
### Appendix A: Uninstall AhsayOBM

Follow the steps below to uninstall AhsayOBM from your Windows.

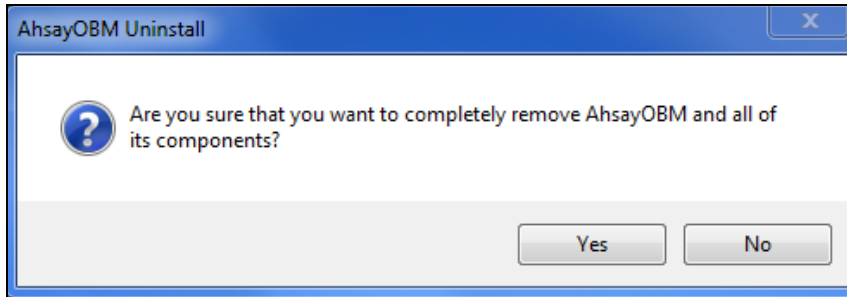
1. Go to **Control Panel > Programs and Features > Uninstall a program**, then look for AhsayOBM and double click on it.



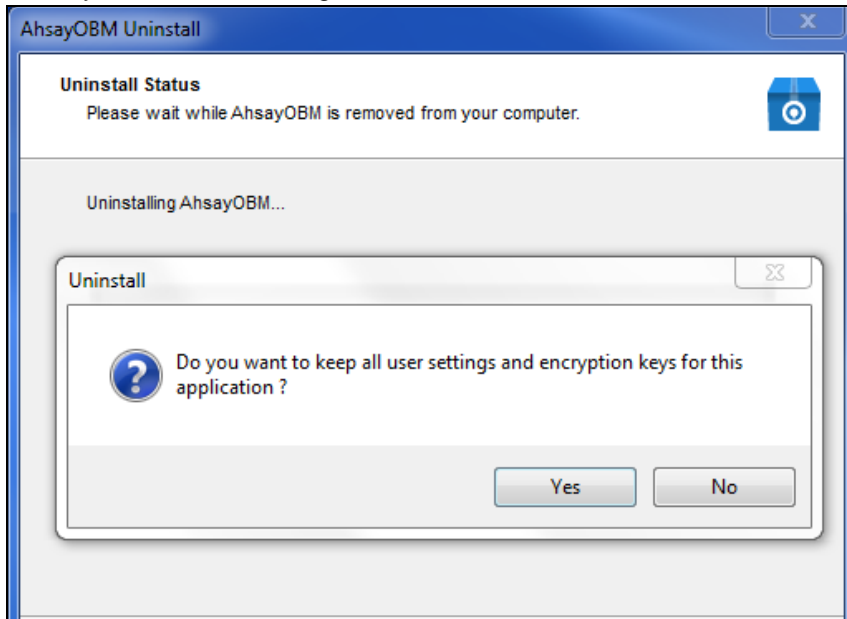
2. The following dialog box will appear only if User Account Control is enabled. Click **Continue** when you see the following message.



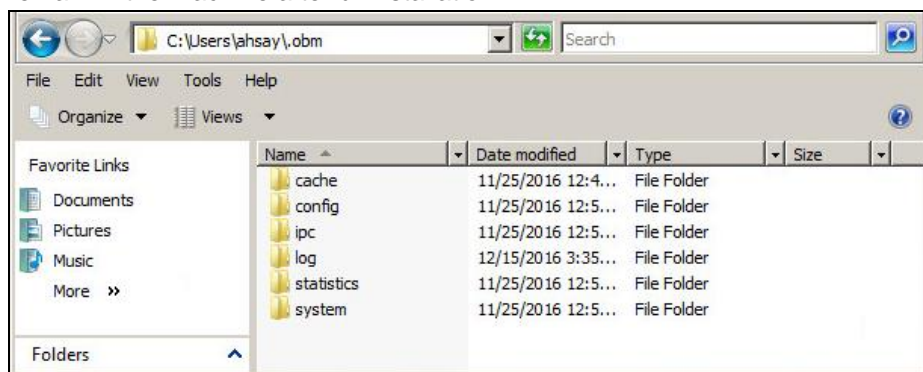
3. Click **Yes** to confirm and proceed with the uninstallation.



4. When you see the following screen:

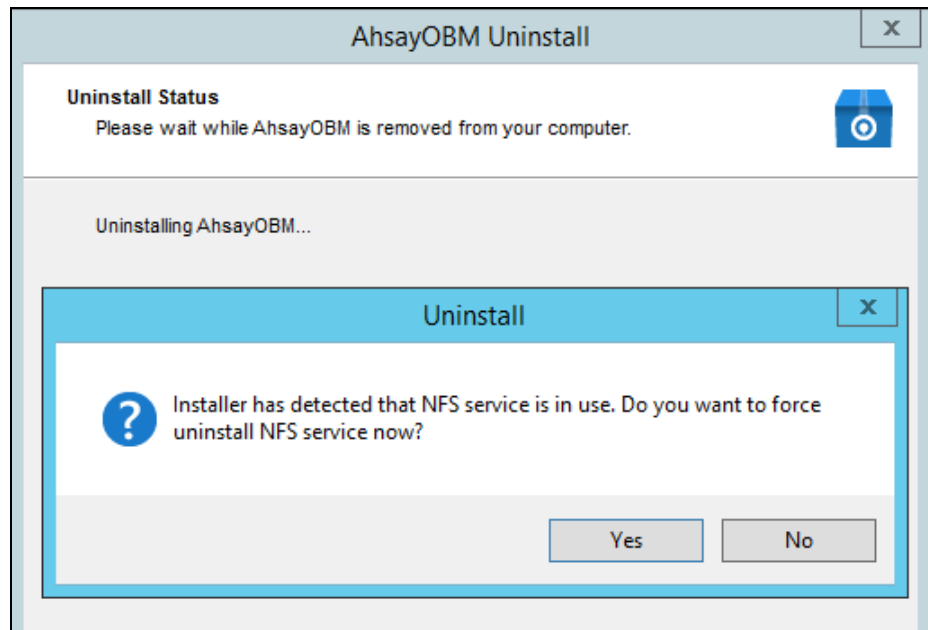


- Choose **Yes** to keep all user settings and the encryption keys associated with the users. If you are likely to install AhsayOBM on the same machine in the future again, the user settings, e.g., login details, backup sets and so forth will remain in **C:\Users\[username]\obm** by default. The screen capture below shows the folders remain in the machine after uninstallation.

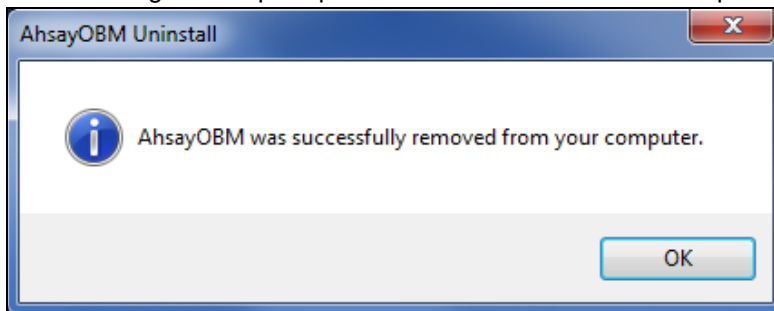


- Choose **No** to delete all user settings and encryption keys with this uninstallation. Please be reminded that the encryption keys are not retrievable once they have been deleted unless the encryption keys have been uploaded to AhsayCBS server, and therefore it will no longer be possible for backup user to recover their encryption key in case they do not have a separate written record.

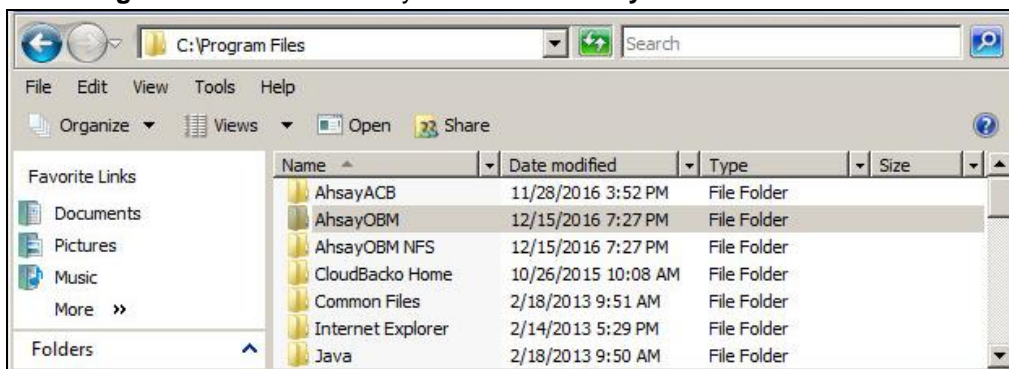
5. If there is a Run Direct restore running at the time of the AhsayOBM uninstallation, the following screen prompts to alert you the NFS service is in use.
- Select **No** if you do not wish to force uninstall the NFS service. AhsayOBM will be uninstalled without affecting the NFS service, where the Run Direct restore will not be interrupted.
  - Select **Yes** to force uninstall the NFS service. Both AhsayOBM and NFS service will be uninstalled from the machine. The VM running Run Direct restore and the datastore are both unmounted from the VMware server.



6. The following screen prompts when the uninstallation is completed.



7. (Optional) For a complete removal of all AhsayOBM-related files in your machine, please go to **C:\Program Files** and manually remove the **AhsayOBM** folder.



## Appendix B: Example Scenarios for Restore Filter

**Example No.1:** Restore filter setting from C:\Users\Administrator\Documents\TestFiles with filter type Contains

Location:	C:\Users\Administrator\Documents\TestFiles
Search subfolders:	True
Kind:	Files and Directories
Type:	Contains
Pattern:	Set
Match Case:	True

Follow the step-by-step procedure indicated on [Restore Filter](#).

The screenshot shows the Windows Search dialog box. At the top, the title 'Search' is in red. Below it, the 'Look in' field contains 'C:\Users\Administrator\Documents\TestFiles' with a 'Change' button to its right. A checked checkbox labeled 'Search subfolders' is below. The 'Kind' dropdown is set to 'Files and Directories', the 'Type' dropdown is set to 'contains', and the 'Pattern' field contains 'Set'. A checked checkbox labeled 'Match case' is to the right of the 'Pattern' field. Below these settings is a 'Search' button. Underneath is a table with four columns: 'Name', 'In Folder', 'Size', and 'Date modified'. The table is currently empty. At the bottom left, 'Items per page' is set to '50'. At the bottom right, 'Page' is set to '-'. At the very bottom, there are two rows of buttons: the top row has 'OK', 'Cancel', and 'Help'; the bottom row has 'Previous', 'Next', 'Cancel', and 'Help'.



The restore filter setting includes the Search subfolder and Match case set to true. This means that the filter will include all available subfolders in \TestFiles upon searching. And it will strictly search only the specified pattern and case which starts with 'Set'.

**Example No.2:** Restore filter setting from C:\Users\Administrator\Documents\TestFiles with filter type Starts With

Location:	C:\Users\Administrator\Documents\TestFiles
Search subfolders:	True
Kind:	Files
Type:	Starts With
Pattern:	A
Match Case:	True

Follow the step-by-step procedure indicated on [Restore Filter](#).

Search

Look in  
C:\Users\Administrator\Documents\TestFiles Change

☒ Search subfolders

Kind Type Pattern  
Files only starts with A ☒ Match case

Search

Name	In Folder	Size	Date modified
------	-----------	------	---------------

Items per page 50 Page 1

OK Cancel Help

Previous Next Cancel Help





The restore filter setting includes the Search subfolder and Match case set to true. This means that the filter will include all available subfolders in \TestFiles upon searching. And it will strictly search only the specified pattern and case which starts with 'A'.

**Example No.3:** Restore filter setting from C:\Users\Administrator\Documents\TestFiles with filter type Ends With

Location:	C:\Users\Administrator\Documents\TestFiles
Search subfolders:	True
Kind:	Files and Directories
Type:	Ends With
Pattern:	g
Match Case:	True

Follow the step-by-step procedure indicated on [Restore Filter](#).

**Search**

Look in  
 Change

☒ Search subfolders

Kind: Files and Directories ▼ Type: ends with ▼ Pattern:  ☒ Match case

Search

Name	In Folder	Size	Date modified
------	-----------	------	---------------

Items per page: 50 ▼ Page: 1 ▼

OK Cancel Help

Previous Next Cancel Help

### Search

Look in  
 Change

☒ Search subfolders

Kind:  Type:  Pattern:  ☒ Match case

Searching ... Stop

Name	In Folder	Size	Date modified
------	-----------	------	---------------

Items per page:  Page:

OK Cancel Help

Previous Next Cancel Help

### Search

Look in  
 Change

☒ Search subfolders

Kind:  Type:  Pattern:  ☒ Match case

Search

Name	In Folder	Size	Date modified
<input type="checkbox"/> AlertMessage0001.jpg	C:\Users\Administrator\Documents\TestFiles	491 KB	04/11/2019 11:18
<input type="checkbox"/> AlertMessage0002.jpg	C:\Users\Administrator\Documents\TestFiles	491 KB	04/11/2019 11:18
<input type="checkbox"/> AlertMessage0003.jpg	C:\Users\Administrator\Documents\TestFiles	491 KB	04/11/2019 11:18
<input type="checkbox"/> AlertMessage0004.jpg	C:\Users\Administrator\Documents\TestFiles	491 KB	04/11/2019 11:18
<input type="checkbox"/> AlertMessage0005.jpg	C:\Users\Administrator\Documents\TestFiles	491 KB	04/11/2019 11:18

Items per page:  Page:

OK Cancel Help

Previous Next Cancel Help

#### Explanation:

All files and directories under C:\Users\Administrator\Documents\TestFiles that has the pattern that ends with 'g' with match case set to true will be included upon performing search.

As you can see on the screen shot above, the result panel contains the Name of the files and directories, Directory which are indicated In-Folder column, Size, and Date Modified.

The restore filter setting includes the Search subfolder and Match case set to true. This means that the filter will include all available subfolders in \TestFiles upon searching. And it will strictly search only the specified pattern and case which starts with 'g'.

**Example No.4:** Restore filter setting from C:\Users\Administrator\Documents\TestFiles with filter type Exact

Location:	C:\Users\Administrator\Documents\TestFiles
Search subfolders:	True
Kind:	Files and Directories
Type:	Exact
Pattern:	SpreadSheet_05.xlsx
Match Case:	True

Follow the step-by-step procedure indicated on [Restore Filter](#).

The screenshot shows the Windows Search dialog box with the following settings:

- Look in:** C:\Users\Administrator\Documents\TestFiles (with a 'Change' button)
- ☒ Search subfolders
- Kind:** Files and Directories (dropdown menu)
- Type:** exact (dropdown menu)
- Pattern:** SpreadSheet\_05.xlsx
- ☒ Match case
- Search** button
- Table with columns: Name, In Folder, Size, Date modified
- Items per page: 50 (dropdown menu)
- Page: - (dropdown menu)
- Buttons at the bottom: OK, Cancel, Help
- Buttons at the bottom: Previous, Next, Cancel, Help



The restore filter setting includes the Search subfolder and Match case set to true. This means that the filter will include all available subfolders in \TestFiles upon searching. And it will strictly search only the specified pattern and case which starts with 'SpreadSheet\_05.xlsx'.

## Appendix C: Batch Files

Below is the list of batch files which can be used as an alternative way to run the AhsayOBM.

- [RunCB.bat](#)
- [RunConfigurator.bat](#)
- [ListBackupSet.bat](#)
- [RunBackupSet.bat](#)
- [ListBackupJob.bat](#)
- [Restore.bat](#)
- [Decrypt.bat](#)
- [RunDataIntegrityCheck.bat](#)

### RunCB.bat

This allows the user to open the AhsayOBM without clicking the AhsayOBM icon.

On the command prompt (cmd), export the batch file to a text editor using the following script.

```
C:\Program Files\AhsayOBM\bin>notepad RunCB.bat  
  
C:\Program Files\AhsayOBM\bin>
```

Configure the following parameters:

- **SETTING\_HOME** – this is the directory to your setting home. If not set, the directory will be "C:\Users\USER\obm" by default.

e.g. `SET SETTING_HOME="C:\Users\John\obm"`

- **DEBUG\_MODE** – this parameter is used to enable or disable the debug mode when opening the AhsayOBM application.

e.g. `SET DEBUG_MODE="--debug"`  
or `SET DEBUG_MODE=""`

```
@ECHO OFF  
REM ##### RunCB.bat #####  
REM # You can use this batch to run the backup client application  
REM #####  
REM ##### Start: User Defined Section #####  
REM ----- SETTING_HOME -----  
REM | Directory to your setting home. Default to  
REM | "C:\Users\USER\obm" when not set.  
REM | e.g. SET SETTING_HOME="C:\Users\John\obm"  
REM -----  
SET SETTING_HOME=""  
REM ----- DEBUG_MODE -----  
REM | Enable/Disable debug mode  
REM | e.g. SET DEBUG_MODE="--debug"  
REM | or SET DEBUG_MODE=""  
REM -----  
SET DEBUG_MODE=""
```

```

REM ##### END: User Defined Section #####
SET EXE_DIR=%CD%
SET APP_HOME=..
SET JAVA_HOME=%APP_HOME%\jvm
SET JAVA_EXE=%JAVA_HOME%\bin\bjw.exe
SET JAVA_LIB_PATH=-Djava.library.path=%APP_HOME%\bin
SET PATH=%JAVA_HOME%\bin;%PATH%
IF "%PROCESSOR_ARCHITECTURE%"=="x86" (
    SET "DEP_LIB_PATH=X86"
    SET JAVA_OPTS=-Xms128m -Xmx768m -XX:MaxDirectMemorySize=512m -
Dsun.java2d.noddraw -Dsun.nio.PageAlignDirectMemory=true
) ELSE (
    SET "DEP_LIB_PATH=X64"
    SET JAVA_OPTS=-Xms128m -Xmx2048m -XX:MaxDirectMemorySize=1024m -
Dsun.java2d.noddraw -Dsun.nio.PageAlignDirectMemory=true
)
SET PATH=%APP_HOME%\bin;%DEP_LIB_PATH%;%JAVA_HOME%\bin;%PATH%
SET CLASSPATH=%APP_HOME%\bin;%APP_HOME%\bin\cb.jar
REM #####
ECHO -
ECHO APP_HOME=%APP_HOME%
ECHO SETTING_HOME=%SETTING_HOME%
ECHO JAVA_HOME=%JAVA_HOME%
ECHO JAVA_EXE=%JAVA_EXE%
ECHO JAVA_OPTS=%JAVA_OPTS%
ECHO JAVA_LIB_PATH=%JAVA_LIB_PATH%
ECHO PATH=%PATH%
ECHO CLASSPATH=%CLASSPATH%
ECHO -
@ECHO ON
%JAVA_EXE% %JAVA_LIB_PATH% -cp %CLASSPATH% %JAVA_OPTS% Gui %DEBUG_MODE%
%APP_HOME% %SETTING_HOME%
@ECHO OFF
CD "%EXE_DIR%"
IF "%APP_HOME%"==".." PAUSE
@ECHO ON

```

Once the parameters are configured, save the changes, and close the text editor. Proceed back to *cmd* and enter *RunCB.bat*.

```

C:\Program Files\AhsayOBM\bin>RunCB.bat

-

APP_HOME=..

SETTING_HOME=""

JAVA_HOME=..\jvm

JAVA_EXE=..\jvm\bin\bjw.exe

JAVA_OPTS=-Xms128m -Xmx2048m -XX:MaxDirectMemorySize=1024m -
Dsun.java2d.noddraw -Dsun.nio.PageAlignDirectMemory=true

```

```

JAVA_LIB_PATH=-Djava.library.path=..\bin
PATH=..\bin\X64;..\jvm\bin;..\jvm\bin;C:\Program Files (x86)\Common
Files\ Oracle\Java\javapath;C:\Windows\system32;C:\Windows;C:\Windows\
System32\Wbem;C:\Windows\System32\WindowsPowerShell\v1.0\;C:\Program
Files\Microsoft SQL Server\Client SDK\ODBC\110\Tools\Binn\;C:\Program
Files (x86)\Microsoft SQL Server\120\Tools\Binn\;C:\Program
Files\Microsoft SQL Server\120\DTS\Binn\;C:\Program
Files\PuTTY\CLASSPATH=..\bin;..\bin\cb.jar
-
C:\Program Files\AhsayOBM\bin>..\jvm\bin\bJW.exe -
Djava.library.path=..\bin -cp ..\bin;..\bin\cb.jar -Xms128m -Xmx2048m -
XX:MaxDirectMemorySize=1024m-Dsun.java2d.noddraw -Dsun.nio. PageAlignDi
rectMemory=true Gui "" .. ""

```

If the debug mode is ENABLED, more technical information will be displayed for troubleshooting purposes.

```

C:\Program Files\AhsayOBM\bin>RunCB.bat
-
APP_HOME=..
SETTING_HOME=""
JAVA_HOME=..\jvm
JAVA_EXE=..\jvm\bin\bJW.exe
JAVA_OPTS=-Xms128m -Xmx2048m -XX:MaxDirectMemorySize=1024m -Dsun.java2d.
noddraw -Dsun.nio.PageAlignDirectMemory=true
JAVA_LIB_PATH=-Djava.library.path=..\bin PATH=..\bin\X64;..\jvm\bin;..\
jvm\bin;C:\Program Files (x86)\Common Files\Oracle\Java\javapath;C:
\Windows\system32;C:\Windows;C:\Windows\System32\Wbem;C:\Windows
\System32\WindowsPowerShell\v1.0\;C:\Program Files\Microsoft SQL
Server\ClientSDK\ODBC\110\Tools\Binn\;C:\Program Files (x86)\Microsoft
SQL Server\120\Tools\Binn\;C:\Program Files\Microsoft SQL
Server\120\Tools\Binn\;C:\Program Files\Microsoft SQL
Server\120\DTS\Binn\;C:\Program Files\PuTTY\CLASSPATH=..\bin;..
\bin\cb.jar
-
C:\Program Files\AhsayOBM\bin>..\jvm\bin\bJW.exe -
Djava.library.path=..\bin -cp..\bin;..\bin\cb.jar -Xms128m -Xmx2048m -
XX:MaxDirectMemorySize=1024m -Dsun.java2d.noddraw -
Dsun.nio.PageAlignDirectMemory=true Gui "--debug" .. ""
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/AhsayOBM/bin/../../bin/asm-3.1.jar to
classpath ...OK
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/AhsayOBM/bin/../../bin/bcmail-jdk15on-
1.51.jar to classpath ... OK
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/AhsayOBM/bin/../../bin/bcpkix-jdk15on-
1.51.jar to classpath ... OK
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/AhsayOBM/bin/../../bin/bcprov-jdk15on-
151.jar to classpath ... OK

```

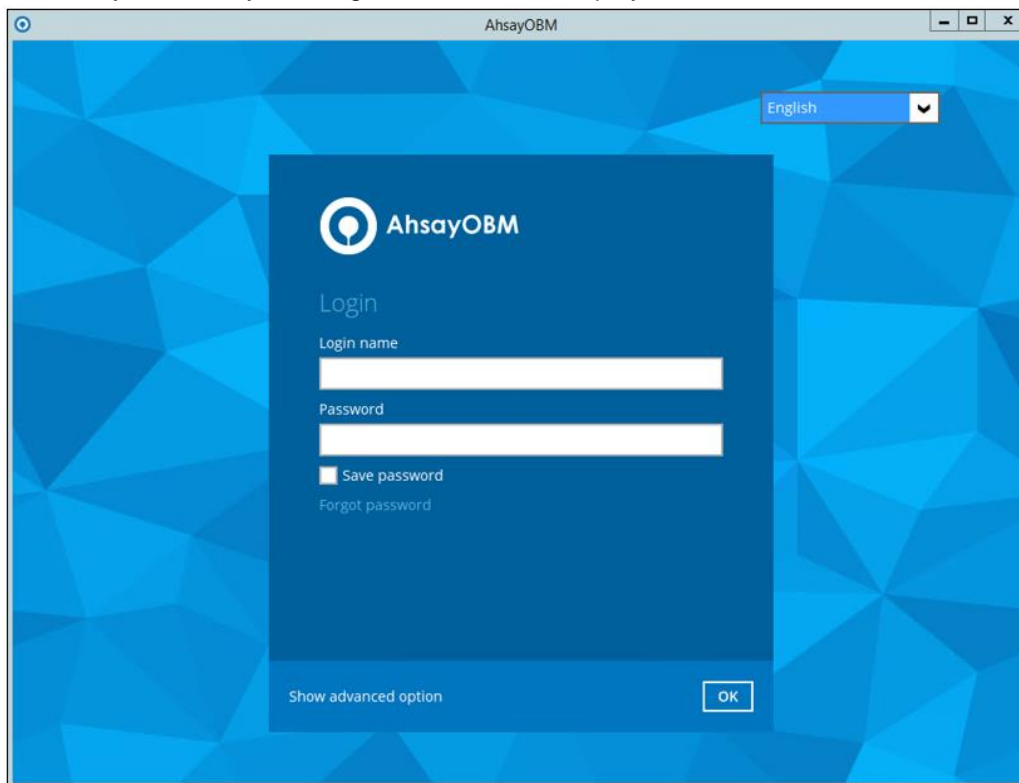


```
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/AhsayOBM/bin/../../bin/cab-parser-2.9.jar
to classpath ... OK
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/AhsayOBM/bin/../../bin/cab-parser-dorkbox-
util-1.1.jar to classpath ... OK
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/AhsayOBM/bin/../../bin/cabinet-maker-
1.0.0.1.jar to classpath ... OK
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/AhsayOBM/bin/../../bin/commons-codec-
1.6.jar to classpath ... OK
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/AhsayOBM/bin/../../bin/commons-io-2.5.jar
to classpath ... OK
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/AhsayOBM/bin/../../bin/commons-logging-
1.1.3.jar to classpath ... OK
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/AhsayOBM/bin/../../bin/commons-net-3.3.jar
to classpath ... OK
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/AhsayOBM/bin/../../bin/dom4j-1.6.1.jar to
classpath ... OK
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/AhsayOBM/bin/../../bin/dropbox-core-sdk-
1.7.5.jar to classpath ... OK
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/AhsayOBM/bin/../../bin/dropbox-core-sdk-
3.0.3.1.jar to classpath ... OK
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/AhsayOBM/bin/../../bin/dropbox-core-sdk-
3.0.3.jar to classpath ... OK
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/AhsayOBM/bin/../../bin/fluent-hc-4.3.5.jar
to classpath ... OK
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/AhsayOBM/bin/../../bin/forms-1.3.0.jar to
classpath... OK
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/AhsayOBM/bin/../../bin/google-api-client-
1.19.1.jar to classpath ... OK
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/AhsayOBM/bin/../../bin/google-api-client-
jackson2-1.19.1.jar to classpath ... OK
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/AhsayOBM/bin/../../bin/google-api-services-
drive-v2-rev158-1.19.1.jar to classpath ... OK
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/AhsayOBM/bin/../../bin/google-http-client-
1.19.0.jar to classpath ... OK
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/AhsayOBM/bin/../../bin/google-http-client-
jackson2-1.19.0.jar to classpath ... OK
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/AhsayOBM/bin/../../bin/google-oauth-client-
1.19.0.jar to classpath ... OK
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/AhsayOBM/bin/../../bin/httpclient-4.3.5.jar
to classpath ... OK
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/AhsayOBM/bin/../../bin/httpclient-cache-
4.3.5.jar to classpath ... OK
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/AhsayOBM/bin/../../bin/httpcore-4.3.2.jar
to classpath ... OK
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/AhsayOBM/bin/../../bin/httpmime-4.3.5.jar
to classpath ... OK
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/AhsayOBM/bin/../../bin/jackson-annotations-
2.2.3.jar to classpath ... OK
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/AhsayOBM/bin/../../bin/jackson-annotations-
2.7.4.jar to classpath ... OK
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/AhsayOBM/bin/../../bin/jackson-core-
2.2.3.jar to classpath ... OK
```

```
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/AhsayOBM/bin/../../bin/jackson-core-2.7.4.jar to classpath ... OK
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/AhsayOBM/bin/../../bin/jackson-core-asl-1.9.13.jar to classpath ... OK
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/AhsayOBM/bin/../../bin/jackson-databind-2.2.3.jar to classpath ... OK
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/AhsayOBM/bin/../../bin/jackson-databind-2.7.4.jar to classpath ... OK
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/AhsayOBM/bin/../../bin/jackson-jaxrs-1.9.2.jar to classpath ... OK
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/AhsayOBM/bin/../../bin/jackson-mapper-asl-1.9.13.jar to classpath ... OK
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/AhsayOBM/bin/../../bin/jackson-xc-1.9.2.jar to classpath ... OK
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/AhsayOBM/bin/../../bin/java-xmlbuilder-0.4.jar to classpath ... OK
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/AhsayOBM/bin/../../bin/javax.mail.jar to classpath ... OK
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/AhsayOBM/bin/../../bin/jcifs-1.3.18.jar to classpath ... OK
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/AhsayOBM/bin/../../bin/jdoka-20170627.jar to classpath ... OK
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/AhsayOBM/bin/../../bin/jdom-1.1.3.jar to classpath ... OK
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/AhsayOBM/bin/../../bin/jersey-apache-client4-1.18.1.jar to classpath ... OK
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/AhsayOBM/bin/../../bin/jersey-bundle-1.18.1.jar to classpath ... OK
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/AhsayOBM/bin/../../bin/jersey-multipart-1.18.1.jar to classpath ... OK
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/AhsayOBM/bin/../../bin/jettison-1.1.jar to classpath ... OK
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/AhsayOBM/bin/../../bin/jsch-0.1.50.jar to classpath ... OK
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/AhsayOBM/bin/../../bin/jsch-0.1.54.1.jar to classpath ... OK
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/AhsayOBM/bin/../../bin/json_simple-1.1.jar to classpath ... OK
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/AhsayOBM/bin/../../bin/jsr305-1.3.9.jar to classpath ... OK
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/AhsayOBM/bin/../../bin/log4j-1.2.17.jar to classpath ... OK
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/AhsayOBM/bin/../../bin/microsoft-windowsazure-api-0.4.6.jar to classpath ... OK
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/AhsayOBM/bin/../../bin/microsoft-windowsazure-storage-sdk-1.0.0.jar to classpath ... OK
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/AhsayOBM/bin/../../bin/microsoft-windowsazure-storage-sdk-6.0.0.1.jar to classpath ... OK
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/AhsayOBM/bin/../../bin/microsoft-windowsazure-storage-sdk-6.0.0.jar to classpath ... OK
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/AhsayOBM/bin/../../bin/mysql-connector-java-5.0.8-bin.jar to classpath ... OK
```

```
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/AhsayOBM/bin/./bin/mysql-connector-  
java-5.1.46-bin.jar to classpath ... OK  
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/AhsayOBM/bin/./bin/ojdbc6.jar to  
classpath ... OK  
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/AhsayOBM/bin/./bin/org.json-  
20150730.jar to classpath ... OK  
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/AhsayOBM/bin/./bin/servlet-api.jar to  
classpath ... OK  
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/AhsayOBM/bin/./bin/sinetfactory.jar to  
classpath ... OK  
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/AhsayOBM/bin/./bin/yavijava.jar to  
classpath ... OK  
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/AhsayOBM/jvm/lib/charsets.jar to  
classpath ... OK  
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/AhsayOBM/jvm/lib/jce.jar to  
classpath ... OK  
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/AhsayOBM/jvm/lib/jfxswt.jar to  
classpath ... OK  
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/AhsayOBM/jvm/lib/jsse.jar to  
classpath ... OK  
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/AhsayOBM/jvm/lib/management-agent.jar to  
classpath ... OK  
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/AhsayOBM/jvm/lib/resources.jar to  
classpath ... OK  
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/AhsayOBM/jvm/lib/rt.jar to classpath ...  
OK
```

Eventually, the AhsayOBM login screen will be displayed.



## RunConfigurator.bat

This allows the user to run the AhsayOBM through *cmd*. Export the batch file to a text editor using the following script.

```
C:\Program Files\AhsayOBM\bin>notepad RunConfigurator.bat  
C:\Program Files\AhsayOBM\bin>
```

Configure the following parameters:

- **SETTING\_HOME** – this is the directory to your setting home. If not set, the directory will be "C:\Users\USER\.obm" by default.

e.g. `SET SETTING_HOME="C:\Users\John\.obm"`

- **DEBUG\_MODE** – this parameter is used to enable or disable the debug mode when opening the AhsayOBM application.

e.g. `SET DEBUG_MODE="--debug"`  
or `SET DEBUG_MODE=""`

```
@ECHO OFF  
REM ##### RunOBC.bat #####  
REM # You can use this batch to run the backup client application  
REM #####  
##### Start: User Defined Section #####  
REM ----- SETTING_HOME -----  
REM | Directory to your setting home. Default to  
REM | "C:\Users\USER\.obm" when not set.  
REM | e.g. SET SETTING_HOME="C:\Users\John\.obm"  
REM -----  
SET SETTING_HOME=""  
REM ----- DEBUG_MODE -----  
REM | Enable/Disable debug mode  
REM | e.g. SET DEBUG_MODE="--debug"  
REM | or SET DEBUG_MODE=""  
REM -----  
SET DEBUG_MODE=""  
REM ##### END: User Defined Section #####  
SET APP_HOME=..  
SET JAVA_HOME=%APP_HOME%\jvm  
SET JAVA_EXE=%JAVA_HOME%\bin\bJW.exe  
SET JAVA_OPTS=-Xms128m -Xmx768m -Dsun.java2d.noddraw -  
Dsun.nio.PageAlignDirectMemory=true  
SET JAVA_LIB_PATH=-Djava.library.path=%APP_HOME%\bin  
SET PATH=%JAVA_HOME%\bin;%PATH%  
IF "%PROCESSOR_ARCHITECTURE%"=="x86" (  
    SET "DEP_LIB_PATH=X86"  
) ELSE (  
    SET "DEP_LIB_PATH=X64"  
)  
SET PATH=%APP_HOME%\bin\%DEP_LIB_PATH%;%JAVA_HOME%\bin;%PATH%  
SET CLASSPATH=%APP_HOME%\bin;%APP_HOME%\bin\cb.jar  
REM #####
```

```

ECHO -
ECHO APP_HOME=%APP_HOME%
ECHO SETTING_HOME=%SETTING_HOME%
ECHO JAVA_HOME=%JAVA_HOME%
ECHO JAVA_EXE=%JAVA_EXE%
ECHO JAVA_OPTS=%JAVA_OPTS%
ECHO JAVA_LIB_PATH=%JAVA_LIB_PATH%
ECHO PATH=%PATH%
ECHO CLASSPATH=%CLASSPATH%
ECHO -
@ECHO ON
%JAVA_EXE% %JAVA_LIB_PATH% -cp %CLASSPATH% %JAVA_OPTS% Gui --config
%DEBUG_MODE% %APP_HOME% %SETTING_HOME%
@ECHO OFF
CD "%APP_HOME%"
IF "%APP_HOME%"==".." PAUSE
@ECHO ON

```

Save the changes and close the text editor. Proceed back to *cmd* and enter *RunConfigurator.bat*. The AhsayOBM login menu will be displayed.

```

C:\Program Files\AhsayOBM\bin>RunConfigurator.bat
-
APP_HOME=..
SETTING_HOME=""
JAVA_HOME=..\jvm
JAVA_EXE=..\jvm\bin\bJW.exe
JAVA_OPTS=-Xms128m -Xmx768m -Dsun.java2d.noddraw -
Dsun.nio.PageAlignDirectMemory=true
JAVA_LIB_PATH=-Djava.library.path=..\bin
PATH=..\bin\X64;..\jvm\bin;..\jvm\bin;C:\Program Files (x86)\Common
Files\Oracle\Java\javapath;C:\Windows\system32;C:\Windows;C:\Windows\Sys
tem32\Wbem;C:\Windows\System32\WindowsPowerShell\v1.0\;C:\Program
Files\Microsoft SQL Server\Client SDK\ODBC\110\Tools\Binn\;C:\Program
Files (x86)\Microsoft SQL Server\120\Tools\Binn\;C:\Program
Files\Microsoft SQL Server\120\Tools\Binn\;C:\Program Files\Microsoft
SQL Server\120\DTS\Binn\;C:\Program
Files\PuTTY\CLASSPATH=..\bin;..\bin\cb.jar
-
C:\Program Files\AhsayOBM\bin>..\jvm\bin\bJW.exe -
Djava.library.path=..\bin -cp..\bin;..\bin\cb.jar -Xms128m -Xmx768m -
Dsun.java2d.noddraw -Dsun.nio.PageAlignDirectMemory=true Gui --config
"" .. ""
Config file found

```

#### Login Menu

```
-----  
(1). Login  
(2). Change Network Settings  
(3). Forgot Password  
(4). Quit  
-----
```

Your Choice:

If you want to modify the network settings before logging in, select option **(2)** from the login menu.

#### Login Menu

```
-----  
(1). Login  
(2). Change Network Settings  
(3). Forgot Password  
(4). Quit  
-----
```

Your Choice: 2

#### Network Setting

```
-----  
(1). Backup Server URL [127.0.0.1]  
(2). Port [-1]  
(3). Protocol [http]  
(4). Proxy Setting [Not in Use]  
(5). Save and Return  
(6). Discard and Return  
-----
```

Your Choice:

Otherwise, select option **(1)**. Input your login name and password to log in. After a successful login, the AhsayOBM main menu will be displayed.

#### Login Menu

```
-----  
(1). Login  
(2). Change Network Settings  
(3). Forgot Password  
(4). Quit  
-----
```

Your Choice: 1

Login Name : Win\_OBM

Password : \*\*\*\*\*

Please wait while verifying user account with server...

Your profile has been downloaded and updated.

**Main Menu**

- ```
-----
(1). List Backup Sets
(2). Delete Backup Set
(3). Export Backup Set Settings to XML
(4). Import Backup Set Settings from XML
(5). Generate new Backup Set Settings Template
(6). Change Language [English]
(7). Update Profile Settings
(8). Quit
-----
```

Your Choice:

If the password is forgotten, choose **(3)** on the login menu and input your login name. A link will be sent to the email you provided in the AhsayCBS server to reset the user account password.

**Login Menu**

- ```
-----
(1). Login
(2). Change Network Settings
(3). Forgot Password
(4). Quit
-----
```

Your Choice: 3

Login Name : Win\_OBM

Select option **(4)** to exit the AhsayOBM.

**Login Menu**

- ```
-----
(1). Login
(2). Change Network Settings
(3). Forgot Password
(4). Quit
-----
```

Your Choice: 4

**Exit Configurator Utility**

Press any key to continue . . .

## ListBackupSet.bat

This allows the user to see the list of existing backup set/s under the backup account. Enter *ListBackupSet.bat* to display the list of available backup sets with their backup set ID.

```
C:\Program Files\AhsayOBM\bin>ListBackupSet.bat

-

APP_HOME=..

SETTING_HOME=

JAVA_HOME=..\jvm

JAVA_EXE=..\jvm\bin\bJW.exe

JAVA_OPTS=-Xms128m -Xmx768m -Dsun.java2d.noddraw -
Dsun.nio.PageAlignDirectMemory=true

JAVA_LIB_PATH=-Djava.library.path=..\bin PATH=..\jvm\bin;C:\Program
Files (x86)\Common Files\Oracle\Java\javapath;C:\Windows\system32;C:
\Windows;C:\Windows\System32\Wbem;C:\Windows\System32\WindowsPowerShell
\v1.0\;C:\Program Files\Microsoft SQL Server\Client
SDK\ODBC\110\Tools\Binn\;C:\Program Files (x86)\Microsoft SQL
Server\120\Tools\Binn\;C:\Program Files\Microsoft SQL Server\120\
Tools\Binn\;C:\Program Files\Microsoft SQL Server\120\DTS
\Binn\;C:\Program Files\PuTTY\CLASSPATH=..\bin;..\bin\cb.jar

-

Listing all backup sets under this backup account ...

C:\Program Files\AhsayOBM\bin>..\jvm\bin\bJW.exe -
Djava.library.path=..\bin -cp..\bin;..\bin\cb.jar -Xms128m -Xmx768m -
Dsun.java2d.noddraw -Dsun.nio.PageAlignDirectMemory=true
ListBackupSet ..

BackupSet Name= Data Backup, ID= 1562897045523

BackupSet Name= File Backup, ID= 1561974801639

C:\Program Files\AhsayOBM\bin>PAUSE

Press any key to continue . . .
```



## RunBackupSet.bat

This allows the user to run a backup. Export the batch file to a text editor using the following script.

```
C:\Program Files\AhsayOBM\bin>notepad RunBackupSet.bat  
C:\Program Files\AhsayOBM\bin>
```

Make sure that the following parameters are set accordingly:

- **BACKUP\_SET** – this is the backup set which you would like to run. There are two (2) options to specify the backup set; using the *backup set name* or the *backup set ID*. If the backup set name is not in English, use the backup set ID.

e.g. `SET BACKUP_SET="FileBackupSet-1"`  
or `SET BACKUP_SET="1119083740107"`

You can leave this parameter blank if you only have one (1) backup set.

e.g. `SET BACKUP_SET=""`

If having multiple backup sets, you must specify which backup set you would like to be run.

- **BACKUP\_DESTS** – this is the destination(s) of the backup set which you will run. There are two (2) options to specify the destination; using the *destination name* or the *destination ID*. If the destination is not in English, use the destination ID.

e.g. `SET BACKUP_DEST="Local-1"`  
or `SET BACKUP_DEST="1119083740107"`

Multiple destinations can be specified in a comma-separated format or you can indicate "ALL" to run a backup for all destinations.

e.g. `SET BACKUP_DESTS="Destination-1, Destination-2"`  
or `SET BACKUP_DESTS="ALL"`

- **BACKUP\_TYPE** – this is the backup set type. This does not need to be changed if backing up a file backup set.

Options available: FILE/DATABASE/DIFFERENTIAL/LOG

|                                                |                                  |
|------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| e.g. <code>SET BACKUP_TYPE="FILE"</code>       | for file backup                  |
| or <code>SET BACKUP_TYPE="DATABASE"</code>     | for Full database backup         |
| or <code>SET BACKUP_TYPE="DIFFERENTIAL"</code> | for Differential database backup |
| or <code>SET BACKUP_TYPE="LOG"</code>          | for Log database backup          |

For MSExchange 2010 BackupSet:

|                                                |                                  |
|------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| e.g. <code>SET BACKUP_TYPE="DATABASE"</code>   | for Full database backup         |
| or <code>SET BACKUP_TYPE="DIFFERENTIAL"</code> | for Differential database backup |
| or <code>SET BACKUP_TYPE="LOG"</code>          | for Incremental database backup  |
| or <code>SET BACKUP_TYPE="COPY"</code>         | for Copy database backup         |

- **SETTING\_HOME** – this is the directory to your setting home. If not set, the directory will be "C:\Users\USER\obm" by default.

e.g. `SET SETTING_HOME="C:\Users\John\obm"`

- **DELTA\_MODE** – this is used to set the In-File Delta mode when running a backup.

e.g. `SET DELTA_MODE="I"` for Incremental In-file delta backup  
 or `SET DELTA_MODE="D"` for Differential In-file delta backup  
 or `SET DELTA_MODE="F"` for Full File backup  
 or `SET DELTA_MODE=""` for using backup set in-file delta setting

- **CLEANUP\_MODE** – same as the retention policy job and space freeing up, this parameter is used to remove obsolete files from your backup destinations after a backup has been run.

Options available: ENABLE-CLEANUP/DISABLE-CLEANUP

e.g. `SET CLEANUP_MODE="ENABLE-CLEANUP"`  
 or `SET CLEANUP_MODE="DISABLE-CLEANUP"`

- **DEBUG\_MODE** – this parameter is used to enable or disable the debug mode when there is a backup job running.

Options available: ENABLE-DEBUG/DISABLE-DEBUG

e.g. `SET DEBUG_MODE="ENABLE-DEBUG"`  
 or `SET DEBUG_MODE="DISABLE-DEBUG"`

```
@ECHO OFF
REM ##### RunBackupSet.bat #####
REM # You can use this batch to run any of your backup sets from the
REM # command line. Just customize the "User Defined Section" below with
REM # your values for your backup action.
REM #####
REM ##### START: User Defined Section #####
REM ----- BACKUP_SET -----
REM | The name or ID of the backup set that you want to run.
REM | If backup set name is not in English, please use ID instead.
REM | e.g. SET BACKUP_SET="1119083740107"
REM | or SET BACKUP_SET="FileBackupSet-1"
REM |
REM | You can leave this parameter blank if you have only 1 backup set.
REM -----
SET BACKUP_SET=""
REM ----- BACKUP_DESTS -----
REM | The list of name or ID of the backup destinations that you want to
REM | run. If backup destination name is not in English, please use ID
REM | instead.
REM | e.g. SET BACKUP_DESTS="1740107119083"
REM | or SET BACKUP_DESTS="Destination-1, Destination-2"
REM | or SET BACKUP_DESTS="ALL"
REM |
REM | You can specify multiple destinations in comma-separated format,
REM | or use "ALL" to run backup for all destinations.
REM -----
SET BACKUP_DESTS="ALL"
REM ----- BACKUP_TYPE -----
REM | Set backup type. You don't need to change this if you are backing
```

```

REM | up a file back set.
REM | Options available: FILE/DATABASE/DIFFERENTIAL/LOG
REM | e.g. SET BACKUP_TYPE="FILE"           for file backup
REM | or SET BACKUP_TYPE="DATABASE"        for Full database backup
REM | or SET BACKUP_TYPE="DIFFERENTIAL"    for Differential database
REM | backup or SET BACKUP_TYPE="LOG"      for Log database backup
REM |
REM | For MSeXchange 2010 BackupSet
REM | e.g. SET BACKUP_TYPE="DATABASE"      for Full database backup
REM | or SET BACKUP_TYPE="DIFFERENTIAL"    for Differential database
REM | backup
REM | or SET BACKUP_TYPE="LOG"             for Incremental database
REM | backup or SET BACKUP_TYPE="COPY"     for Copy database
REM | backup
REM -----
SET BACKUP_TYPE="FILE"
REM ----- SETTING_HOME -----
REM | Directory to your setting home. Default to
REM | "C:\Users\USER\.obm" when not set.
REM | e.g. SET SETTING_HOME="C:\Users\John\.obm"
REM -----
SET SETTING_HOME=""
REM ----- DELTA_MODE -----
REM | Set In-File Delta mode.
REM | Options available: Incremental/Differential/Full (I/D/F)
REM | e.g. SET DELTA_MODE="I"   for Incremental In-file delta backup
REM | or SET DELTA_MODE="D"   for Differential In-file delta backup
REM | or SET DELTA_MODE="F"   for Full File backup
REM | or SET DELTA_MODE=""    for using backup set in-file delta
REM | setting
REM -----
SET DELTA_MODE=""
REM ----- CLEANUP_MODE -----
REM | You can enable Cleanup mode to remove obsolete files from your
REM | backup destinations after backup.
REM | Options available: ENABLE-CLEANUP/DISABLE-CLEANUP
REM | e.g. SET CLEANUP_MODE="ENABLE-CLEANUP"
REM | or SET CLEANUP_MODE="DISABLE-CLEANUP"
REM -----
SET CLEANUP_MODE="DISABLE-CLEANUP"
REM ----- DEBUG_MODE -----
REM | Set Debug mode.
REM | Options available: ENABLE-DEBUG/DISABLE-DEBUG
REM | e.g. SET DEBUG_MODE="ENABLE-DEBUG"
REM | or SET DEBUG_MODE="DISABLE-DEBUG"
REM -----
SET DEBUG_MODE="DISABLE-DEBUG"
REM ##### END: User Defined Section #####
SET APP_HOME=..
SET JAVA_HOME=%APP_HOME%\jvm
SET JAVA_EXE=%JAVA_HOME%\bin\bJW.exe
SET JAVA_LIB_PATH=-Djava.library.path=%APP_HOME%\bin
SET PATH=%JAVA_HOME%\bin;%PATH%

```

```

SET CLASSPATH=%APP_HOME%\bin;%APP_HOME%\bin\cb.jar
IF "%PROCESSOR_ARCHITECTURE%"=="x86" (
    SET "DEP_LIB_PATH=X86"
    SET JAVA_OPTS=-Xms128m -Xmx768m -XX:MaxDirectMemorySize=512m -
Dsun.java2d.noddraw -Dsun.nio.PageAlignDirectMemory=true
) ELSE (
    SET "DEP_LIB_PATH=X64"
    SET JAVA_OPTS=-Xms128m -Xmx2048m -XX:MaxDirectMemorySize=1024m -
Dsun.java2d.noddraw -Dsun.nio.PageAlignDirectMemory=true
)
SET PATH=%CD%\%APP_HOME%\bin\%DEP_LIB_PATH%;%PATH%
REM #####
ECHO -
ECHO APP_HOME=%APP_HOME%
ECHO SETTING_HOME=%SETTING_HOME%
ECHO JAVA_HOME=%JAVA_HOME%
ECHO JAVA_EXE=%JAVA_EXE%
ECHO JAVA_OPTS=%JAVA_OPTS%
ECHO JAVA_LIB_PATH=%JAVA_LIB_PATH%
ECHO PATH=%PATH%
ECHO CLASSPATH=%CLASSPATH%
ECHO -
ECHO Running Backup Set - '%BACKUP_SET%' ...
@ECHO ON
%JAVA_EXE% %JAVA_LIB_PATH% -cp %CLASSPATH% %JAVA_OPTS% RunBackupSet
%APP_HOME% %BACKUP_SET% %BACKUP_DESTS% %BACKUP_TYPE% %SETTING_HOME%
%DELTA_MODE% %CLEANUP_MODE% %DEBUG_MODE%
@ECHO OFF
CD %APP_HOME%
IF "%APP_HOME%"==".." PAUSE
@ECHO ON

```

#### NOTE

If some parameters are not configured, the backup job will run with the default backup settings.

Save the changes and close the text editor. Proceed back to *cmd* and enter *RunBackupSet.bat*.

```

C:\Program Files\AhsayOBM\bin>RunBackupSet.bat
-
APP_HOME=..
SETTING_HOME=""

JAVA_HOME=..\jvm
JAVA_EXE=..\jvm\bin\bJW.exe
JAVA_OPTS=-Xms128m -Xmx2048m -XX:MaxDirectMemorySize=1024m -
Dsun.java2d.noddraw -Dsun.nio.PageAlignDirectMemory=true

JAVA_LIB_PATH=-Djava.library.path=..\bin PATH=C:\Program
Files\AhsayOBM\bin\..\bin\X64;..\jvm\bin;C:\Program Files (x86)\Common
Files\Oracle\Java\javapath;C:\Windows\system32;C:\Windows;C:\Windows\
System32\Wbem;C:\Windows\System32\WindowsPowerShell\v1.0\;C:\Program
Files\Microsoft SQL Server\Client SDK\ODBC\110\Tools\Binn\;C:\Program
Files (x86)\Microsoft SQL Server\120\Tools\Binn\;C:\Program

```

```

Files\Microsoft SQL Server\120\Tools\Binn\;C:\Program Files\Microsoft
SQL Server\120\DTS\Binn\;C:\Program
Files\PuTTY\CLASSPATH=..\bin;..\bin\cb.jar
-
Running Backup Set - "" ...
C:\Program Files\AhsayOBM\bin>..\jvm\bin\bJW.exe -
Djava.library.path=..\bin -cp ..\bin;..\bin\cb.jar -Xms128m -Xmx2048m -
XX:MaxDirectMemorySize=1024m -Dsun.java2d.noddraw -
Dsun.nio.PageAlignDirectMemory=true RunBackupSet .. "" "ALL" "FILE" ""
"" "DISABLE-CLEANUP" "DISABLE-DEBUG"
[2019/07/12 12:50:20] [info] [-] Start [ AhsayOBM v8.2.1.18 ]
[2019/07/12 12:50:20] [info] [-] Saving encrypted backup set encryption
keys to server...
[2019/07/12 12:50:22] [info] [1562897364604] Start Backup ... [In-File
Delta: Incremental]
[2019/07/12 12:50:22] [info] [1562897364604] Using Temporary Directory
C:\Users\Administrator\temp\1562897045523\OBS@1562897364604
[2019/07/12 12:50:22] [info] [-] Start running pre-commands
[2019/07/12 12:50:22] [info] [-] Finished running pre-commands
[2019/07/12 12:50:22] [info] [1562897364604] Downloading server file
list...
[2019/07/12 12:50:22] [info] [1562897364604] Downloading server file
list... Completed
[2019/07/12 12:50:23] [info] [1562897364604] Reading backup source from
hard disk...
[2019/07/12 12:50:25] [info] [1562897364604] Getting all files which
have been moved...
[2019/07/12 12:50:25] [info] [1562897364604] Getting all files which
have been moved... Completed
[2019/07/12 12:50:25] [info] [1562897364604] Reading backup source from
hard disk... Completed
[2019/07/12 12:50:25] [info] [1562897364604] Total New Files = 0
[2019/07/12 12:50:25] [info] [1562897364604] Total New Directories = 0
[2019/07/12 12:50:25] [info] [1562897364604] Total New Links = 0
[2019/07/12 12:50:25] [info] [1562897364604] Total Updated Files = 0
[2019/07/12 12:50:25] [info] [1562897364604] Total Attributes Changed
Files = 0
[2019/07/12 12:50:25] [info] [1562897364604] Total Deleted Files = 0
[2019/07/12 12:50:25] [info] [1562897364604] Total Deleted Directories =
0
[2019/07/12 12:50:25] [info] [1562897364604] Total Deleted Links = 0
[2019/07/12 12:50:25] [info] [1562897364604] Total Moved Files = 0
[2019/07/12 12:50:26] [info] [1562897364604] Saving encrypted backup
file index to 1562897045523/blocks at destination AhsayCBS...
[2019/07/12 12:50:26] [info] [1562897364604] Saving encrypted backup
file index to 1562897045523/blocks/2019-07-12-12-50-20 at destination
AhsayCBS...
[2019/07/12 12:50:27] [info] [-] Start running post-commands
[2019/07/12 12:50:27] [info] [-] Finished running post-commands
[2019/07/12 12:50:27] [info] [1562897364604] Deleting temporary file
C:\Users\Administrator\temp\1562897045523\OBS@1562897364604

```

**[2019/07/12 12:50:27] [info] [1562897364604] Backup Completed  
Successfully**

*Press any key to continue . . .*

## ListBackupJob.bat

This allows the user to display the list of backup jobs under a specific backup set. Enter the following script to export the batch file to a text editor.

```
C:\Program Files\AhsayOBM\bin>notepad ListBackupJob.bat  
C:\Program Files\AhsayOBM\bin>
```

Configure the following parameters:

- **BACKUP\_SET** – this is the backup set which you would like to be displayed. There are two (2) ways to specify the backup set; using the *backup set name* or the *backup set ID*. If the backup set name is not in English, use the backup set ID.

e.g. `SET BACKUP_SET="FileBackupSet-1"`  
or `SET BACKUP_SET="1119083740107"`

You can leave this parameter blank if you only have one (1) backup set.

e.g. `SET BACKUP_SET=""`

- **BACKUP\_DEST** – this is the destination of the backup set which you would like to be displayed. There are two (2) ways to specify the backup destination; using the *destination name* or the *destination ID*. If the destination is not in English, use the destination ID.

e.g. `SET BACKUP_DEST="Local-1"`  
or `SET BACKUP_DEST="1119083740107"`

You can leave this parameter blank if you only have one (1) backup destination.

e.g. `SET BACKUP_DEST=""`

```
@ECHO OFF  
REM ##### ListBackupJob.bat #####  
REM # You can use this batch to list all backup jobs which ran under #  
REM # this backup set. #  
REM #####  
REM ##### Start: User Defined Section #####  
REM ----- BACKUP_SET -----  
REM | The name or ID of the backup set that you want to run  
REM | If backup set name is not in English, please use BackupSetID  
REM | e.g. SET BACKUP_SET="1119083740107"  
REM | or SET BACKUP_SET="FileBackupSet-1"  
REM |  
REM | You can leave this parameter blank if you have only 1 backup set.  
REM -----  
SET BACKUP_SET="File Backup"  
REM ----- BACKUP_DEST -----  
REM | The name or ID of the destination that you want to list  
REM | If destination name is not in English, please use DestinationID  
REM | e.g. SET BACKUP_DEST="1119083740107"  
REM | or SET BACKUP_DEST="CBS"  
REM |
```

```

REM | You can leave this parameter blank if you have only 1 destination.
REM -----
SET BACKUP_DEST=""
REM ##### END: User Defined Section #####
REM #####
REM # SCRIPT USAGE
REM #####
REM # Input Arguments will overwrite the above settings
REM # defined in 'User Defined Section'.
IF NOT %1==. SET BACKUP_SET=%1
IF NOT %2==. SET BACKUP_DEST=%2
REM #####
SET APP_HOME=..
SET SETTING_HOME=
SET JAVA_HOME=%APP_HOME%\jvm
SET JAVA_EXE=JAVA_HOME%\bin\bJW.exe
SET JAVA_OPTS=-Xms128m -Xmx768m -Dsun.java2d.noddraw -
Dsun.nio.PageAlignDire
ctMemory=true
SET JAVA_LIB_PATH=-Djava.library.path=%APP_HOME%\bin
SET PATH=%JAVA_HOME%\bin;%PATH%
SET CLASSPATH=%APP_HOME%\bin;%APP_HOME%\bin\cb.jar
REM #####
ECHO -
ECHO APP_HOME=%APP_HOME%
ECHO SETTING_HOME=%SETTING_HOME%
ECHO JAVA_HOME=%JAVA_HOME%
ECHO JAVA_EXE=%JAVA_EXE%
ECHO JAVA_OPTS=%JAVA_OPTS%
ECHO JAVA_LIB_PATH=%JAVA_LIB_PATH%
ECHO PATH=%PATH%
ECHO CLASSPATH=%CLASSPATH%
ECHO -
ECHO Listing all backup jobs for Backup Set - '%BACKUP_SET%' ...
@ECHO ON
%JAVA_EXE% %JAVA_LIB_PATH% -cp %CLASSPATH% %JAVA_OPTS% ListBackupJob --
app-home=%APP_HOME% --backup-set=%BACKUP_SET% --backup-
dest=%BACKUP_DEST% --setting-home=%SETTING_HOME%
PAUSE

```

#### NOTE

You can only select one (1) backup set and one (1) destination at a time.

Save the changes and close the text editor. Proceed back to *cmd* and enter *ListBackupJob.bat*. The list of backup jobs under the specified backup set will be displayed.

```

C:\Program Files\AhsayOBM\bin>ListBackupJob.bat

-

APP_HOME=..

```



```

SETTING_HOME=

JAVA_HOME=..\jvm

JAVA_EXE=..\jvm\bin\bjw.exe

JAVA_OPTS=-Xms128m -Xmx768m -Dsun.java2d.noddraw -
Dsun.nio.PageAlignDirectMemory=true

JAVA_LIB_PATH=-Djava.library.path=..\bin PATH=..\jvm\bin;C:\Program
Files (x86)\Common Files\Oracle\Java\javapath;C:\Windows\system32;C:
\Windows;C:\Windows\System32\Wbem;C:\Windows\System32\WindowsPowerShell
\v1.0\;C:\Program Files\Microsoft SQL Server\Client SDK\ODBC\110\Tools
\Binn\;C:\Program Files (x86)\Microsoft SQL
Server\120\Tools\Binn\;C:\Program Files\Microsoft SQL
Server\120\Tools\Binn\;C:\Program Files\Microsoft SQL
Server\120\DTS\Binn\;C:\Program
Files\PuTTY\CLASSPATH=..\bin;..\bin\cb.jar

-

Listing all backup jobs for Backup Set - '"File Backup"' ...

C:\Program Files\AhsayOBM\bin>..\jvm\bin\bjw.exe -
Djava.library.path=..\bin -cp..\bin;..\bin\cb.jar -Xms128m -Xmx768m -
Dsun.java2d.noddraw -Dsun.nio.PageAlignDirectMemory=true ListBackupJob -
-app-home=.. --backup-set="File Backup" --backup-dest="" --setting-home=

File Backup [1562220462692]

2019-07-05-11-31-41

2019-07-04-20-00-00

2019-07-04-14-08-13

C:\Program Files\AhsayOBM\bin>PAUSE

Press any key to continue . . .

```

## Restore.bat

This allows the user to restore backed up data. Enter the following script to export the batch file to a text editor.

```
C:\Program Files\AhsayOBM\bin>notepad Restore.bat  
C:\Program Files\AhsayOBM\bin>
```

Configure the following parameters:

- **BACKUP\_SET** – this is the backup set which you would like to restore. If the backup set name is not in English, use the backup set ID.

e.g. *SET BACKUP\_SET="FileBackupSet-1"*  
or *SET BACKUP\_SET="1119083740107"*

- **DESTINATION** – this is the destination where you want to restore the backed up data from. If the destination is not in English, use the destination ID.

e.g. *SET DESTINATION="Local-1"*  
or *SET DESTINATION="1119083740107"*

You can leave this parameter blank if you only have one (1) backup destination.

e.g. *SET DESTINATION=""*

- **RESTORE\_TO** – this is the location where the files will be restored.

e.g. *SET RESTORE\_TO=" C:\Temp"*

- **RESTORE\_FROM** – this is the selected file or directory on the backup server which you would like to restore.

e.g. *SET RESTORE\_FROM=" C:\Users"*

- **POINT\_IN\_TIME** – this is the point-in-time snapshot (of a successful backup) that you want to restore from the backup server. Use "Current" for the latest backup snapshot. You can retrieve the point in time by using the *ListBackupJob.bat*.

e.g. *SET POINT\_IN\_TIME="2006-10-04-12-57-13"*  
or *SET POINT\_IN\_TIME="Current"*

- **RESTORE\_PERMISSION** – set this to "Y" if you want to restore file permissions. Otherwise, indicate "N" if you do NOT want to restore file permissions.

e.g. *SET RESTORE\_PERMISSION="N"*

- **SKIP\_INVALID\_KEY** – set this to "Y" if you want to skip restore file with an invalid key. Set this to "N" if you want to prompt user to input the correct key.

e.g. *SET SKIP\_INVALID\_KEY="N"*

- **SYNC\_OPTION** – set this to "Y" if you want to enable the sync option. Set this to "N" if you do NOT want to enable sync option. Leave this blank if you want to prompt user for a selection.

e.g. `SET SYNC_OPTION="N"`

- **REPLACE\_EXISTING\_FILE** – set to "--all" to replace all existing file(s) of the same filename. Set this to "--none" to skip all existing file(s) with the same filename. Leave this blank if you want to prompt user for a selection.

e.g. `SET REPLACE_EXISTING_FILE="--all"`

- **SETTING\_HOME** – this is the directory to your setting home. If not set, the directory will be "C:\Users\USER\obm" by default.

e.g. `SET SETTING_HOME="C:\Users\John\obm"`

- **FILTER** – this parameter is used to filter the files that you want to restore.

e.g. `SET FILTER="-Pattern=.txt-Type=exact-Target=toFile"`

- **TEMP\_DIR** – this is the directory where you would like to store the restore files temporarily.

e.g. `SET TEMP_DIR="C:\Temp"`

- **VERIFY\_CHKSUM** – set this to "Y" if you want to verify the in-file delta file checksum during restore. Otherwise, set this to "N" if you do NOT want to verify the in-file delta file checksum during restore.

e.g. `SET VERIFY_CHKSUM="N"`

```
@ECHO OFF
REM ##### Restore.bat #####
REM # You can use this batch file to restore backup files using command-
REM # line. Just customize the "User Define Section" below with values
REM # for your restore action.
REM #####
REM ##### Start: User Defined Section #####
REM ----- BACKUP_SET -----
REM | The name or ID of the backup set that you want to restore.
REM | If backup set name is not in English, please use ID instead.
REM | e.g. SET BACKUP_SET="1119083740107"
REM | or SET BACKUP_SET="FileBackupSet-1"
REM |
REM | You can leave this parameter blank if you have only 1 backup set.
REM -----
SET BACKUP_SET=""
REM ----- DESTINATION -----
REM | The name or ID of the backup destination that you want to restore
REM | from.
REM | If backup destination name is not in English, please use ID
REM | instead.
REM | e.g. SET DESTINATION="1740107119083"
REM | or SET DESTINATION="Destination-1"
REM |
REM | You can leave this parameter blank if you have only 1 destination.
REM -----
SET DESTINATION=""
```

```

REM ----- RESTORE_TO -----
REM | Directory to where you want files to be restored
REM | Use "\\\" instead of "\\" when you specify a UNC path
REM | set to "" to restore files to original location
REM | e.g. SET RESTORE_TO="C:\Temp"
REM -----
SET RESTORE_TO="C:\Temp"
REM ----- RESTORE_FROM -----
REM | File/Directory on the backup server that you would like to restore
REM | e.g. SET RESTORE_FROM="C:\Data"
REM -----
SET RESTORE_FROM=" C:\Users\Administrator\Desktop\Data backup"
REM ----- POINT_IN_TIME -----
REM | The point-in-time snapshot (successful backup) that you want to
REM | restore from the backup server.
REM | Use "Current" for the latest backup
REM | snapshot e.g. SET POINT_IN_TIME="2006-10-04-12-57-13"
REM | or SET POINT_IN_TIME="Current"
REM |
REM | You can retrieve the point in time by using the ListBackupJob.bat
REM -----
SET POINT_IN_TIME="Current"
REM ----- RESTORE_PERMISSION -----
REM | set to "Y" if you want to restore file permissions
REM | set to "N" if you do NOT want to restore file permissions
REM -----
SET RESTORE_PERMISSION="N"
REM ----- SKIP_INVALID_KEY -----
REM | set to "Y" if you want to skip restore file with invalid key
REM | set to "N" if you want to prompt user to input a correct key
REM -----
SET SKIP_INVALID_KEY="N"
REM ----- SYNC_OPTION -----
REM | Delete extra files
REM | set to "Y" if you want to enable sync option
REM | set to "N" if you do NOT want to enable sync option
REM | set to "" to prompt for selection
REM -----
SET SYNC_OPTION="N"
REM ----- REPLACE_EXISTING_FILE -----
REM | set to "--all" to replace all existing file(s) of the same
REM | filename set to "--none" to skip all existing file(s) with the same
REM | filename set to "" to prompt for selection
REM -----
SET REPLACE_EXISTING_FILE="--all"
REM ----- SETTING_HOME -----
REM | Directory to your setting home. Default to
REM | "C:\Users\USER\.obm" when not set.
REM | e.g. SET SETTING_HOME="C:\Users\John\.obm"
REM -----
SET SETTING_HOME=""
REM OPTION:
REM ----- FILTER -----

```

```

REM | Filter out what files you want to restore
REM | -Pattern=xxx-Type=yyy-Target=zzz
REM | where xxx is the filter pattern,
REM |       yyy is the filter type, whice can be one of the following:
REM |       [exact | exactMatchCase | contains | containsMatchCase|
REM |       startWith | startWithMatchCase | endWith |
REM | endWithMatchCase] |
REM |       zzz is the filter target, which can be one of the following:
REM |       [toFile | toFileDir | toDir]
REM |
REM | e.g. SET FILTER="-Pattern=.txt-Type=exact-Target=toFile"
REM -----
SET FILTER=""
REM ----- TEMP_DIR -----
REM | Directory to where you want to store restore files temporarily
REM | Use "\\\\" instead of "\\" when you specify a UNC path
REM | set to "" to use the temporary directory in the backup set
REM | e.g. SET TEMP_DIR="C:\Temp"
REM -----
SET TEMP_DIR=""
REM ----- VERIFY_CHKSUM -----
REM | set to "Y" if you want to verify in-file delta file checksum
REM | during restore
REM | set to "N" if you do NOT want to verify in-file delta file
REM | checksum during restore
REM -----
SET VERIFY_CHKSUM="N"
REM ##### END: User Defined Section #####
SET APP_HOME=..
SET JAVA_HOME=%APP_HOME%\jvm
SET JAVA_EXE=%JAVA_HOME%\bin\bJW.exe
SET JAVA_LIB_PATH=-Djava.library.path=%APP_HOME%\bin
SET PATH=%JAVA_HOME%\bin;%PATH%
SET CLASSPATH=%APP_HOME%\bin;%APP_HOME%\bin\cb.jar
IF "%PROCESSOR_ARCHITECTURE%"=="x86" (
    SET "DEP_LIB_PATH=X86"
    SET JAVA_OPTS=-Xms128m -Xmx768m -XX:MaxDirectMemorySize=512m -
Dsun.java2d.noddraw -Dsun.nio.PageAlignDirectMemory=true
) ELSE (
    SET "DEP_LIB_PATH=X64"
    SET JAVA_OPTS=-Xms128m -Xmx2048m -XX:MaxDirectMemorySize=1024m -
Dsun.java2d.noddraw -Dsun.nio.PageAlignDirectMemory=true
)
SET PATH=%CD%\%APP_HOME%\bin\%DEP_LIB_PATH%;%PATH%
REM #####
ECHO -
ECHO APP_HOME=%APP_HOME%
ECHO SETTING_HOME=%SETTING_HOME%
ECHO JAVA_HOME=%JAVA_HOME%
ECHO JAVA_EXE=%JAVA_EXE%
ECHO JAVA_OPTS=%JAVA_OPTS%
ECHO JAVA_LIB_PATH=%JAVA_LIB_PATH%
ECHO PATH=%PATH%

```

```

ECHO CLASSPATH=%CLASSPATH%
ECHO -
@ECHO ON
%JAVA_EXE% %JAVA_LIB_PATH% -cp %CLASSPATH% %JAVA_OPTS% Restore --
to=%RESTORE_TO% --from=%RESTORE_FROM% --backup-set=%BACKUP_SET% --
backup-dest=%DESTINATION% %REPLACE_EXISTING_FILE% --date=%POINT_IN_TIME%
--set-permission=%RESTORE_PERMISSION% --skip-invalid-
key=%SKIP_INVALID_KEY% --sync=%SYNC_OPTION% --filter=%FILTER% --temp-
dir=%TEMP_DIR% --verify-delta-file-chksum=%VERIFY_CHKSUM% --app-
home=%APP_HOME% --setting-home=%SETTING_HOME%
@ECHO OFF
CD %APP_HOME%
IF "%APP_HOME%"==".." PAUSE
@ECHO ON

```

#### NOTE

If some parameters are not set, the restore job will run with the default restore settings.

Save the changes and close the text editor. Proceed back to *cmd* and enter *Restore.bat*.

```

C:\Program Files\AhsayOBM\bin>Restore.bat
-
APP_HOME=..
SETTING_HOME=""
JAVA_HOME=..\jvm
JAVA_EXE=..\jvm\bin\bJW.exe
JAVA_OPTS=-Xms128m -Xmx2048m -XX:MaxDirectMemorySize=1024m -
Dsun.java2d.noddraw -Dsun.nio.PageAlignDirectMemory=true
JAVA_LIB_PATH=-Djava.library.path=..\binPATH=C:\Program Files\AhsayOBM
\bin\..\bin\X64;..\jvm\bin;C:\Program Files (x86)\Common Files\Oracle\
Java\javapath;C:\Windows\system32;C:\Windows;C:\Windows\System32\Wbem;
C:\Windows\System32\WindowsPowerShell\v1.0\;C:\Program Files\Microsoft
SQL Server\Client SDK\ODBC\110\Tools\Binn\;C:\Program Files
(x86)\Microsoft SQL Server\120\Tools\Binn\;C:\Program Files\Microsoft
SQL Server\120\Tools\Binn\;C:\Program Files\Microsoft SQL
Server\120\DTS\Binn\;C:\Program Files\PuTTY\CLASSPATH=..
\bin;..\bin\cb.jar
-
C:\Program Files\AhsayOBM\bin>..\jvm\bin\bJW.exe -
Djava.library.path=..\bin -cp ..\bin;..\bin\cb.jar -Xms128m -Xmx2048m -
XX:MaxDirectMemorySize=1024m -Dsun.java2d.noddraw -
Dsun.nio.PageAlignDirectMemory=true Restore --to="C:\Temp" --
from="C:\Users\Administrator\Desktop\Data backup" --backup-set="" --
backup-dest="" "--all" --date="Current"--set-permission="N" --skip-

```

```

invalid-key="N" --sync="N" --filter="" --temp-dir="" --verify-delta-
file-chksum="N" --app-home=.. --setting-home=""

Filter Pattern not set, filter would not apply to restore

Temporary directory not set, use the temporary directory in the backup
set

[2019-07-12 11:52:03] Start [ AhsayOBM v8.2.1.18 ]

[2019-07-12 11:52:03] OS: Windows Server 2012 R2 (w2k16R2-std); CPU
Model: VMware-Intel(R) Xeon(R) CPU E5520 @ 2.27GHz,Intel(R) Xeon(R) CPU
E5520 @2.27GHz; Number of Processors: 4; Heap Size: 32.3MB (Current) /
1.8GB (Maximum); Physical Memory: 726.9MB (Free) / 4GB (Total)

[2019-07-12 11:52:03] start,Start [ AhsayOBM v8.2.1.18 ],0,0,0,,0,0

[2019-07-12 11:52:03] Initializing decrypt action...

[2019-07-12 11:52:03] Initializing decrypt action... Completed

[2019-07-12 11:52:04] Creating new directory... "C:\Temp\C_"

[2019-07-12 11:52:04] Creating new directory... "C:\Temp\C_\Users"

[2019-07-12 11:52:04] Creating new directory...
"C:\Temp\C_\Users\Administrator"

[2019-07-12 11:52:04] Creating new directory...
"C:\Temp\C_\Users\Administrator\Desktop"

[2019-07-12 11:52:04] Creating new directory...
"C:\Temp\C_\Users\Administrator\Desktop\Data backup"

[2019-07-12 11:52:04] Downloading...
"C:\Temp\C_\Users\Administrator\Desktop\Data backup\Sample file.txt"
(Total 0 bytes)

[2019-07-12 11:52:04] Downloading...
"C:\Temp\C_\Users\Administrator\Desktop\Data backup\Text File.txt"
(Total 0 bytes)

[2019-07-12 11:52:05] file,C:\Temp\C_\Users\Administrator\Desktop\Data
backup\Sample file.txt,0,0,1562897245044,,1562903525530,1562903525531

[2019-07-12 11:52:05] file,C:\Temp\C_\Users\Administrator\Desktop\Data
backup\Text File.txt,0,0,1562897254708,,1562903525531,1562903525531

[2019-07-12 11:52:06] Restore Completed Successfully

[2019-07-12 11:52:06] end,RESTORE_STOP_SUCCESS,0,0,0,,0,0

Press any key to continue . . .

```

## Decrypt.bat

This allows the user to restore raw data. Enter the following script to export the batch file to a text editor.

```
C:\Program Files\AhsayOBM\bin>notepad Decrypt.bat  
C:\Program Files\AhsayOBM\bin>
```

Configure the following parameters:

- **SOURCE\_DIR** – this is the path of the folder which contains the backed up files that you want to decrypt.

e.g. *SOURCE\_DIR="C:\john\backupdata\1498444438340\blocks"*

- **ENCRYPT\_KEY** – this is the encryption key that was set for the backup set. You can leave this parameter blank if the backed up data is not encrypted.

e.g. *ENCRYPT\_KEY="NjQAtHhBSyAVgfFkaFI="*  
e.g. *ENCRYPT\_KEY=""*

- **DECRYPT\_TO** – this is the specified directory where the decrypted files will be stored.

e.g. *SET DECRYPT\_TO=" C:\Temp"*

- **DECRYPT\_FROM** – this is the file or directory on the backup data that you would like to decrypt.

e.g. *SET DECRYPT\_TO="C:\Data"*

- **POINT\_IN\_TIME** – this is the point-in-time snapshot (of a successful backup) that you want to decrypt from the backed up data. Use "Current" for the latest backup snapshot. The point-in-time should be one of the directory names under *SOURCE\_DIR*.

e.g. *SET POINT\_IN\_TIME="2006-10-04-12-57-13"*  
or *SET POINT\_IN\_TIME="Current"*

- **RESTORE\_PERMISSION** – set this to "Y" if you want to restore file permissions. Otherwise, indicate "N" if you do NOT want to restore file permissions.

e.g. *SET RESTORE\_PERMISSION="N"*

- **SKIP\_INVALID\_KEY** – set this to "Y" if you want to skip decrypt file with invalid key. Set this set to "N" if you want to prompt user to input a correct key.

e.g. *SKIP\_INVALID\_KEY="Y"*

- **SYNC\_OPTION** – set this to "Y" if you want to enable sync option. Set this to "N" if you do NOT want to enable sync option. Leave this parameter blank if you want to prompt user for selection.

e.g. *SET SYNC\_OPTION="N"*

e.g. *SET SYNC\_OPTION=""*



- **REPLACE\_EXISTING\_FILE** – set this to "--all" if you want to replace all existing file(s) of the same filename. Set this to "--none" if you want to skip all existing file(s) with the same filename. Leave this parameter blank if you want to prompt user for selection.

e.g. *SET REPLACE\_EXISTING\_FILE="--all"*  
e.g. *SET REPLACE\_EXISTING\_FILE="--none"*  
e.g. *SET REPLACE\_EXISTING\_FILE=""*

- **SETTING\_HOME** – this is the directory to your setting home. This is where the log files will be placed. If not set, the directory will be "C:\Users\USER\obm" by default.

e.g. *SET SETTING\_HOME="C:\Users\John\obm"*

- **FILTER** – this parameter is used to filter the files that you want to decrypt.

e.g. *SET FILTER="-Pattern=.txt-Type=exact-Target=toFile"*

- **TEMP\_DIR** – this is the directory where you would like to store the decrypt files temporarily.

e.g. *SET TEMP\_DIR="C:\Temp"*

- **VERIFY\_CHKSUM** – set this to "Y" if you want to verify the in-file delta file checksum during decrypt. Set this to "N" if you do NOT want to verify the in-file delta file checksum during decrypt.

e.g. *SET VERIFY\_CHKSUM="N"*

```
@ECHO OFF
REM ##### Decrypt.bat #####
REM # You can use this batch file to decrypt backup files using command-
REM # line. Just customize the "User Define Section" below with values
REM # for your decrypt action.
REM #####
REM ##### Start: User Defined Section #####
REM ----- SOURCE_DIR -----
REM | The path to the [<backup set ID>/blocks] folder which contains |
REM | the backup files that you want to decrypt.
REM | This folder should be located under backup destination physically.
REM | e.g. SET SOURCE_DIR="C:\john\backupdata\1498444438340\blocks"
REM | where directory "C:\john\backupdata" is path of local destination
REM -----
SET SOURCE_DIR="C:\Program
Files\AhsayCBS\user\Win_OBM\1562897045523\blocks"
REM ----- ENCRYPT_KEY -----
REM | The encrypting key of the backup data.
REM | e.g. SET ENCRYPT_KEY="RU5DU1lQVF9LRVk="
REM |
REM | You can leave this parameter blank if backup data is not
REM | encrypted.
REM -----
SET ENCRYPT_KEY=""
REM ----- DECRYPT_TO -----
REM | Directory to where you want files to be decrypted
REM | Use "\\\" instead of "\" when you specify a UNC path
REM | e.g. SET DECRYPT_TO="C:\Temp"
```

```

REM -----
SET DECRYPT_TO="C:\Data"
REM ----- DECRYPT_FROM -----
REM | File/Directory on the backup data that you would like to decrypt
REM | e.g. SET DECRYPT_FROM="C:\Data"
REM -----
SET DECRYPT_FROM="C:\Users\Administrator\Desktop\Data backup"
REM ----- POINT_IN_TIME -----
REM | The point-in-time snapshot (successful backup) that you want to
REM | decrypt from the backup data. Use "Current" for the latest backup
REM | snapshot
REM | e.g. SET POINT_IN_TIME="2006-10-04-12-57-13"
REM | or SET POINT_IN_TIME="Current"
REM |
REM | The point in time should be one of the directory name under
REM | SOURCE_DIR unless you want to decrypt latest backup snapshot.
REM -----
SET POINT_IN_TIME="Current"
REM ----- RESTORE_PERMISSION -----
REM | set to "Y" if you want to restore file permissions
REM | set to "N" if you do NOT want to restore file permissions
REM -----
SET RESTORE_PERMISSION="N"
REM ----- SKIP_INVALID_KEY -----
REM | set to "Y" if you want to skip decrypt file with invalid key
REM | set to "N" if you want to prompt to input a correct key
REM -----
SET SKIP_INVALID_KEY="Y"
REM ----- SYNC_OPTION -----
REM | Delete extra files
REM | set to "Y" if you want to enable sync option
REM | set to "N" if you do NOT want to enable sync option
REM | set to "" to prompt for selection
REM -----
SET SYNC_OPTION="N"
REM ----- REPLACE_EXISTING_FILE -----
REM | set to "--all" to replace all existing file(s) of the same
REM | filename set to "--none" to skip all existing file(s) with the
REM | same filename set to "" to prompt for selection
REM -----
SET REPLACE_EXISTING_FILE="--all"
REM ----- SETTING_HOME -----
REM | Directory to your setting home. Log files will be located inside.
REM | Default to "C:\Users\USER\.obm" when not set.
REM | e.g. SET SETTING_HOME="C:\Users\John\.obm"
REM -----
SET SETTING_HOME="C:\Users\Administrator\.obm"
REM OPTION:
REM ----- FILTER -----
REM | Filter out what files you want to decrypt
REM | -Pattern=xxx-Type=yyy-Target=zzz
REM | where xxx is the filter pattern,
REM | yyy is the filter type, whice can be one of the following:

```

```

REM |          [exact | exactMatchCase | contains | containsMatchCase|
REM |          startWith | startWithMatchCase | endWith |
REM |          endWithMatchCase]
REM |          zzz is the filter target, which can be one of the following:
REM |          [toFile | toFileDir | toDir]
REM |
REM | e.g. SET FILTER="-Pattern=.txt-Type=exact-Target=toFile"
REM -----
SET FILTER=""
REM ----- TEMP_DIR -----
REM | Directory to where you want to store decrypt files temporarily
REM | Use "\\\\" instead of "\\" when you specify a UNC path
REM | e.g. SET TEMP_DIR="C:\Temp"
REM -----
SET TEMP_DIR="C:\Temp"
REM ----- VERIFY_CHKSUM -----
REM | set to "Y" if you want to verify in-file delta file checksum
REM | during decrypt
REM | set to "N" if you do NOT want to verify in-file delta file
REM | checksum during decrypt
REM -----
SET VERIFY_CHKSUM="N"
REM ##### END: User Defined Section #####
SET APP_HOME=..
SET JAVA_HOME=%APP_HOME%\jvm
SET JAVA_EXE=%JAVA_HOME%\bin\bJW.exe
SET JAVA_LIB_PATH=-Djava.library.path=%APP_HOME%\bin
SET PATH=%JAVA_HOME%\bin;%PATH%
SET CLASSPATH=%APP_HOME%\bin;%APP_HOME%\bin\cb.jar
IF "%PROCESSOR_ARCHITECTURE%"=="x86" (
    SET "DEP_LIB_PATH=X86"
    SET JAVA_OPTS=-Xms128m -Xmx768m -XX:MaxDirectMemorySize=512m -
Dsun.java2d.noddraw -Dsun.nio.PageAlignDirectMemory=true
) ELSE (
    SET "DEP_LIB_PATH=X64"
    SET JAVA_OPTS=-Xms128m -Xmx2048m -XX:MaxDirectMemorySize=1024m -
Dsun.java2d.noddraw -Dsun.nio.PageAlignDirectMemory=true
)
SET PATH=%CD%\%APP_HOME%\bin\%DEP_LIB_PATH%;%PATH%
REM #####
ECHO -
ECHO APP_HOME=%APP_HOME%
ECHO SETTING_HOME=%SETTING_HOME%
ECHO JAVA_HOME=%JAVA_HOME%
ECHO JAVA_EXE=%JAVA_EXE%
ECHO JAVA_OPTS=%JAVA_OPTS%
ECHO JAVA_LIB_PATH=%JAVA_LIB_PATH%
ECHO PATH=%PATH%
ECHO CLASSPATH=%CLASSPATH%
ECHO -
@ECHO ON
%JAVA_EXE% %JAVA_LIB_PATH% -cp %CLASSPATH% %JAVA_OPTS% Decrypt --
to=%DECRYPT_TO% --from=%DECRYPT_FROM% --source-dir=%SOURCE_DIR% --

```

```
key=%ENCRYPT_KEY% %REPLACE_EXISTING_FILE% --date=%POINT_IN_TIME% --set-
permission=%RESTORE_PERMISSION% --skip-invalid-key=%SKIP_INVALID_KEY% --
sync=%SYNC_OPTION% --filter=%FILTER% --temp-dir=%TEMP_DIR% --verify-
delta-file-chksum=%VERIFY_CHKSUM% --app-home=%APP_HOME% --setting-
home=%SETTING_HOME%
@ECHO OFF
CD %APP_HOME%
IF "%APP_HOME%"==".." PAUSE
@ECHO ON
```

Save the changes and close the text editor. On the *cmd*, enter *Decrypt.bat*. When asked if you want to input the encrypting key, select '1' (Yes). Enter the correct encryption key to continue.

```
C:\Program Files\AhsayOBM\bin>Decrypt.bat
-
APP_HOME=..
SETTING_HOME="C:\Users\Administrator\.obm"
JAVA_HOME=..\jvm
JAVA_EXE=..\jvm\bin\bJW.exe
JAVA_OPTS=-Xms128m -Xmx2048m -XX:MaxDirectMemorySize=1024m -
Dsun.java2d.noddraw -Dsun.nio.PageAlignDirectMemory=true

JAVA_LIB_PATH=-Djava.library.path=..\bin PATH=C:\Program
Files\AhsayOBM\bin
..\bin\X64;..\jvm\bin;C:\Program Files (x86)\Common
Files\Oracle\Java\javapath;C:\Windows\system32;C:\Windows;C:\Windows\
System32\Wbem;C:\Windows\System32\WindowsPowerShell\v1.0\;C:\Program
Files\Microsoft SQL Server\Client SDK\ODBC\110\Tools\Binn\;C:\Program
Files (x86)\Microsoft SQL Server\120\Tools\Binn\;C:\Program
Files\Microsoft SQL Server\120\Tools\Binn\;C:\Program Files\Microsoft
SQL Server\120\DTS\
Binn\;C:\Program Files\PuTTY\CLASSPATH=..\bin;..\bin\cb.jar
-
C:\Program Files\AhsayOBM\bin>..\jvm\bin\bJW.exe -
Djava.library.path=..\bin -cp ..\bin;..\bin\cb.jar -Xms128m -Xmx2048m -
XX:MaxDirectMemorySize=1024m -Dsun.java2d.noddraw -
Dsun.nio.PageAlignDirectMemory=true Decrypt --to="C:\Data" --
from="C:\Users\Administrator\Desktop\Data backup" --source-
dir="C:\Program Files\AhsayCBS\user\Win_OBM\1562897045523\blocks" --
key="" "--all" --date="Current" --set-permission="N" --skip-invalid-
key="Y" --sync="N" --filter="" --temp-dir="C:\Temp" --verify-delta-file-
chksum="N" --app-home=.. --setting-home="C:\Users\Administrator\.obm"

Filter Pattern not set, filter would not apply to decrypt
(C:\Program Files\Ahsay CBS\user\Win_OBM\1562897045523\blocks\index-
s0.j00.100.16be3f1a078.cgz)

Please input the Encrypting Key.
Want to input encrypting key?
1.YES 2.CANCEL >>1
Enter Correct Encrypting Key:*****

[2019-07-12 10:27:23] Start [ AhsayOBM v8.2.1.18 ]
```

```

[2019-07-12 10:27:25] OS: Windows Server 2012 R2 (w2k16R2-std); CPU
Model: VMware-Intel(R) Xeon(R) CPU E5520 @ 2.27GHz,Intel(R) Xeon(R) CPU
E5520 @ 2.27GHz; Number of Processors: 4; Heap Size: 35.6MB (Current)
/ 1.8GB (Maximum); Physical Memory: 722.2MB (Free) / 4GB (Total)
[2019-07-12 10:27:25] start,Start [ AhsayOBM v8.2.1.18 ],0,0,0,,0,0
[2019-07-12 10:27:25] Initializing decrypt action...
[2019-07-12 10:27:25] Initializing decrypt action... Completed
[2019-07-12 10:27:26] Creating new directory... "C:\Data\C_"
[2019-07-12 10:27:26] Creating new directory... "C:\Data\C_\Users"
[2019-07-12 10:27:26] Creating new directory...
"C:\Data\C_\Users\Administrator"
[2019-07-12 10:27:26] Creating new directory...
"C:\Data\C_\Users\Administrator\Desktop"
[2019-07-12 10:27:26] Creating new directory...
"C:\Data\C_\Users\Administrator\Desktop\Data backup"
[2019-07-12 10:27:26] Downloading...
"C:\Data\C_\Users\Administrator\Desktop\Data backup\Sample file.txt"
(Total 0 bytes)
[2019-07-12 10:27:26] Downloading...
"C:\Data\C_\Users\Administrator\Desktop\Data backup\Text File.txt"
(Total 0 bytes)
[2019-07-12 10:27:27] file,C:\Data\C_\Users\Administrator\Desktop\Data
backup\Sample file.txt,0,0,1562897245044,,1562898447522,1562898447522
[2019-07-12 10:27:27] file,C:\Data\C_\Users\Administrator\Desktop\Data
backup\Text File.txt,0,0,1562897254708,,1562898447522,1562898447522

[2019-07-12 10:27:28] Restore Completed Successfully

[2019-07-12 10:27:28] end,RESTORE_STOP_SUCCESS,0,0,0,,0,0

Press any key to continue . . .

```

## RunDataIntegrityCheck.bat

This allows the user to perform data integrity check to all available backup sets. Enter the following script to export the batch file to a text editor.

```
C:\Program Files\AhsayOBM\bin>notepad RunDataIntegrityCheck.bat  
  
C:\Program Files\AhsayOBM\bin>
```

To perform a data integrity check, the following parameters must be set first:

- **SETTING\_HOME** (*Optional*)— this is the directory to your setting home. This is where the log files will be located. If not set, the directory will be "C:\Users\USER\obm" by default

e.g. `SET SETTING_HOME="C:\Users\John\obm"`

- **BACKUP\_SET** – this is the backup set which you would like to run a data integrity check on. If the backup set name is not in English, use the backup set ID.

e.g. `SET BACKUP_SET="FileBackupSet-1"`  
or `SET BACKUP_SET="1119083740107"`

You can leave this parameter blank if you only have one (1) backup set.

e.g. `SET BACKUP_SET=""`

- **BACKUP\_DEST** – this is the destination of the backup set which you will run a data integrity check on. If the destination is not in English, use the destination ID.

e.g. `SET BACKUP_DEST="Destination-1"`  
or `SET BACKUP_DEST="1740107119083"`

This parameter can be left blank if you have a single destination.

e.g. `SET BACKUP_DEST=""`

This parameter will be ignored if the `BACKUP_SET` is set to "ALL".

e.g. `SET BACKUP_SET="ALL"`

- **CRC\_MODE** – when enabled, a Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC) will run during the data integrity check.

e.g. `SET CRC_MODE="ENABLE-CRC"`  
`SET CRC_MODE="DISABLE-CRC"`

```
@ECHO OFF  
  
REM ##### RunDataIntegrityCheck.bat #####  
REM # You can use this batch to run any of your backup sets from the  
REM # command line. Just customize the "User Defined Section" below with  
REM # your values for your backup action.  
REM #####  
REM ##### START: User Defined Section #####  
REM ----- SETTING_HOME (Optional) -----
```

```

REM | Directory to your setting home. Default to
REM | "C:\Users\USER\.obm" when not set.
REM | e.g. SET SETTING_HOME="C:\Users\John\.obm"
REM -----
SET SETTING_HOME=""
REM -----
REM | The name or ID of the backup set that you want to run.
REM | If backup set name is not in English, please use ID instead.
REM | e.g. SET BACKUP_SET="1119083740107"
REM | or SET BACKUP_SET="FileBackupSet-1"
REM | You can use "ALL" to run data integrity check for all backup sets.
REM | i.e. SET BACKUP_SET="ALL"
REM |
REM | You can leave this parameter blank if you have only 1 backup set.
REM -----
SET BACKUP_SET="Data Backup"
REM -----
REM | The name or ID of the backup destination that you want to run.
REM | If backup destination name is not in English, please use ID
REM | instead. e.g. SET BACKUP_DEST="1740107119083"
REM | or SET BACKUP_DEST="Destination-1"
REM | You can use "ALL" to run data integrity check for all
REM | destinations. i.e. SET BACKUP_DEST="ALL"
REM |
REM | You can leave this parameter blank if you have only 1 destination.
REM | Remark: This option is ignored if BACKUP_SET="ALL"
REM -----
SET BACKUP_DEST=""
REM -----
REM | You can run Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC) during data integrity
REM | check
REM | Options available: ENABLE-CRC/DISABLE-CRC
REM | i.e. SET CRC_MODE="ENABLE-CRC"
REM | or SET CRC_MODE="DISABLE-CRC"
REM -----
SET CRC_MODE="DISABLE-CRC"
REM ##### END: User Defined Section #####
SET APP_HOME=..
SET JAVA_HOME=%APP_HOME%\jvm
SET JAVA_EXE=%JAVA_HOME%\bin\bjw.exe
SET JAVA_LIB_PATH=-Djava.library.path=%APP_HOME%\bin
SET PATH=%JAVA_HOME%\bin;%PATH%
SET CLASSPATH=%APP_HOME%\bin;%APP_HOME%\bin\cb.jar
IF "%PROCESSOR_ARCHITECTURE%"=="x86" (
    SET "DEP_LIB_PATH=X86"
    SET JAVA_OPTS=-Xms128m -Xmx768m -XX:MaxDirectMemorySize=512m -
Dsun.java2d.noddraw -Dsun.nio.PageAlignDirectMemory=true
) ELSE (
    SET "DEP_LIB_PATH=X64"
    SET JAVA_OPTS=-Xms128m -Xmx2048m -XX:MaxDirectMemorySize=1024m -
Dsun.java2d.noddraw -Dsun.nio.PageAlignDirectMemory=true
)

```

```

SET PATH=%CD%\%APP_HOME%\bin\%DEP_LIB_PATH%;%PATH%
REM #####
ECHO -
ECHO APP_HOME=%APP_HOME%
ECHO SETTING_HOME=%SETTING_HOME%
ECHO JAVA_HOME=%JAVA_HOME%
ECHO JAVA_EXE=%JAVA_EXE%
ECHO JAVA_OPTS=%JAVA_OPTS%
ECHO JAVA_LIB_PATH=%JAVA_LIB_PATH%
ECHO PATH=%PATH%
ECHO CLASSPATH=%CLASSPATH%
ECHO -
ECHO Running data integrity check for backup set - '%BACKUP_SET%',
destination - '%BACKUP_DEST%' ...

@ECHO ON

%JAVA_EXE% %JAVA_LIB_PATH% -cp %CLASSPATH% %JAVA_OPTS%
RunDataIntegrityCheck %APP_HOME% %SETTING_HOME% %BACKUP_SET%
%BACKUP_DEST% %CRC_MODE% %REBUILD_MODE%
@ECHO OFF
CD %APP_HOME%
IF "%APP_HOME%"==".." PAUSE

@ECHO ON

```

Save the changes and close the text editor. Proceed back to *cmd* and enter the following script.

```

C:\Program Files\AhsayOBM\bin>RunDataIntegrityCheck.bat

-

APP_HOME=..

SETTING_HOME=""

JAVA_HOME=..\jvm

JAVA_EXE=..\jvm\bin\bJW.exe

JAVA_OPTS=-Xms128m -Xmx2048m -XX:MaxDirectMemorySize=1024m -
Dsun.java2d.noddraw -Dsun.nio.PageAlignDirectMemory=true

JAVA_LIB_PATH=-Djava.library.path=..\bin PATH=C:\Program Files\AhsayOBM
\bin\..\bin\X64;..\jvm\bin;C:\Program Files (x86)\Common Files\Oracle
\Java\javapath;C:\Windows\system32;C:\Windows;C:\Windows\System32\Wbem;C
:\Windows\System32\WindowsPowerShell\v1.0;C:\Program Files\Microsoft
SQL Server\Client SDK\ODBC\110\Tools\Binn\;C:\Program Files
(x86)\Microsoft SQL Server\120\Tools\Binn\;C:\Program Files\Microsoft
SQL Server\120\Tools\Binn\;C:\Program Files\Microsoft SQL
Server\120\DTS\Binn\;C:\Program
Files\PuTTY\CLASSPATH=..\bin;..\bin\cb.jar

-

```



```

Running data integrity check for backup set - '"Data Backup"',
destination - '""' ...

C:\Program Files\AhsayOBM\bin>..\jvm\bin\bJW.exe -
Djava.library.path=..\bin -cp ..\bin;..\bin\cb.jar -Xms128m -Xmx2048m -
XX:MaxDirectMemorySize=1024m -Dsun.java2d.noddraw -
Dsun.nio.PageAlignDirectMemory=true RunDataIntegrityCheck .. "" "Data
Backup" "" "DISABLE-CRC" "DISABLE-REBUILD"

[doInfo] Start [ AhsayOBM v8.2.1.18 ]

[doStart] Start data integrity check on backup set "Data
Backup(1562897045523)", "AhsayCBS(1562897364604)", crc disabled, rebuild
index disabled

[doDetail] Start processing data integrity check on backup set= "Data
Backup" destination= "AhsayCBS"

[doLogProgress] Start processing data integrity check on backup set=
"Data Backup" destination= "AhsayCBS"

[doLogProgress] Browsing "/files/1562897045523"

[doLogProgress] Browsing "1562897045523/blocks/2019-07-12-10-09-33"

[doLogProgress] Browsing "1562897045523/blocks/2019-07-12-10-09-33/0"

[doLogProgress] Processing Job "2019-07-12-10-09-33", ""

[doLogProgress] Processing Job "Current", ""

[doLogProgress] Processing Job "Current", "C:"

[doLogProgress] Processing Job "Current", "C:/Users"

[doLogProgress] Processing Job "Current", "C:/Users/Administrator"

[doLogProgress] Processing Job "Current",
"C:/Users/Administrator/Desktop"

[doLogProgress] Processing Job "Current",
"C:/Users/Administrator/Desktop/Data backup"

[doLogProgress] Checking dangling backup file index entries...

[doInfo] Existing statistics of backup set= "Data Backup" destination=
"AhsayCBS": Data area compressed size: 32B, Data area uncompressed size:
0B, Data area file count: 2, Retention area compressed size: 0B,
Retention area uncompressed size: 0B, Retention area file count: 0

[doInfo] Recalculated statistics of backup set= "Data Backup"
destination= "AhsayCBS": Data area compressed size: 32B, Data area
uncompressed size: 0B, Data area file count: 2, Retention area
compressed size: 0B, Retention area uncompressed size: 0B, Retention
area file count: 0

```

*[doInfo] The statistics of backup set= "Data Backup" destination= "AhsayCBS" is correct.*

*[doLogProgress] Saving encrypted backup file index to 1562897045523/blocks at destination AhsayCBS...*

*[doInfo] Saving encrypted backup file index to 1562897045523/blocks at destination AhsayCBS...*

***[doDetail] Data integrity check on backup set= "Data Backup" destination= "AhsayCBS" is completed***

***[doLogProgress] Data integrity check on backup set= "Data Backup" destination= "AhsayCBS" is completed***

***[doEnd][INFO] Finished data integrity check on backup set "Data Backup(1562897045523)", "AhsayCBS(1562897364604)", crc disabled, rebuild index disabled***

***[doInfo] Completed data integrity check on backup set "Data Backup(1562897045523)", "AhsayCBS(1562897364604)", crc disabled, rebuild index disabled***

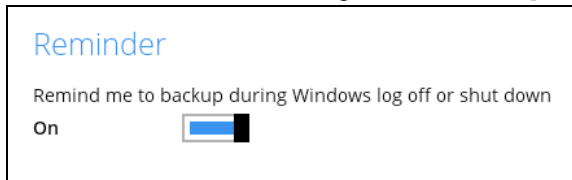
*Press any key to continue . . .*

## Appendix D: Example Scenarios for the Reminder

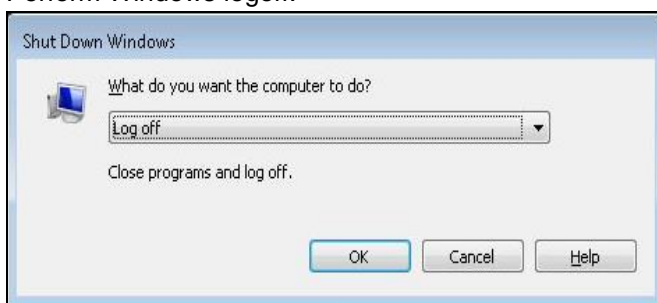
### Windows Log Off

The following example shows when the user performs Windows Log off with the Reminder setting turned on.

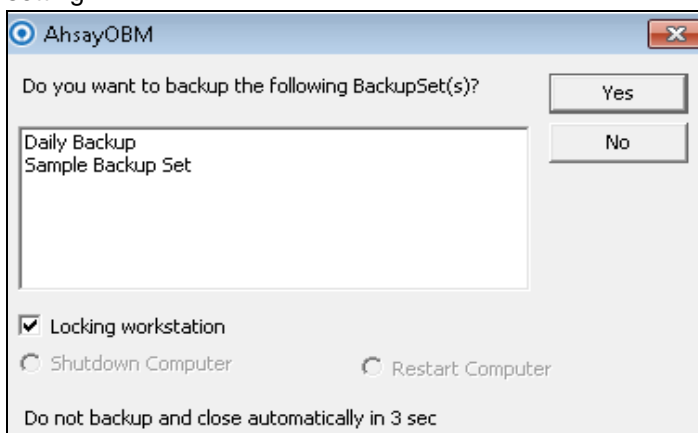
1. Turn on the Reminder setting, then click the [Save] button.



2. Perform Windows logoff.



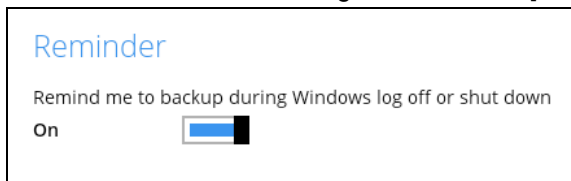
3. A dialog box will prompt the user to back up all the backup sets with enabled 'Reminder' setting.



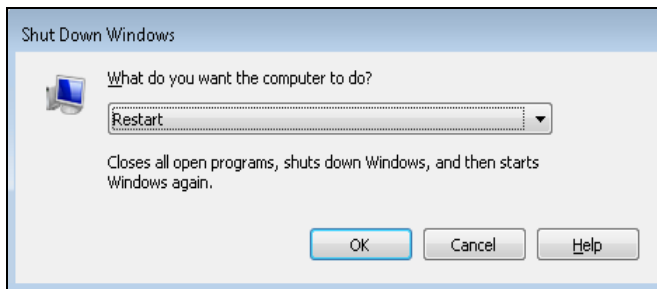
## Windows Restart

The following example shows when the user performs Windows restart with the Reminder setting turned on.

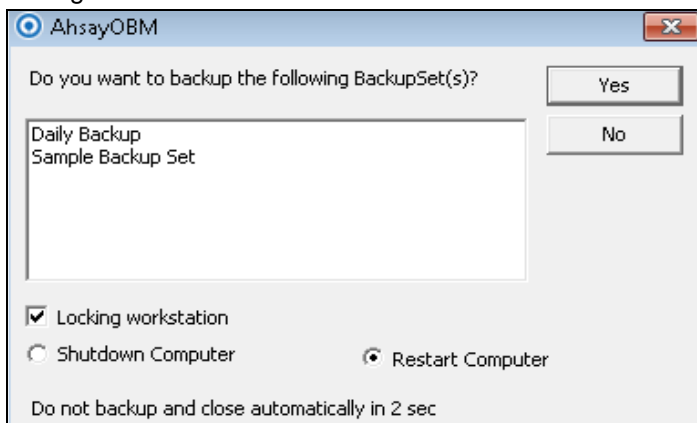
1. Turn on the Reminder setting, then click the [Save] button.



2. Perform Windows restart.



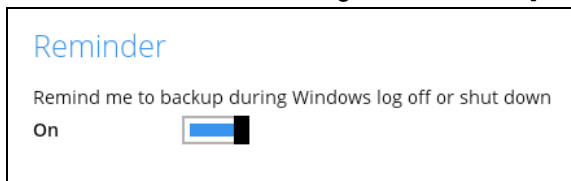
3. A dialog box will prompt the user to back up all the backup sets with enabled 'Reminder' setting.



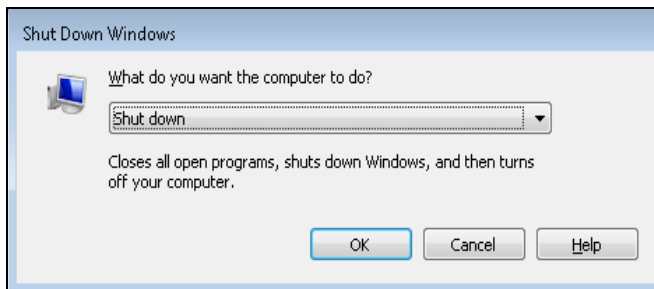
## Windows Shutdown

The following example shows when the user performs Windows shutdown with the Reminder setting turned on.

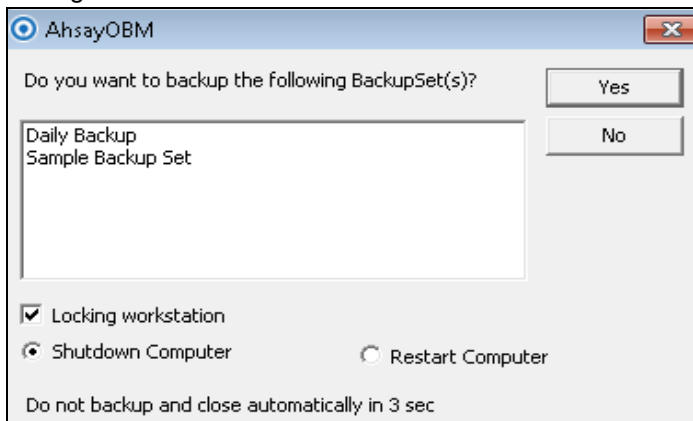
1. Turn on the Reminder setting, then click the [Save] button.



2. Perform Windows shutdown.



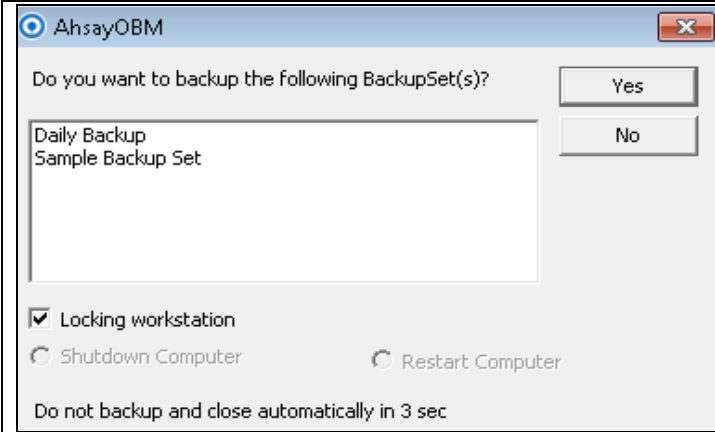
3. A dialog box will prompt the user to back up all the backup sets with enabled 'Reminder' setting.



Below is the list of example scenarios with complex settings:

### Scenario 1 (Windows Log Off + Enabled Locking Workstation)

The following scenario shows when the user performs Windows logoff with the Reminder setting turned on, and Locking Workstation enabled.

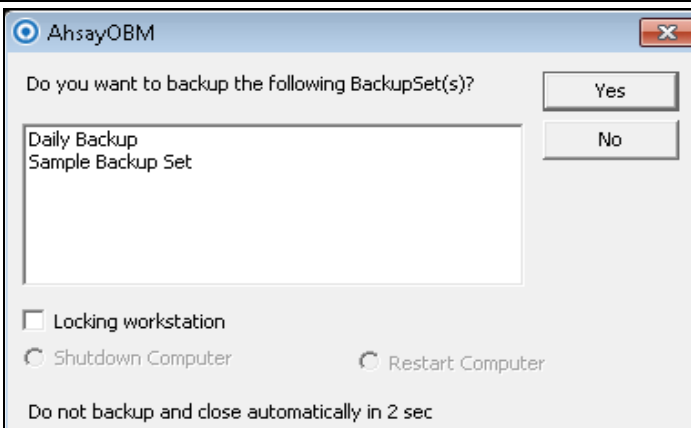
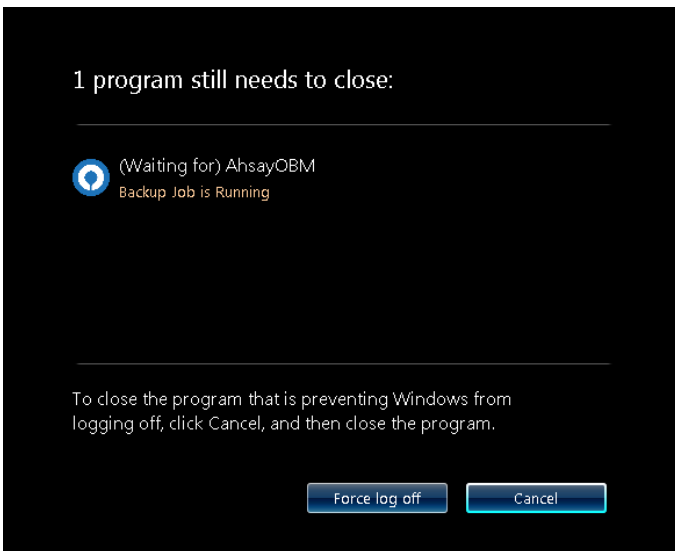
|                                                                                   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p><b>[Yes]</b> – If Yes is selected, then the Windows will be locked, and the displayed backup sets will start backing up in the background. Once all the backup jobs are completed, the machine will log off automatically even if Windows is still on lock.</p> <p><b>[No]</b> – If No is selected, then no backup job will run, and the machine will proceed to log off.</p> |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

#### NOTE

The machine will log off after four (4) seconds if no action is selected.

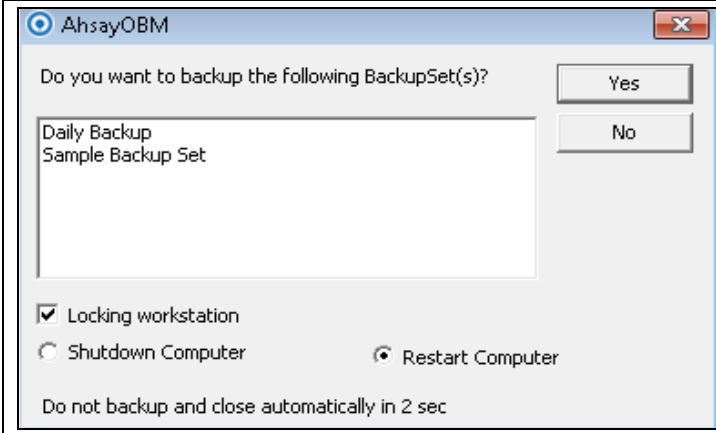
## Scenario 2 (Windows Log Off + Unselected Locking Workstation)

The following scenario shows when the user performs Windows logoff with the Reminder setting turned on, and Locking Workstation unselected.

|                                                                                                                                                                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                                                                                | <p><b>[Yes]</b> – If Yes is selected, an alert message will be displayed to inform the user that a backup job is still running which prevents Windows from logging off.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| <p>Clicking the <b>[Yes]</b> button will result to the following screen:</p>  | <p><b>[No]</b> – If No is selected, then no backup job will run, and the machine will proceed logging off.</p> <p><b>[Force log off]</b> – If you choose to force log off the machine, the backup job will not push through, then the machine will log off immediately.</p> <p><b>[Cancel]</b> – If Cancel is selected, the backup job will run in the background. Once all the backup jobs are completed, the machine will log off automatically.</p> |

### Scenario 3 (Windows Restart + Enabled Locking Workstation)

The following scenario shows when the user performs Windows restart with the Reminder setting turned on, and Locking Workstation enabled.

|                                                                                   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p><b>[Yes]</b> – If Yes is selected, then the Windows will be locked, and the displayed backup sets will start backing up in the background. Once all the backup jobs are completed, the machine will restart automatically even if the Windows is still on lock.</p> |
|                                                                                   | <p><b>[No]</b> – If No is selected, then no backup job will run, and the machine will restart immediately.</p>                                                                                                                                                         |

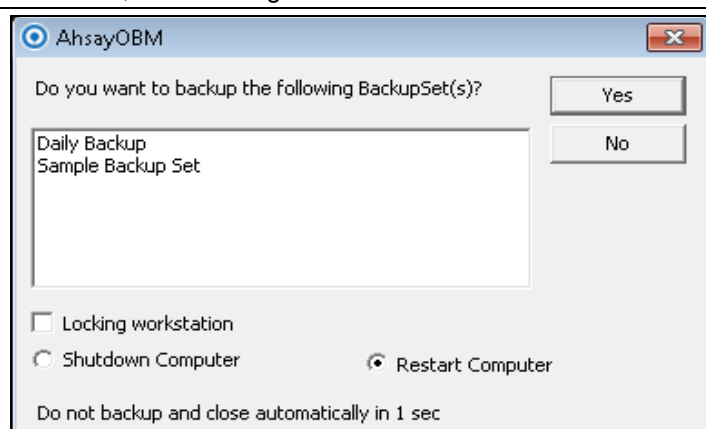
#### NOTE

1. You can select the 'Shutdown Computer' from the options in the dialog box, but the machine will still follow the action that you perform from the Windows, which is 'restart'. The machine will reboot once all the backup jobs are completed.
2. The machine will restart after four (4) seconds if no action is selected.



## Scenario 4 (Windows Restart + Unselected Locking Workstation)

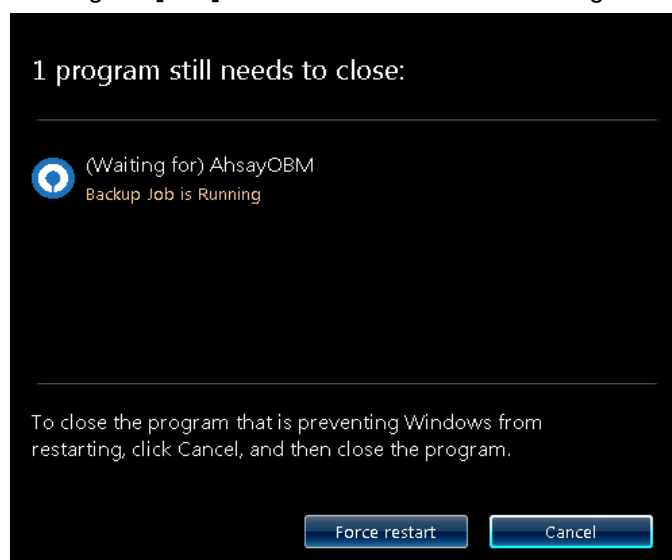
The following scenario shows when the user performs Windows restart with the Reminder setting turned on, and Locking Workstation unselected.



**[Yes]** – If Yes is selected, an alert message will be displayed to inform the user that a backup job is still running which prevents Windows from restarting.

**[No]** – If No is selected, then no backup job will run, and the machine will restart immediately.

Clicking the **[Yes]** button will result to the following screen:

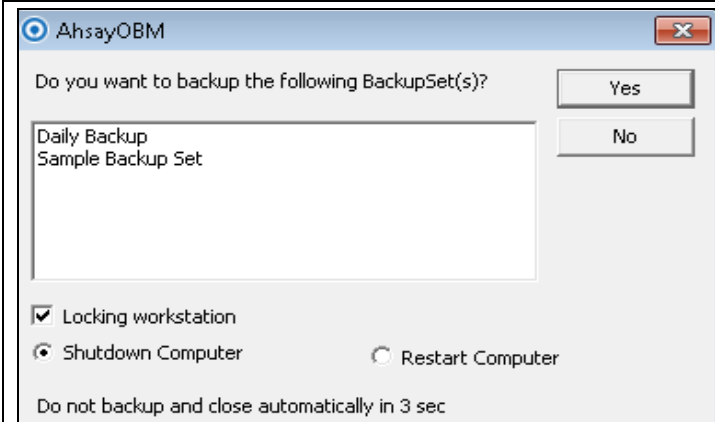


**[Force restart]** – If you choose to force restart the machine, the backup job will not push through, then the machine will restart immediately.

**[Cancel]** – If Cancel is selected, the backup job will run in the background. Once all the backup jobs are completed, the machine will restart automatically.

## Scenario 5 (Windows Shutdown + Enabled Locking Workstation)

The following scenario shows when the user performs Windows shutdown with the Reminder setting turned on, and Locking Workstation enabled.

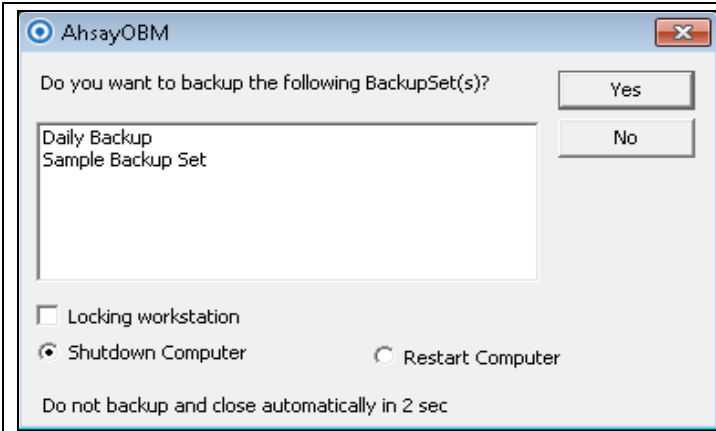
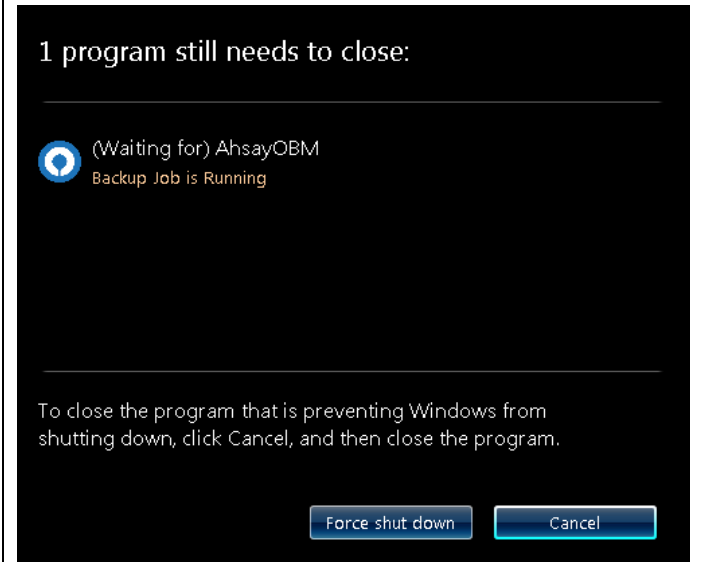
|                                                                                   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p><b>[Yes]</b> – If Yes is selected, then the Windows will be locked, and the displayed backup sets will start backing up in the background. Once all the backup jobs are completed, the machine will shut down automatically even if the Windows is still on lock.</p> <p><b>[No]</b> – If No is selected, then no backup job will run, and the machine will shut down immediately.</p> |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

### NOTE

1. You can select the 'Restart Computer' from the options in the dialog box, but the machine will still follow the action that you perform from the Windows, which is 'shutdown'. The machine will shut down once all the backup jobs are completed.
2. The machine will shut down after four (4) seconds if no action is selected.

## Scenario 6 (Windows Shutdown + Unselected Locking Workstation)

The following scenario shows when the user performs Windows shut down with the Reminder setting turned on, and Locking Workstation unselected.

|                                                                                                                                                                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                                                                                | <p><b>[Yes]</b> – If Yes is selected, an alert message will be displayed to inform the user that a backup job is still running which prevents Windows from shutting down.</p>                                                                                                                                                                  |
|                                                                                                                                                                 | <p><b>[No]</b> – If No is selected, then no backup job will run, and the machine will shut down immediately.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| <p>Clicking the <b>[Yes]</b> button will result to the following screen:</p>  | <p><b>[Force shut down]</b> – If you choose to force shutdown the machine, the backup job will not push through, then the machine will shut down immediately.</p> <p><b>[Cancel]</b> – If Cancel is selected, the backup job will run in the background. Once all the backup jobs are completed, the machine will shut down automatically.</p> |

## Appendix E: Create Free Trial Account in AhsayOBM

Users can create a free trial account when they login to AhsayOBM for the first time. Please ensure that the following requirements are met before creating your trial account:

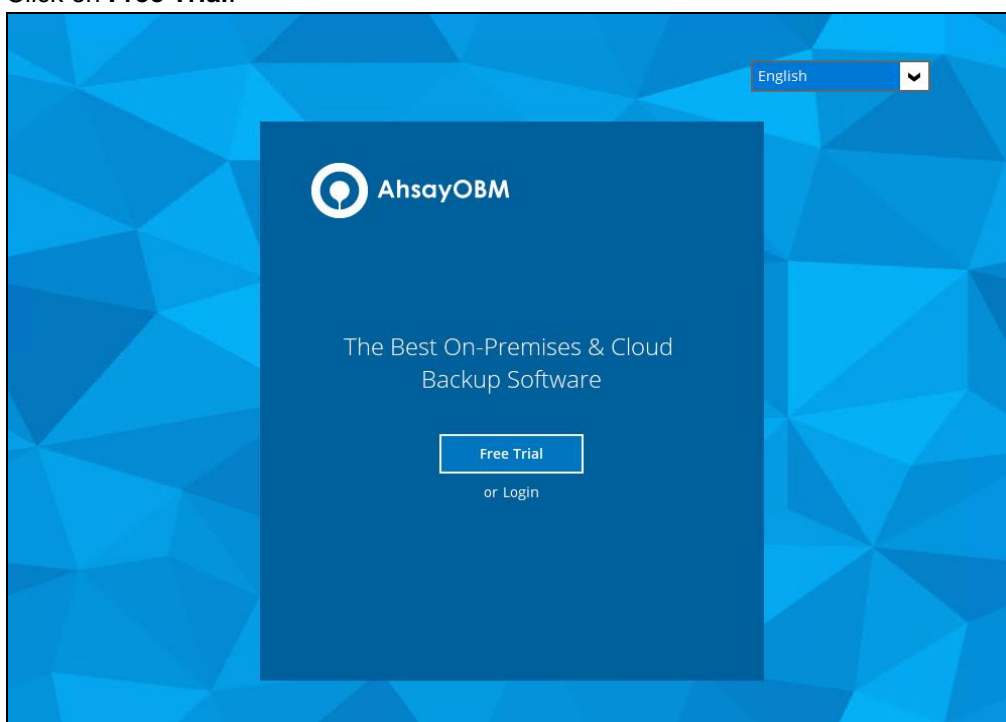
- ❶ A valid email address which will be used for receiving notices. A welcome message will also be sent upon creation of the account which specifies the User Setting and Quota set for backup in AhsayCBS.

While here are the limitations of a trial account:

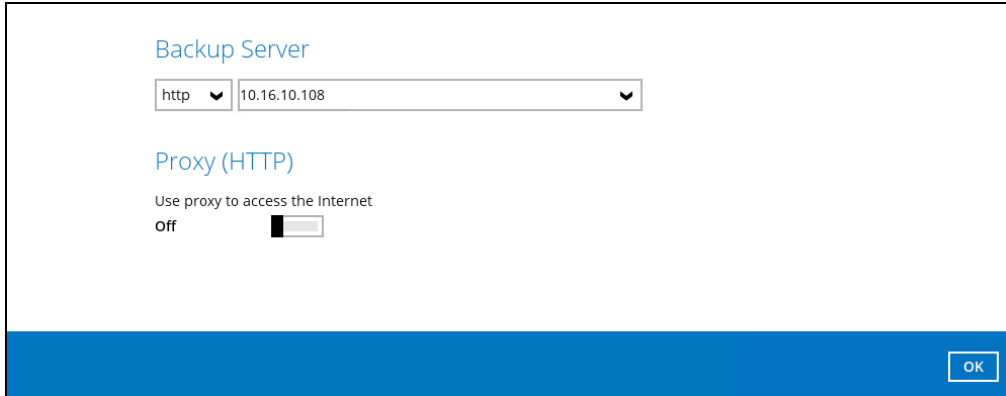
- ❶ The Free Trial button will only be displayed once when the user login for the first time. If you cannot create a free trial account kindly contact your backup service provider.
- ❶ Only alphanumeric characters and selected special characters, A to Z, 0 to 9, @, - and \_ , are allowed to be used for the Login name. While there may be some limitations on password complexity and age which is determined by the backup service provider. Please contact your service provider for further details.
- ❶ The add-on modules available and quota size are determined by your service provider.
- ❶ The trial account period is determined by your service provider. Please contact your service provider for details.

Follow the steps below to create a Free Trial backup account in AhsayOBM.

1. Click on **Free Trial**.

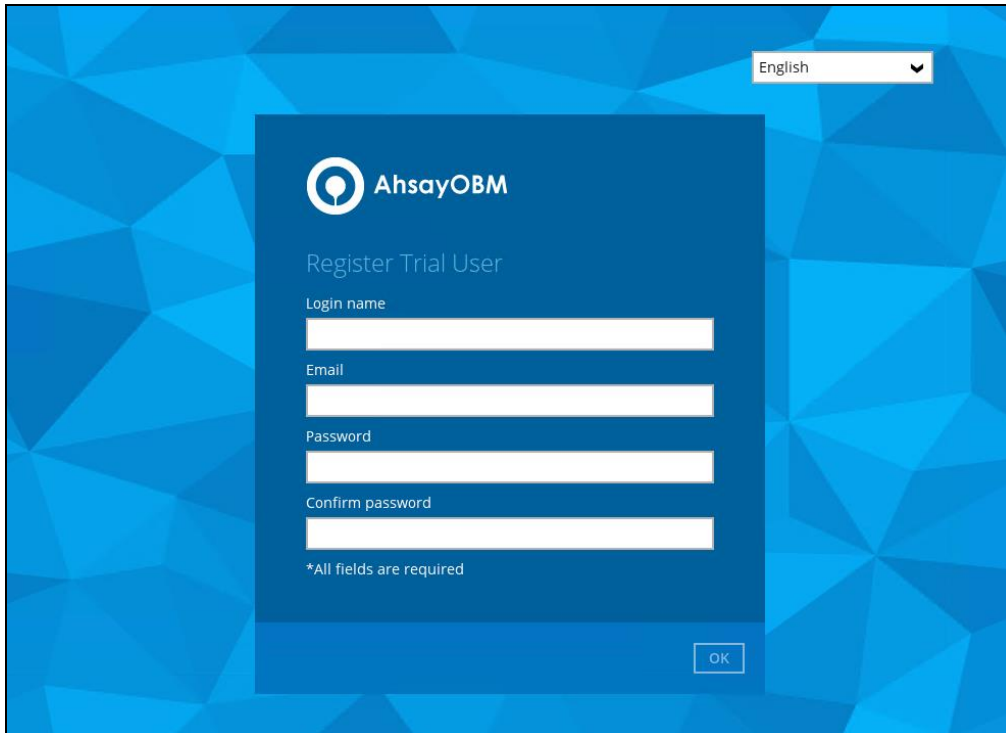


2. Configure your Backup Server settings.



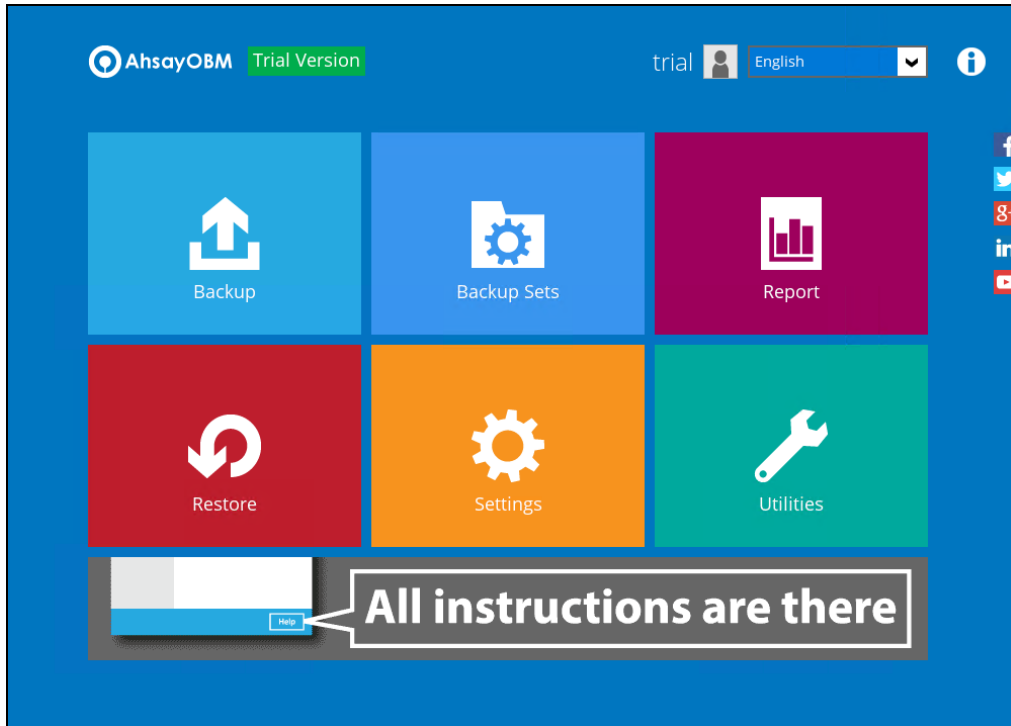
The screenshot shows a configuration window titled "Backup Server". It contains two dropdown menus: the first is set to "http" and the second is set to "10.16.10.108". Below these is a section titled "Proxy (HTTP)" with the text "Use proxy to access the Internet" and a toggle switch labeled "off". An "OK" button is located in the bottom right corner of the window.

3. Enter the Login name that you want. Also provide your email address and password. Confirm your password and click **OK** to create your trial account.



The screenshot shows a registration window for AhsayOBM. The window has a blue background with a geometric pattern. In the top right corner, there is a language dropdown menu set to "English". The main content area is a dark blue box with the AhsayOBM logo and the text "Register Trial User". Below this, there are four input fields labeled "Login name", "Email", "Password", and "Confirm password". At the bottom of the box, it says "\*All fields are required". An "OK" button is located in the bottom right corner of the registration box.

4. Once the trial account is created, this screen will be displayed.



5. After your trial account has been created, you need to check several things:
- The expiry date of the trial account, which determines when it will be suspended.
  - The Language which will be used for sending reports.
  - And the Timezone, this is to ensure that your backup schedule will run at the correct time.

You can check this by logging in to AhsayCBS, go to **Backup / Restore > User > User Profile > General**. For more information please refer to the [AhsayCBS User's Guide](#).

| User Profile     | General                                                                                                                     | Backup Client Settings | Contact | User Group | Security Settings |
|------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------|---------|------------|-------------------|
| Backup Set       | <b>Suspend At</b><br><input type="text" value="30-Oct-2019"/>                                                               |                        |         |            |                   |
| Settings         | <b>Status</b><br><input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable<br><input type="radio"/> Suspended<br><input type="radio"/> Locked |                        |         |            |                   |
| Report           | <b>Upload Encryption Key</b><br><input type="checkbox"/> Upload encryption key after running backup for recovery            |                        |         |            |                   |
| Statistics       | <b>Language</b><br><input type="text" value="English"/>                                                                     |                        |         |            |                   |
| Effective Policy | <b>Timezone</b><br><input type="text" value="GMT+08:00 (CST)"/>                                                             |                        |         |            |                   |

6. You also need to check the available add-on modules and quota by going to the **Backup Client Settings** tab.

The screenshot shows the 'Backup Client Settings' tab for a user profile. The left sidebar contains links for 'Backup Set', 'Settings', 'Report', 'Statistics', and 'Effective Policy'. The main content area is titled 'Settings of the client backup agent for this user.' and includes sections for 'Backup Client', 'Add-on Modules', and 'Quota'.

**Backup Client**

☒ AhsayOBM User ☐ AhsayACB User

**Add-on Modules**

|                                                                                                                  |                                                                                                                   |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Microsoft Exchange Server                                                    | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Microsoft SQL Server                                                          |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> MySQL Database Server                                                        | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Oracle Database Server                                                        |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Lotus Domino                                                                 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Lotus Notes                                                                   |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Windows System Backup                                                        | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Windows System State Backup                                                   |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> VMware <input type="text" value="Guest VM"/> <input type="text" value="10"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Hyper-V <input type="text" value="Guest VM"/> <input type="text" value="10"/> |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Microsoft Exchange Mailbox <input type="text" value="10"/>                   | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> ShadowProtect System Backup                                                   |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Continuous Data Protection                                                   | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> NAS - Synology                                                                |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Mobile <input type="text" value="10"/>                                       | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> NAS - QNAP                                                                    |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Volume Shadow Copy                                                           | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> In-File Delta                                                                 |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> OpenDirect / Granular Restore <input type="text" value="10"/>                | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Office 365 Backup <input type="text" value="10"/>                             |

**Quota**

Unlimit storage space for the destination not shown in the following table

☐ ☐

| Destination                                  | Quota                                                                 |
|----------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> AhsayCBS | <input type="text" value="50.0"/> <input type="text" value="Gbytes"/> |

(If preempted mode is enabled in policy settings, the quota settings are disabled)

7. Lastly, you need to verify if your contact details are correct by going to the **Contact** tab. If you want to add more contact information, you can add it here.

The screenshot shows the 'Contact' tab for a user profile. The left sidebar contains links for 'Backup Set', 'Settings', 'Report', 'Statistics', and 'Effective Policy'. The main content area is titled 'Contact information for this user.' and includes a 'Manage Contact Information' section.

**Manage Contact Information**

☐ ☐

| Name                           | Email           | Encrypt Email |
|--------------------------------|-----------------|---------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> trial | trial@email.com | No            |

## Appendix F: How to Manage Network Drives which are not set in Windows

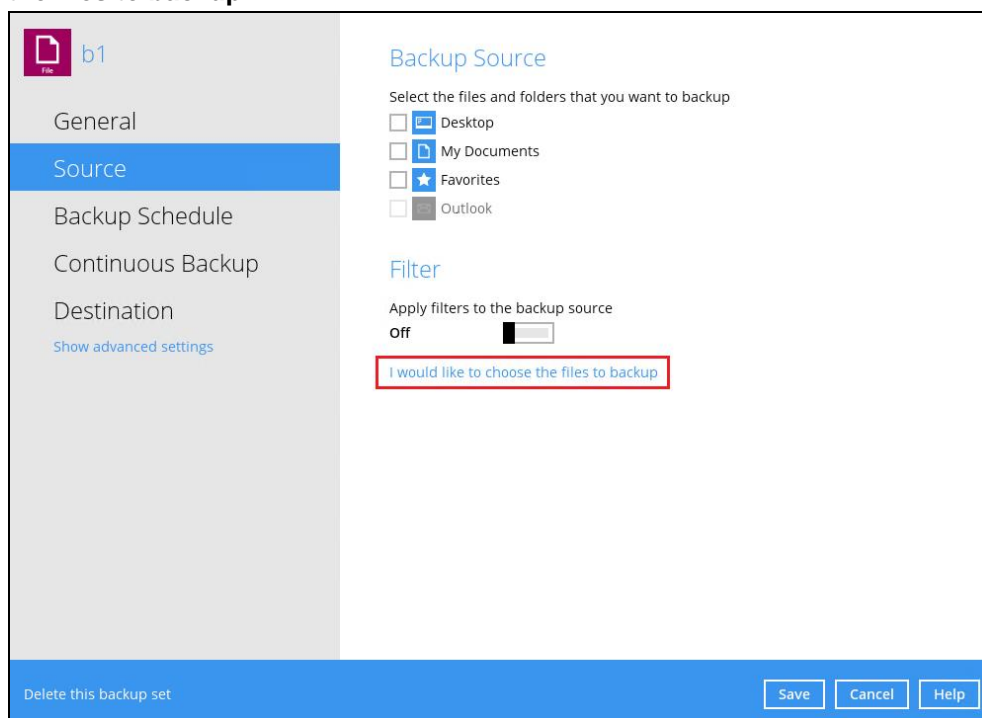
Users have several options in managing network drives that are not set up on Windows, which are the following:

- [Select All](#) – selects all the files and folders in the network drive
- [Select Only](#) – will only deselect the network drive but the file selection will remain the same.
- [Deselect All](#) – deselects all the files and folders in the network drive
- [Edit Credential](#) – allows changing the credentials of the network drive even after it has been set upon creation of the backup set.
- [Delete](#) – deletes the network drive

For instructions on how to use the different functions, see instructions below:

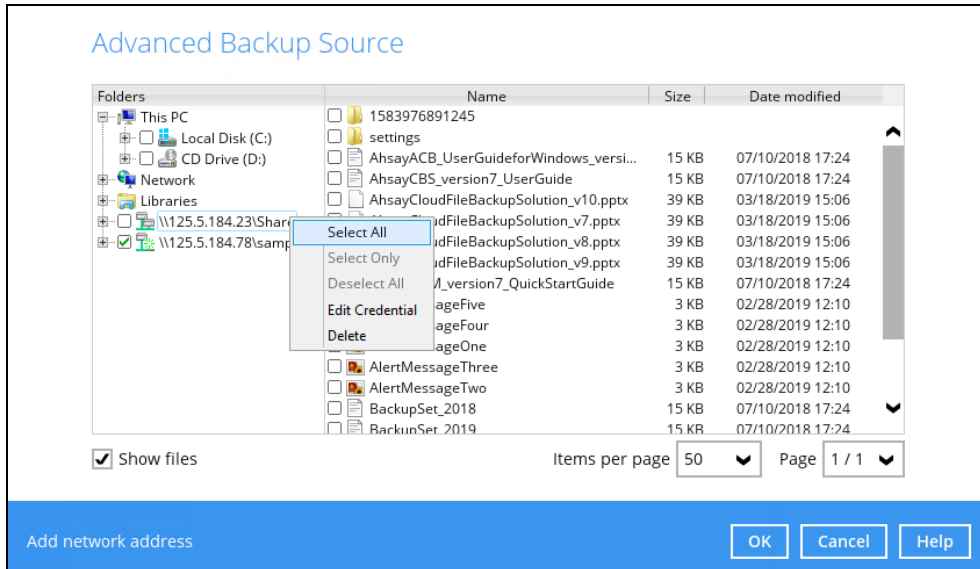
### Select All

1. Go to Backup Sets, select the backup set. Select Source and click **I would like to choose the files to backup.**

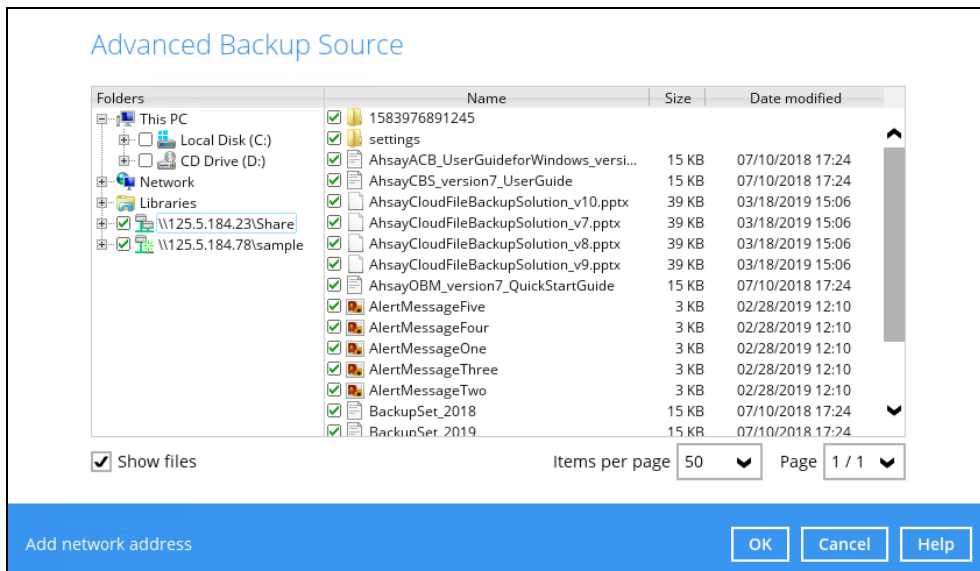




2. Right-click on the network drive and select **Select All**.

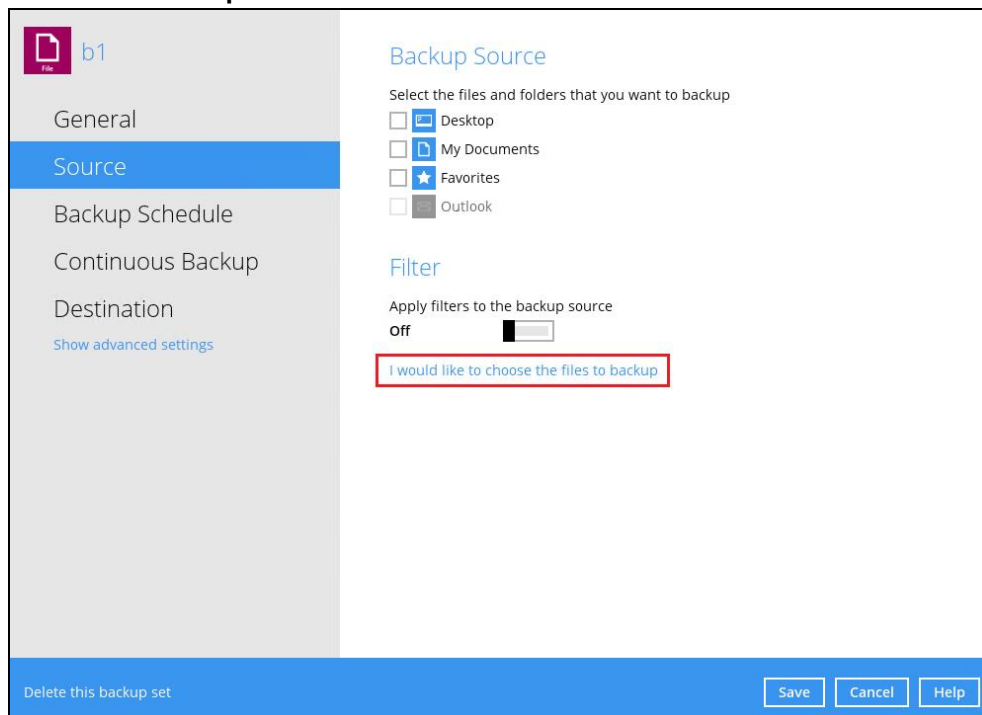


3. All the files and folders in the network drive will now be selected.

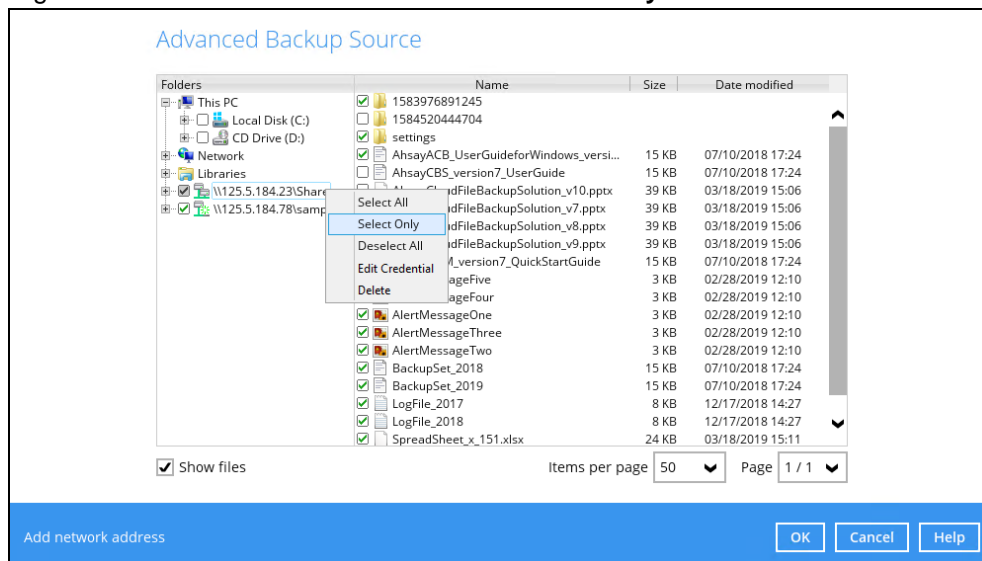


## Select Only

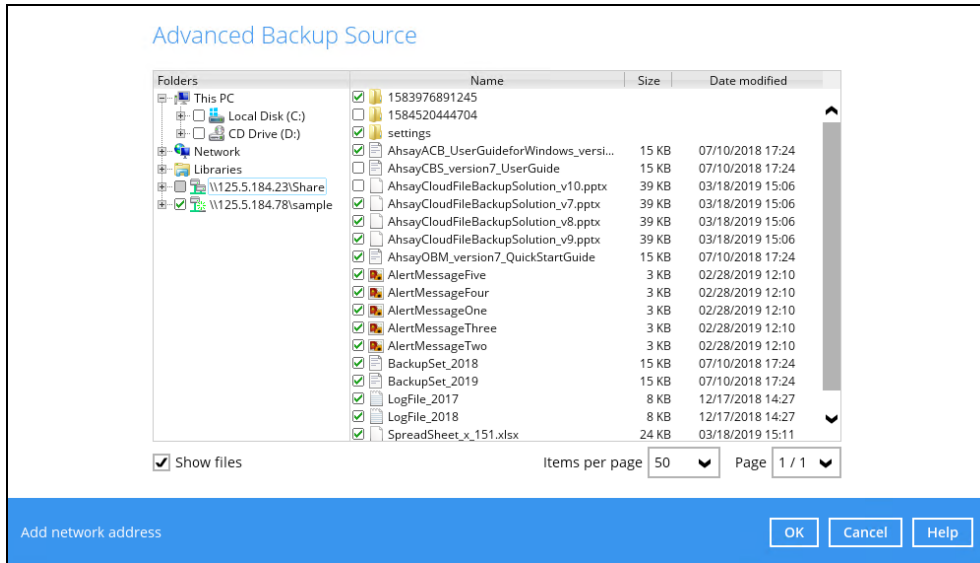
1. Go to Backup Sets, select the backup set. Select Source and click **I would like to choose the files to backup**.



2. Right-click on the network drive and select **Select Only**.

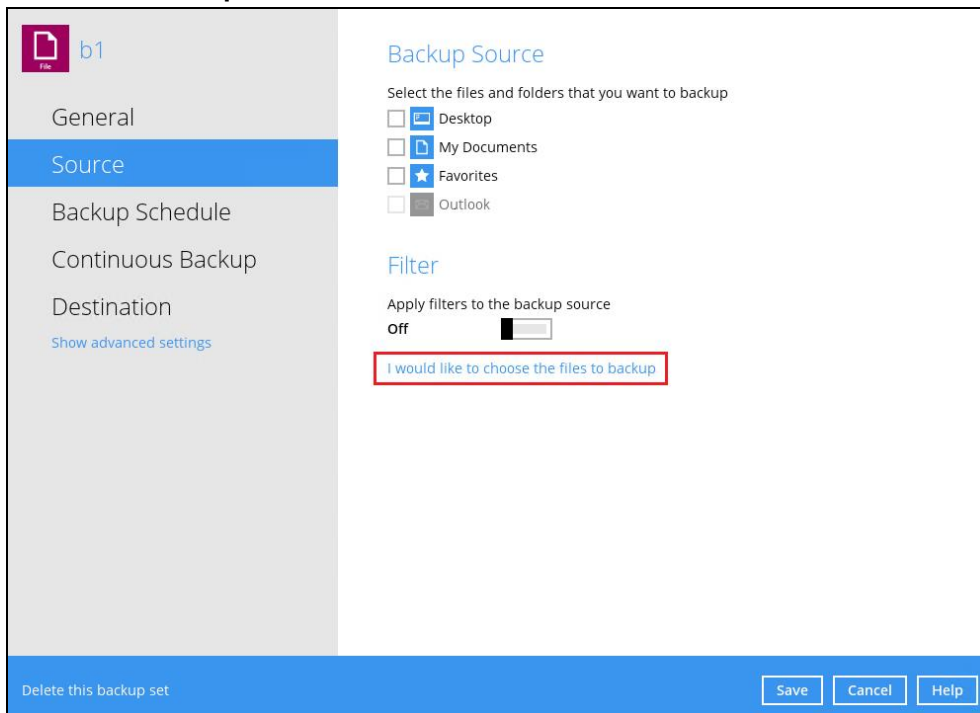


3. The network drive will now be deselected but there will be no change in the file selection.

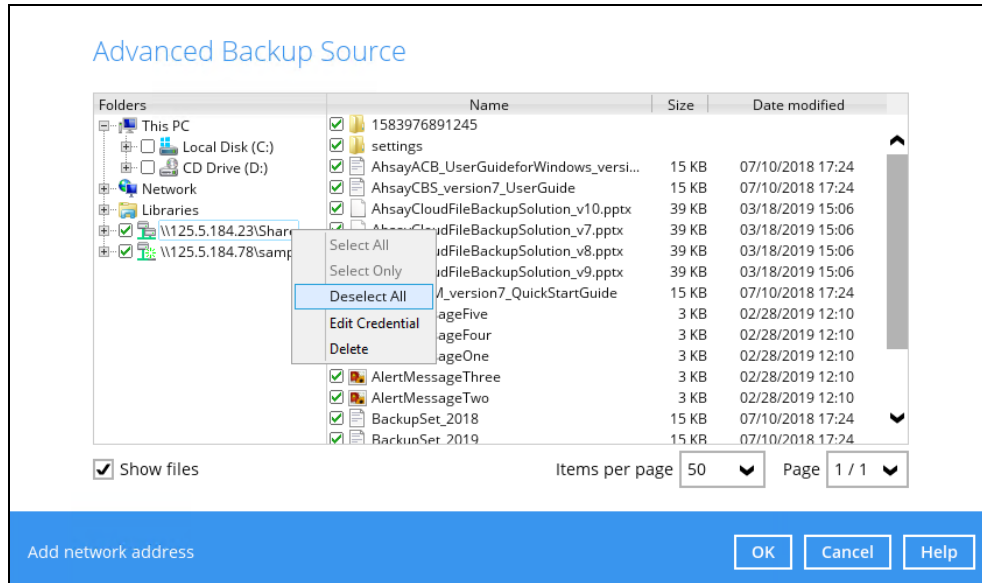


## Deselect All

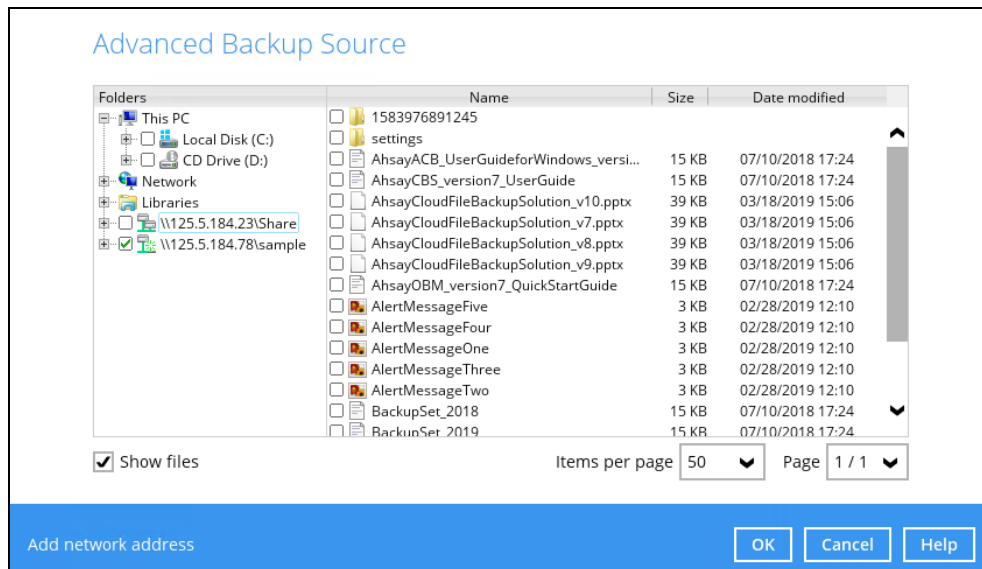
1. Go to Backup Sets, select the backup set. Select Source and click **I would like to choose the files to backup**.



2. Right-click on the network drive and select **Deselect All**.

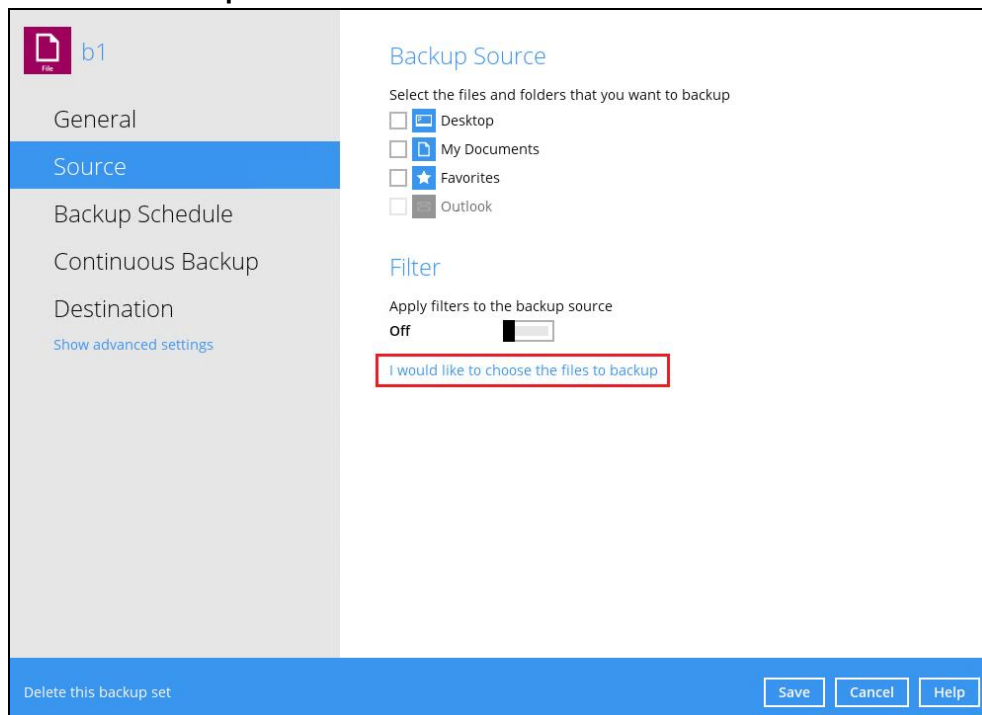


3. All the files and folders in the network drive will now be deselected.

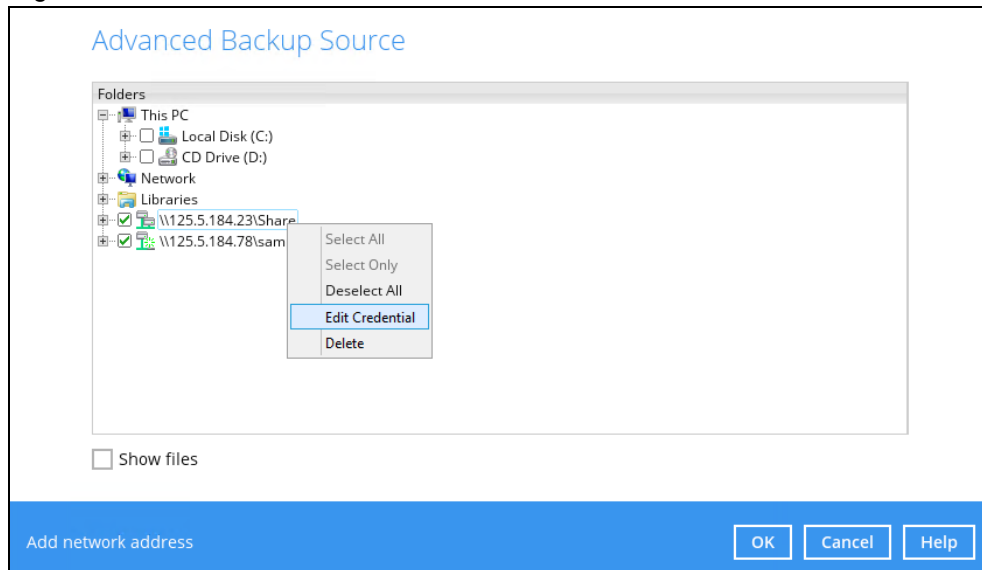


## Edit Credential

1. Go to Backup Sets, select the backup set. Select Source and click **I would like to choose the files to backup**.



2. Right-click on the network drive and select **Edit Credential**.



3. The Network Address window will appear, update the User name and/or Password. Click **OK** once done.

Network Address

Input the details of network address, and click [OK] to proceed.

Network address (e.g. \\servername.doamin\\path)

\\125.5.184.23\\Share

☒ This share requires access credentials

User name (e.g. domain\\username)

Administrator

Password

.....

OK Cancel Help

## Delete

1. Go to Backup Sets, select the backup set. Select Source and click **I would like to choose the files to backup**.

b1

General

Source

Backup Schedule

Continuous Backup

Destination

Show advanced settings

Backup Source

Select the files and folders that you want to backup

☐ Desktop

☐ My Documents

☐ Favorites

☐ Outlook

Filter

Apply filters to the backup source

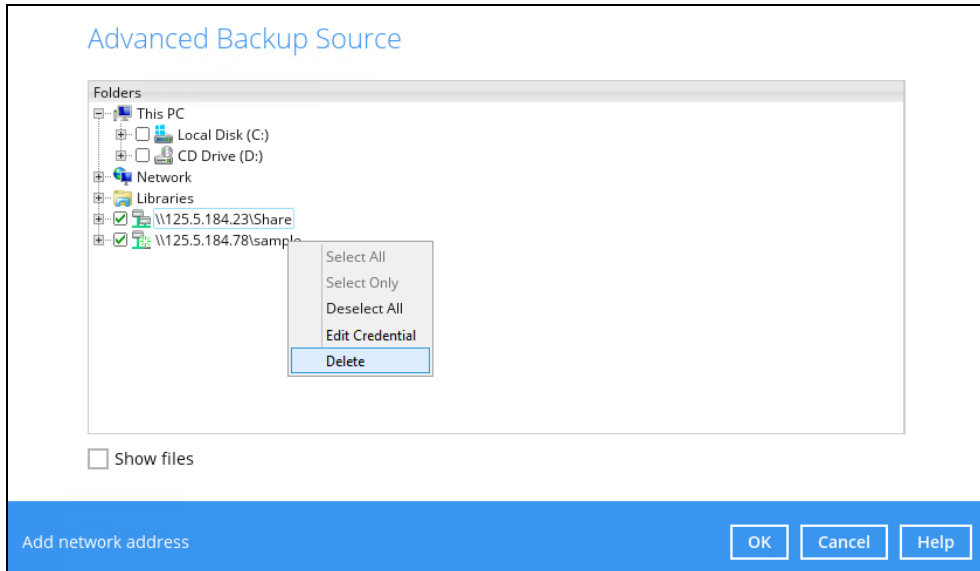
off

I would like to choose the files to backup

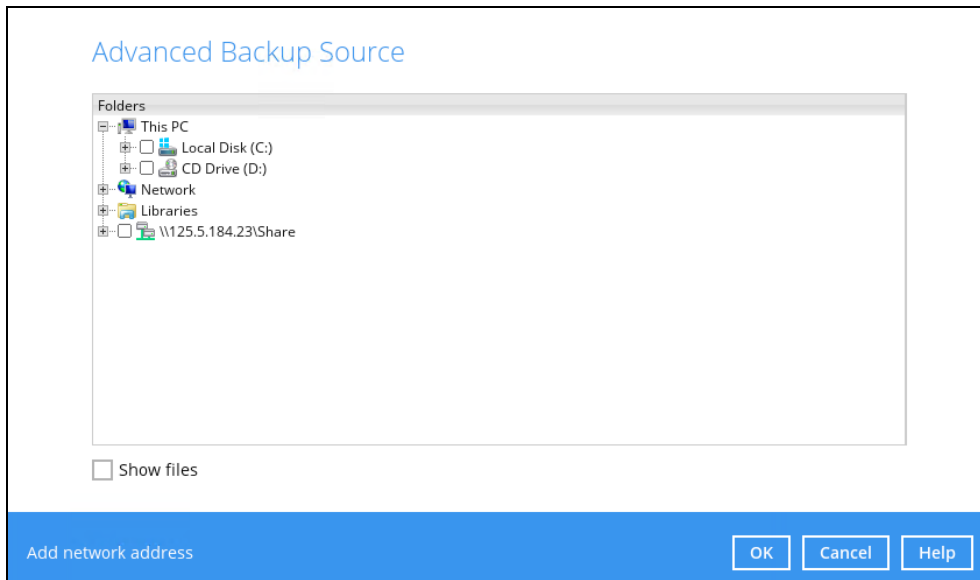
Delete this backup set

Save Cancel Help

2. Right-click on the network drive and select **Delete**.



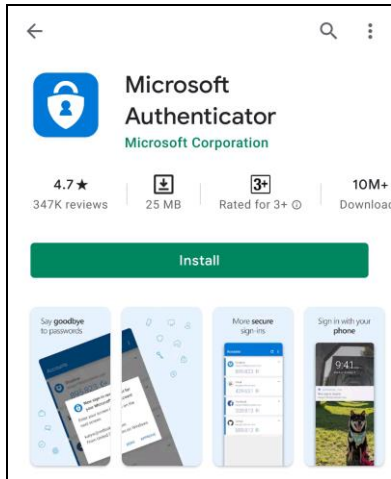
3. The network drive will now be deleted.



## Appendix G: Example Registration of Time-based One-Time Password (TOTP) Authenticator app in Ahsay Mobile app

The following is an example of how to register a third-party TOTP authenticator app in the Ahsay Mobile app. We will use Microsoft Authenticator app as an example for our third-party TOTP Authenticator app.

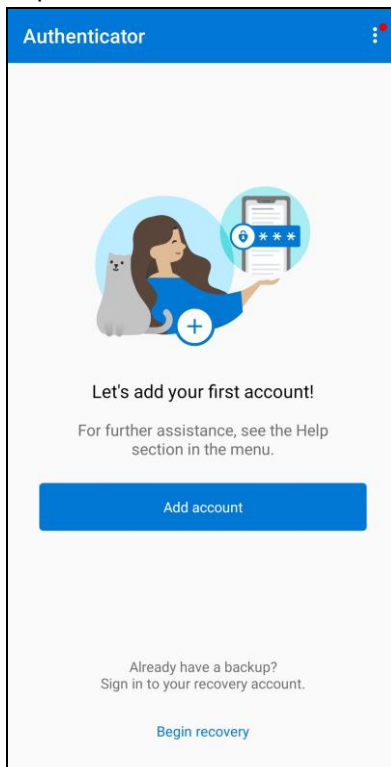
1. Download and install the Microsoft Authenticator from the Play Store for android devices or the App Store for iOS devices.



2. Launch the Microsoft Authenticator app.

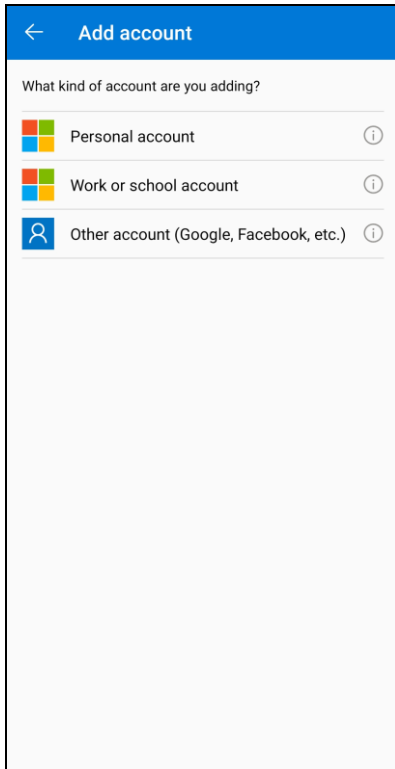


3. Tap **Add account**.

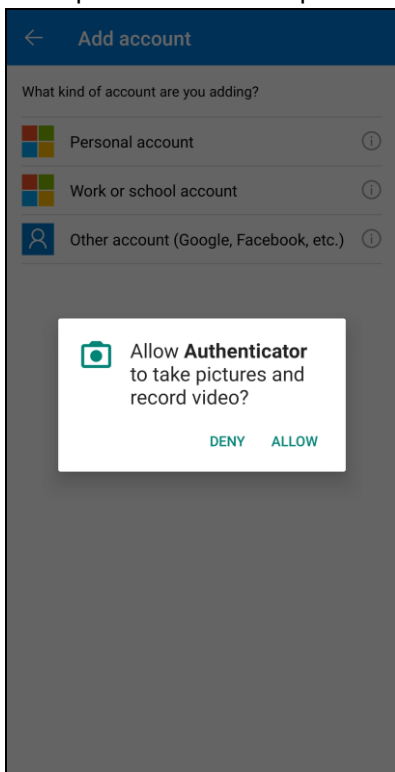




4. Select **Other account (Google, Facebook, etc.)**.



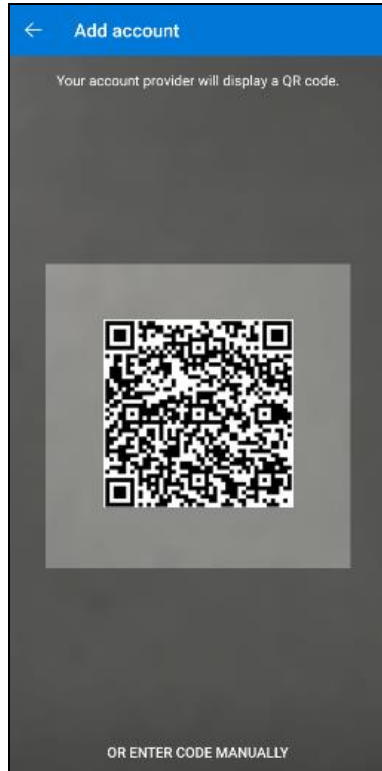
5. Allow permission to take pictures and record video.



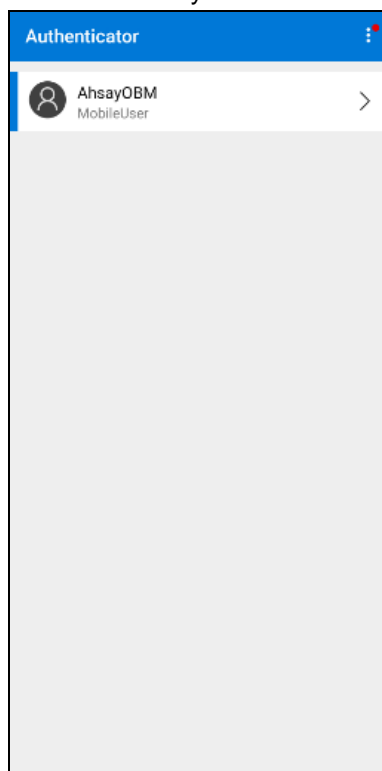
6. Setup the account. Select from the following methods: Scan the QR code or Enter code manually.

Method 1: Scan the QR code

- i. Scan the QR code on AhsayOBM.



- ii. Account is successfully added to Microsoft Authenticator and registered the mobile device on AhsayOBM.

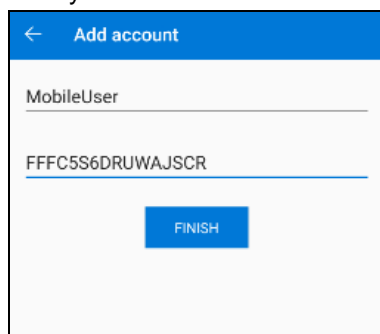


## Method 2: Enter Code Manually

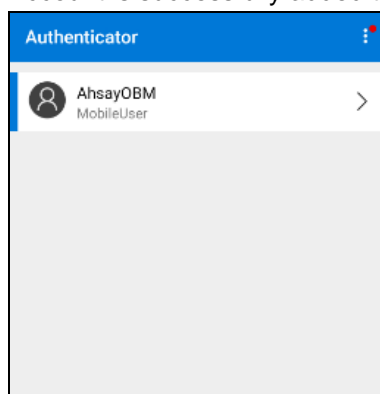
- i. Tap **OR ENTER CODE MANUALLY**.



- ii. Enter the account name and the key which is the Secret Key that is provided by AhsayOBM.




- iii. Account is successfully added to Microsoft Authenticator.




- iv. In AhsayOBM, enter the display name and one-time password generated by the Microsoft Authenticator app. Click Next to proceed.

### Two-Factor Authentication Feature Setup Wizard

Please scan the QR code or input Secret Key to register your mobile device with your backup account for following feature:

 Two-Factor Authentication



Secret Key: FFFC 5S6D RUWA JSCR

Enter a display name for user profile.

Enter the one-time password generated by Authenticator App.

 (00:00:20)

[Using AhsayMOB](#)

NextCancel

- v. Mobile device is successfully registered on AhsayOBM.

## Profile

[General](#)[Contacts](#)[Time Zone](#)[Encryption Recovery](#)[Authentication](#)[Mobile Backup](#)

### Password

Change Password

☐ Save password

### Two-Factor Authentication

Require Authenticator App to sign in your account during start up

On ☒

Registered Mobile Device(s)

1234

MobileUser

X

Add